

Owner's Manual

Q3

Owner's Manual
English 07.2025
83B012720AB

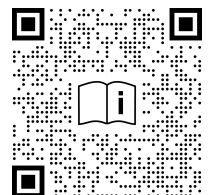


83B012720AB

www.audi.com

Q3 Owner's Manual

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik



ownersmanual.audi.com

Warranty entitlement record

Vehicle identification number	
Model, engine output, gearbox, month and year of manufacture	
Engine and gearbox code	
Paint no., interior equipment no.	
Optional equipment no.	

Date of delivery to customer:
Audi dealer's stamp

No part of this publication may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of AUDI AG. AUDI AG reserves the right to change the information in this publication without prior notice. All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by AUDI AG.

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany
© 2025 AUDI AG

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi.

Your new Audi is a combination of superb craftsmanship and state-of-the-art technology. Audi recommends that you read this Owner's Manual carefully so that you quickly become familiar with your vehicle and can take full advantage of all its functions in everyday use.

In addition to information on how to use the controls and equipment, this Manual also contains important information on looking after your vehicle. This is relevant for your safety and will help preserve your car's value. The Manual also offers useful driving tips and advice, together with some suggestions on how to drive your car with minimum impact on the environment.

Audi wishes you safe and enjoyable motoring with your vehicle.



WARNING

Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒ *page 72*.

Notes on this Owner's Manual	5	Lights and vision	51
Quick reference	6	Exterior lights	51
Getting started	6	Interior lights	54
Online information	6	Clear vision	55
FAQs	6	Windscreen wipers	57
Front cabin	8	Sitting correctly and safely	61
Overview of warning and indicator lamps	9	Ensuring the correct seating position	61
Displays and controls	14	Front seats	61
Instrument cluster	14	Memory function	63
Instrument cluster overview	14	Rear seats	64
How to use the multi-function steering wheel	15	Steering wheel	64
Selecting the display	16	Head restraints	65
Coolant temperature gauge	16	Seat belts	66
Rev counter	16	Airbag system	69
Mileage recorder	17	Child restraint systems	72
Outside temperature display	17	Storage and convenience	79
Engine oil temperature gauge	17	Ashtray	79
Vehicle functions	17	Cigarette lighter	79
Touch display	19	Power sources	79
General instructions for using the touch display	19	Cup holders	80
Multi Media Interface	21	Storage compartments	80
Voice control	27	Luggage compartment	81
General information	27	Roof carrier	84
Speech dialogue system	27	Heating and cooling	85
External voice control function	28	Air conditioner	85
Global functions	30	Steering wheel heating	89
Other function selector buttons	30	Auxiliary heating/ventilation	89
Setting off	31	Fluids in the air conditioner	92
Personal settings	31	Driving	93
Users	31	Starting the vehicle	93
Opening and closing	33	Driving the vehicle	95
Central locking system	33	Engine	101
Keys	37	Start/stop system	103
Boot lid	40	Brakes	104
Child lock	45	Electromechanical parking brake	106
Electric windows	45	Special driving situations	108
Panoramic glass roof	47	Handling dynamics	111
Garage door opener	48	Audi drive select	111
		Suspension	112
		Steering	112

Four-wheel drive (quattro)	113	Settings	180
Electronic stabilisation control	113	Messages	181
Towing a trailer	116	Troubleshooting	182
Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan	116	Audi connect	184
Swivelling towing bracket	118	General information	184
Towing bracket with square tube	122	Audi connect infotainment	185
Assistance systems	125	Establishing a Wi-Fi connection	185
Driver assist systems	125	Using the Wi-Fi hotspot	185
General information	125	Audi connect infotainment services	186
Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings	126	Audi connect vehicle control services	186
Driver assist menu	128	Settings	187
Parking aid menu	128	Troubleshooting	188
Driver information	130	Emergency call	189
Speed warning	130	Overview	189
Camera-based traffic sign recognition	130	Emergency call	189
Traffic light information	133	Online roadside assistance call	191
Fatigue warning	134	Information on data processing	191
Driver assistance	136	Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit	192
Speed regulation systems	136	Navigation	193
Efficiency assist	138	Calling up the navigation menu	193
Adaptive cruise assist	139	myAudi navigation	193
Distance warning	149	Entering a destination	194
Lane departure warning	150	Stopping route guidance	197
Audi pre sense	152	Map	197
Side assist	155	Predictive route guidance	199
Emergency assist	157	Alternative routes	200
Parking and manoeuvring	159	Further functions	200
Introduction	159	Satellite map	201
Rear parking aid	159	Map update	201
Parking aid plus	161	Traffic information	202
Reversing camera/surround view cameras	163	Hazard alerts	203
Rear cross-traffic assist	167	Settings	204
Assisted parking	168	Radio	207
Park assist	170	General information	207
Infotainment	173	Radio functions	208
Telephone	173	Online radio	210
Introduction	173	Options and settings	211
Setting up	173	Troubleshooting	213
Using the Audi phone box	175	Media	214
Using the telephone	177	General information	214
		Bluetooth audio player	214
		Online media	215

Table of Contents

Amazon Alexa	215	Self-help	269
Multimedia connections	216	Mobility	269
Playing media	217	General information	269
Options and settings	220	Equipment	269
Supported media and file formats	221	Tyre repair kit	270
Troubleshooting	222	Changing a wheel	272
In-car experience	224	Spare wheel	275
Themes	224	Jump-starting	276
		Towing away	278
Smartphone interface	225	Fuses and bulbs	281
Setting up	225	Fuses	281
Troubleshooting	226	Bulbs	283
		Changing turn signal bulb in headlight	285
Further settings	228	Changing bulbs for rear lights	286
System settings	228		
Software update	229	Customer information	288
Connected devices	229	Data protection	288
Legal information	230	Information on data protection	288
		Image recording	288
Service and care	232	Memory	288
Checking and topping up fluids	232	Information transmitted	289
Fuel	232		
Filling the tank	233	Accessories and modifications to the vehicle	292
Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)	236	Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle	292
Emission control system	239	Accessories and replacement parts	293
Engine compartment	241	Position for a toll device on the windscreen	294
Engine oil	245		
Cooling system	247	Technical data	295
Brake fluid	250	Identification data	295
Electrical system	250	Vehicle data	295
Battery	251		
Windscreen washer system	254	Other information	299
Service interval display	255	Driving school mode	299
		Trademarks and licences	299
Wheels	256	Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH	299
Tyres and rims	256	Information on waste disposal	299
Tyre pressure loss indicator	261	Radio equipment	300
		Additional customer information	303
Care of vehicle and cleaning	263		
General information	263	Index	305
Washing the vehicle	263		
Information on cleaning and care	264		
Taking the vehicle out of service	268		

This Owner's Manual contains important information, safety precautions and tips for operating your vehicle.

MAKE SURE TO READ THE OWNER'S MANUAL AND KEEP IT IN A SAFE PLACE

Read this Owner's Manual carefully before using your vehicle. Please ensure that this Owner's Manual and all associated documents are always kept in the vehicle. This is especially important if you lend or sell the vehicle to others.

Updates to the Owner's Manual: Please bear in mind that Audi¹⁾ works continuously to develop and further improve all products and models. Audi reserves the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. Depending on the vehicle and the market, such alterations may be possible via software updates. It is therefore also possible that the Owner's Manual will be updated. This is done by publishing supplements which may be made available to you as printed documents and in digital form. You can find out whether a digital or printed supplement applies to your vehicle by referring to the corresponding information in the supplement.

Vehicle-specific features: This Owner's Manual describes standard, country-specific and optional equipment which is available for the entire model series. It is also possible that some equipment and functions will only be introduced at a later date or are only available in specific markets. The Manual therefore also describes items which are not fitted in your specific vehicle. Illustrations are intended as a general guide and may vary from the equipment fitted in your vehicle. No legal commitment can therefore be implied by the information, illustrations and descriptions.

Indications of applicability: Some sections do not apply to all vehicles. In such cases, a text at the start of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, e.g. "Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function". In addition to this, optional and/or vehicle-specific equipment and functions

may be marked with an asterisk "*" or indicated by a corresponding remark (e.g. "depending on vehicle equipment").

Symbols and descriptive conventions in the Owner's Manual:

- * Optional or vehicle-specific equipment
- Section continued on next page
- ⇒ *page 69* Cross-reference to other descriptions or subjects
- ⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING"

References to **positions** such as "left", "right", "front" or "rear" are given as seen facing in the direction of travel.



WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain safety information. They warn you of serious dangers, possibly involving accident or injury.



CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to a possible risk of damage to your vehicle.



For the sake of the environment

Texts with this symbol refer to points relevant to the protection of the environment.



Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information of a more general nature.

¹⁾ "Audi" refers to AUDI AG, the importer for your country and the joint ventures.

Getting started

Online information

myAudi

You can access your Owner's Manual in digital form on your mobile device via myAudi. You can also find information on Audi Service, the maintenance of your vehicle or the Digital Service Schedule.

Important: You must have a myAudi account. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

- Go online to my.audi.com, or
- Start the myAudi app on your mobile device.

Note

Audi online manuals and the Digital Service Schedule are not available in all countries or on all mobile devices.

Accessing the Owner's Manual in the vehicle

Depending on the country, you may be able to view the Owner's Manual in the vehicle.


Important: The vehicle must be stationary.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP > Owner's Manual**.

Whenever you open the Owner's Manual, it is opened in the language selected as the system language on the MMI.

- Applies to MMI: To change the language of the Owner's Manual, select the following on the home screen: **HELP > Owner's Manual > ⓘ**.

Application options

- Call up Owner's Manual content by chapter
- View supplements (if supplement is available)
- Call up available indicator lamps and their meanings
- Search for a certain key word in the index
- The text search function  can be used to search the entire contents of the Owner's Manual for your own search terms.

WARNING

You should only use the online Owner's Manual when the vehicle is safely parked; otherwise, there is the risk of an accident.

FAQs

Before you set off

- How do I adjust the seats? ⇒ *page 61*
- How do I adjust the steering wheel? ⇒ *page 64*
- How does the selector lever work? ⇒ *page 97*
- What is a transmission position and what is a driving program? ⇒ *page 97*
- How does the electromechanical parking brake work? ⇒ *page 106*
- How do I adjust the exterior mirrors? ⇒ *page 55*
- How do I refuel my vehicle? ⇒ *page 233*
- How do I refill the AdBlue tank on my diesel vehicle? ⇒ *page 237*
- How do I operate the windscreen wipers on vehicles with rain sensor? ⇒ *page 57*
- Where is the windscreen washer container? ⇒ *page 244*
- How can I store the tyre pressures? ⇒ *page 262*
- How do I drive with a trailer or caravan? ⇒ *page 116*

Breakdowns and emergencies

- How do I jump-start my vehicle? ⇒ *page 276*
- Where can I find the warning triangle? ⇒ *page 269*
- Where can I find the first-aid kit? ⇒ *page 269*
- Where can I find the recommended tyre pressures? ⇒ *page 258*
- Which airbags are installed in my vehicle? ⇒ *page 69*
- Where are the towline anchorages on the vehicle? ⇒ *page 278*

Useful functions

- How can I open the boot lid with a foot gesture? ⇒ *page 43*



- How can I automatically control the distance to the vehicle in front? ⇒ *page 139*
- How can I stay in my lane more easily? ⇒ *page 143*
- How can I receive a warning if I don't stay in my lane? ⇒ *page 150*
- How can I use the parking aid? ⇒ *page 159*
- How can I safely navigate blind exits and intersections where it is difficult to see? ⇒ *page 165*
- How can I operate the main beam headlights automatically? ⇒ *page 52*
- How can I drive off more easily? ⇒ *page 107*
- How can I check the blind spot more easily when changing lanes? ⇒ *page 155, Side assist*
- How can I change the vehicle set-up in different driving situations depending on my personal mood and driving style? ⇒ *page 111, Audi drive select*
- Why does the engine switch off while I am driving? ⇒ *page 102*
- What ways are there to enter a navigation destination? ⇒ *page 194*
- How do I operate the map functions? ⇒ *page 197*
- How can I display traffic information? ⇒ *page 202*
- How can I listen to the radio? ⇒ *page 207*
- How can I play media? ⇒ *page 217*
- How can I play music from my mobile phone via the infotainment system? ⇒ *page 214, Bluetooth audio player*

Tips and tricks

- How can I unlock my vehicle from inside to let passengers in? ⇒ *page 35*
- How can I open all the windows from outside using the remote control key? ⇒ *page 46, Convenience open/close function*
- How can I adjust the opening position of the boot lid? ⇒ *page 42*
- How can I operate both sides of the air conditioner together? ⇒ *page 87*
- How can I deactivate the front passenger's airbag? ⇒ *page 72*
- How do I secure a child restraint system? ⇒ *page 72*
- What do I have to be aware of when driving through an automatic car wash? ⇒ *page 263*
- How can I drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way? ⇒ *page 102*
- How can I see when the next service is due? ⇒ *page 255*

Displays and controls

- How do I switch on the touch display? ⇒ *page 21*
- How do I use the touch display? ⇒ *page 19*
- How do I adjust the volume? ⇒ *page 30*
- How do I navigate through the menus? ⇒ *page 22*
- How can I enter letters and numbers by handwriting? ⇒ *page 25*
- How can I control functions such as the navigation system by voice? ⇒ *page 27*
- Which functions can I control using the buttons on the steering wheel? ⇒ *page 15 or page 30*
- How can I adjust the brightness of the instrument and display lighting? ⇒ *page 55*

Infotainment

- How can I connect my mobile phone to the handsfree telephone system? ⇒ *page 173*
- How can I switch between connected devices? ⇒ *page 229*
- How can I call up information online? ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*
- How can I use the Wi-Fi hotspot? ⇒ *page 185*

Front cabin

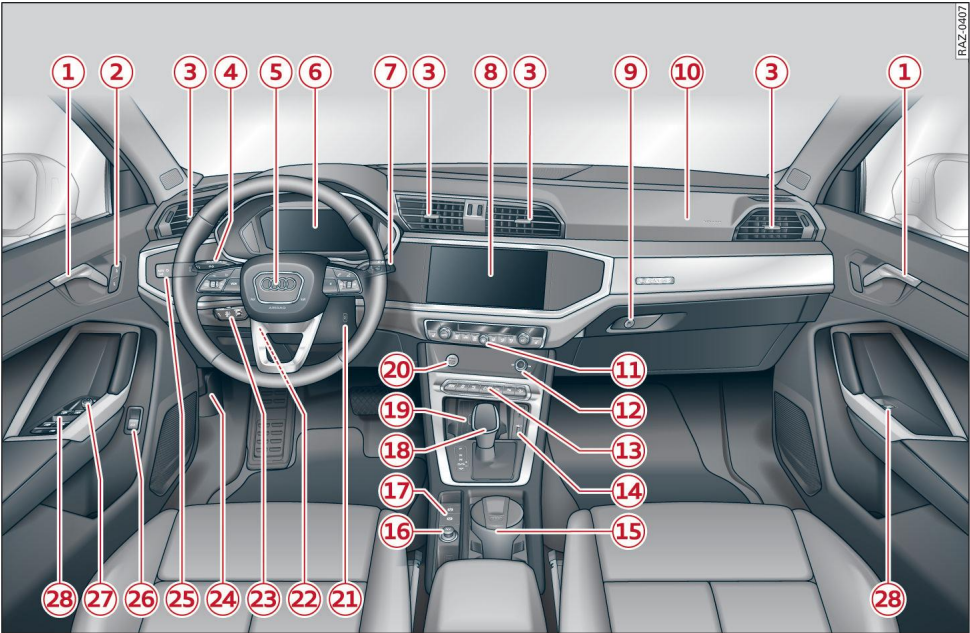


Fig. 1 Front cabin

① Interior door handle		⑩ Front passenger's airbag	69
② Central locking switch	35	⑪ Air conditioner	85
③ Vent with thumbwheel		⑫ MMI control dial	21, 30
④ Control lever for:		⑬ Depending on equipment fitted, buttons for:	
– Turn signals and main beam headlights	52	– Drive select	111
– Main beam assist	52	– Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)	115
– Lane departure warning	150	– Start/stop system	103
– Lane guidance	143	– Hazard warning lights	54
⑤ Multi-function steering wheel with:		– Parking aid	159
– Horn		– Park assist	170
– Driver's airbag	69	– Downhill assist function	109
– Controls	15, 30	⑭ USB ports with charging function	216
– Paddle levers	98	⑮ Depending on equipment fitted:	
⑥ Instrument cluster	14	– Cup holder	80
⑦ Control lever for windscreen wipers and washer	57	– Ashtray	79
⑧ Centre display	21	– Mobile device holder	
⑨ Lockable glove box with:		⑯ Depending on equipment fitted:	
– Key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag	72	– Electrical socket	79
		– Cigarette lighter	79 ▶

17	Buttons for:	
	– Electromechanical parking brake	106
	– Hold assist	107
18	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Selector lever (for automatic gearbox)	97
	– Gear lever (for manual gearbox)	96
19	Audi phone box	175
20	START ENGINE STOP button	93
21	Depending on equipment fitted:	
	– Starting the engine in the event of a malfunction	95
	– Ignition lock	94
22	Steering wheel adjustment	64
23	Control lever for:	
	– Speed regulation systems	136
	– Adaptive cruise assist	139
24	Bonnet lock release	243
25	Switches for:	
	– Lights	51
	– All-weather lights	51
	– Rear fog light	51
26	Button for:	
	– Boot lid	40
27	Adjuster for exterior mirrors	55
28	Switches for:	
	– Window regulators	45
	– Child lock	45

Note

- Some of the items of equipment listed in this section are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.
- The arrangement of switches and controls on right-hand drive models* may be slightly different from the layout shown on *⇒ page 8*. However, the symbols used to identify the controls are the same.

Overview of warning and indicator lamps

Description



The warning and indicator lamps light up or flash in the instrument cluster. Their purpose is to in-

dicate functions or faults. Certain warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and must go back out when the engine is switched on or once the vehicle is moving.

Some of the warning and indicator lamps may be accompanied by a driver message and a warning tone. The warning/indicator lamps and driver messages can be masked by further displays. To display a warning or message again, use the controls on the multi-function steering wheel to select the second display tab (driver messages) *⇒ page 15*.

Some of the warning lamps may be displayed in different colours.






Central warning/indicator lamps

















If the warning lamp  or indicator lamp  lights up, note the information in the instrument cluster.

Overview


















The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which of the following warning/indicator lamps are shown:















Red warning lamps














	Central warning lamp <i>⇒ page 9,</i> instrument cluster <i>⇒ page 14</i>
	Cooling system <i>⇒ page 16,</i> <i>⇒ page 247,</i> <i>⇒ page 248,</i> <i>⇒ page 249</i>
	Seat belt <i>⇒ page 68</i>
	Gearbox <i>⇒ page 101</i>
	Drive system <i>⇒ page 103</i>

	Brake system ⇒ page 106, ⇒ page 250, electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 108
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 106
	Steering ⇒ page 112
	Steering lock ⇒ page 112
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140, take over braking prompt ⇒ page 144, safe start monitor ⇒ page 148
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140, ⇒ page 144
	Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇒ page 144
	Distance warning ⇒ page 149
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 151
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 151
	Pre sense ⇒ page 153, ⇒ page 153
	AdBlue ⇒ page 237
	AdBlue ⇒ page 237
	Bonnet ⇒ page 243
	Engine oil pressure ⇒ page 245
	Electrical system ⇒ page 250



Yellow indicator lamps


















	Central indicator lamp ⇒ page 9
	Engine speed governing ⇒ page 17
	Engine speed governing ⇒ page 17, drive system ⇒ page 103
	Central locking system ⇒ page 35
	Battery in remote control key ⇒ page 39
	Bulb monitor ⇒ page 54
	Adaptive light ⇒ page 54
	Headlight range control ⇒ page 54
	Light sensor/rain sensor ⇒ page 54, ⇒ page 59
	Windscreen wipers ⇒ page 59
	Safety systems ⇒ page 70
	Engine start system ⇒ page 95
	Convenience key ⇒ page 95
	Hill hold assist ⇒ page 96
	Gearbox ⇒ page 101, clutch ⇒ page 101
	Brake pads ⇒ page 106
	Brake servo ⇒ page 106, electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 108




















	Suspension control ⇒ page 112
	Steering ⇒ page 112
	Steering lock ⇒ page 112
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇒ page 113, ⇒ page 115
	Electronic stabilisation control ⇒ page 113, ⇒ page 115, ⇒ page 115
ESC OFF	Electronic stabilisation control ⇒ page 115
	Towing bracket ⇒ page 118, ⇒ page 118, ⇒ page 121
	Fatigue warning ⇒ page 135
	Take over steering prompt (adaptive cruise assist) ⇒ page 144, take over steering prompt (lane departure warning) ⇒ page 151
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 149
	Distance warning ⇒ page 150
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 152
	Pre sense ⇒ page 153, ⇒ page 155, ⇒ page 155
	Side assist ⇒ page 156
	Emergency assist ⇒ page 157
P	Parking aids ⇒ page 160, ⇒ page 162

















	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ page 167
P OFF	Park assist ⇒ page 172
SOS	Emergency call function ⇒ page 190
	Fuel tank system ⇒ page 233, ⇒ page 240
	Emission control system ⇒ page 234, ⇒ page 241
	AdBlue ⇒ page 237
	AdBlue ⇒ page 237
	Particulate filter ⇒ page 240
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇒ page 245
	Engine oil level (MAX) ⇒ page 245
	Engine oil sensor ⇒ page 245, ⇒ page 246
	Engine warm-up requested ⇒ page 245
	Electrical system ⇒ page 250
	Washer fluid level ⇒ page 254
	Tyre pressure ⇒ page 261
TPMS	Tyre pressure ⇒ page 261

Further indicator lamps

	Dipped headlights ⇒ page 51
	Side lights ⇒ page 51, ⇒ page 51

	Turn signals ⇒ page 52, ⇒ page 54
	Turn signals ⇒ page 52, ⇒ page 54
	Rear seat belt ⇒ page 68
	Start/stop system ⇒ page 103
	Hold assist ⇒ page 107
	Downhill assist function ⇒ page 110
	Trailer turn signals ⇒ page 117
	Cruise control ⇒ page 136
LIM	Speed limiter ⇒ page 136
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140, adaptive cruise assist - ready to drive off ⇒ page 148
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ page 140
	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 145
	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 145
	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 145
	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 145

	Efficiency assist ⇒ page 145
	Lane departure warning ⇒ page 151
	Main beam headlights ⇒ page 52, ⇒ page 53
	Main beam assist ⇒ page 52
	Child lock ⇒ page 45
	Child lock ⇒ page 45
	Main beam assist ⇒ page 52, ⇒ page 54
	Rear seat belt ⇒ page 68
	Auxiliary heating / ventilation ⇒ page 92
	Convenience key ⇒ page 95
	Clutch ⇒ page 101
	Start/stop system ⇒ page 104
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇒ page 108
	Brakes ⇒ page 108
	Downhill assist function ⇒ page 110
	Speed warning function ⇒ page 130
	Camera-based traffic sign recog- nition ⇒ page 132
	Fatigue warning ⇒ page 135
	Cruise control ⇒ page 138
LIM	Speed limiter ⇒ page 138

	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ <i>page 140</i> , ⇒ <i>page 143</i>
	Predictive control ⇒ <i>page 145</i> , adaptive cruise assist ⇒ <i>page 149</i>
	Adaptive cruise assist ⇒ <i>page 146</i>
	Distance warning ⇒ <i>page 150</i>
	Lane departure warning ⇒ <i>page 151</i>
	Lane departure warning ⇒ <i>page 151</i>
	Lane departure warning ⇒ <i>page 152</i>
	Side assist ⇒ <i>page 156</i>
	Emergency assist ⇒ <i>page 157</i>
	Parking aids ⇒ <i>page 160</i> , ⇒ <i>page 162</i>
	Rear cross-traffic assist ⇒ <i>page 167</i>
	Park assist ⇒ <i>page 172</i>
	Park assist ⇒ <i>page 172</i>
	AdBlue ⇒ <i>page 237</i>
	AdBlue ⇒ <i>page 237</i>
	Particulate filter ⇒ <i>page 240</i>

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview



Fig. 2 Overview of Audi virtual cockpit plus

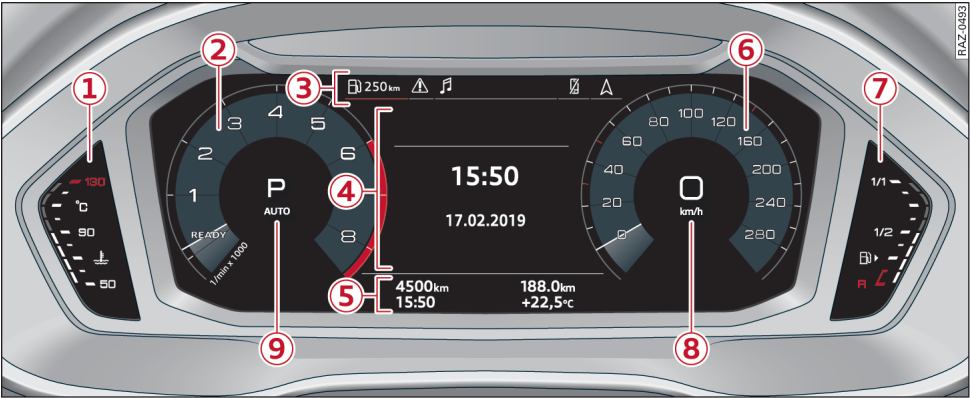


Fig. 3 Overview of digital instrument cluster / Audi virtual cockpit

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the following content may be displayed in the instrument cluster:

- ① Display
 - Coolant temperature gauge 16
- ② Left dial
 - Rev counter 16
- ③ Tab area 15
- ④ Central area 15
- ⑤ Status line (one or two lines)
- ⑥ Right dial
 - Convenience display
- ⑦ Fuel gauge 233

- ⑧ Additional display on right with speedometer
- ⑨ Additional display on left with:
 - Transmission position 97
 - Audi drive select 111

WARNING

The display may be deactivated if a serious system fault occurs. The warning lamp may also light up. Stop the vehicle safely. Seek professional assistance.

Note

- Most of the illustrations on the following pages show the Audi virtual cockpit plus*. The display and position of the elements may be different in other instrument cluster versions.
- You can change the measurement units for temperature or speed, etc. ⇨ page 228.

How to use the multi-function steering wheel

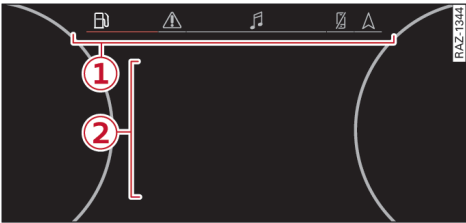


Fig. 4 View of driver information system

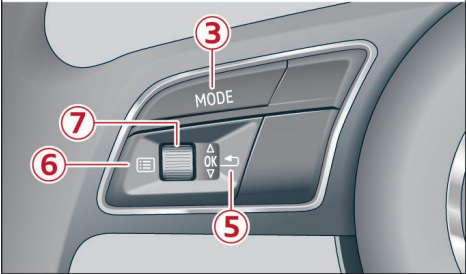
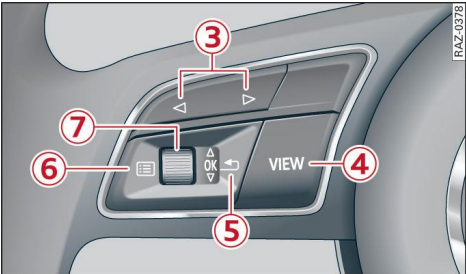


Fig. 5 Left side of multi-function steering wheel

The information in the instrument cluster is organised in different tabs ①. The details from each tab are displayed in the central area ②.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Selecting a tab

- Applies to multi-function steering wheel plus: Press the < or > button ③ repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: Press the MODE button ③ repeatedly until the desired tab is selected.

Returning to the previous function level

- Press the ↶ button ⑤.

Opening/closing a menu

- Press the ≡ button ⑥.

Selecting and confirming a function

Important: A menu or a list must be displayed.

- To select a function, scroll the left thumbwheel ⑦ to the desired function.
- To confirm a selection, press the left thumbwheel ⑦.

Changing views

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

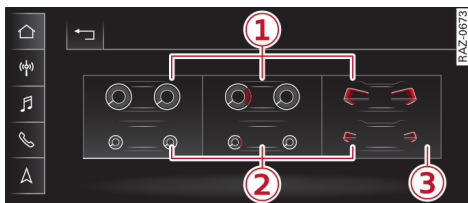
- Press the VIEW button ④ ⇨ page 16.

Overview of tabs

The following tabs are available depending on the vehicle equipment:

Symbol	Description
	Vehicle functions
	Driver messages (only visible if one or more warning/indicator lamps or driver messages are displayed)
	Multimedia
	Telephone
	Navigation

Selecting the display



Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Fig. 6 Centre display: Selecting display

Changing views

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

- Press the VIEW button to switch between the standard view ① and the extended view ②.

Selecting a layout

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

Different layouts may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Audi virtual cockpit**.
- Press on the desired layout to select it ③.

Setting additional display

Applies to: Audi virtual cockpit

The additional displays that can be selected vary depending on the equipment installed on your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > Audi virtual cockpit > Configure**.
- Select the desired additional display.

Reducing the view

On some equipment versions you can hide the central area in the instrument cluster.

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > button > **Reduced display**, or
- Press the VIEW button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Coolant temperature gauge

The coolant temperature gauge ① ⇒ *page 14* only works when the ignition is switched on. In order to avoid possible damage to the engine, please read the following notes for the different temperature ranges.

Engine cold

If the LEDs are still in the lower range of the display, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached operating temperature. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Normal temperature

The LEDs will settle somewhere in the centre of the display once the engine has reached operating temperature. If the warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display, the coolant temperature is too high ⇒ *page 248*.

! CAUTION

- Auxiliary headlights and other attachments in front of the cooling air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. At high outside temperatures and high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating.
- The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. If the spoiler is damaged this can reduce the cooling effect, which could cause the engine to overheat. Seek professional assistance.

i Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine


These engines are so efficient that they may not reach their full operating temperature in very cold weather. This is quite normal and no cause for concern.


Rev counter

The rev counter ② ⇒ *page 14* indicates the number of engine revolutions per minute. The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum ►

engine speed which may be used briefly in all gears after the engine has been run in properly. However, it is advisable to change up a gear or select transmission position D/S (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Engine speed governing


If the indicator lamp  lights up, the engine speed will automatically be governed to the speed displayed in the instrument cluster. This protects the engine components, e.g. against overheating or when starting a cold engine.

If the rev limiter has been activated because of a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp  will also light up. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed in the driver information system, for example when shifting down a gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

CAUTION


The rev counter needle must only ever briefly go into the red zone on the scale; otherwise there is a risk of engine damage. The start of the red zone on the dial is different for some engine versions.

Mileage recorder


The trip recorder and odometer are displayed in the status line  ⇒ [page 14](#).

The trip recorder shows the distance that has been travelled since it was last reset. It is used to measure individual journeys. The odometer records the vehicle's total mileage.


Resetting trip recorder

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab >  button > **Reset kilometres**.

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line  ⇒ [page 14](#).

When the vehicle is stationary or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

At temperatures below +5 °C a snowflake symbol appears next to the temperature display ⇒ .




WARNING



Do not rely on the outside temperature display as an ice warning. Bear in mind that there may be patches of ice on the roads even at outside temperatures around +5 °C – risk of accident!

Engine oil temperature gauge

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature gauge

The engine oil temperature  is indicated by a bar display in the instrument cluster, depending on your vehicle's equipment.


- Call up the vehicle functions tab and change to the extended view ⇒ [page 16](#).

The display shows --- °C at low engine oil temperatures. The engine has reached its operating temperature in normal driving conditions when the oil temperature is between 80 °C and 120 °C. If the engine is running under increased load at high ambient temperatures, the oil temperature may increase above this value. This is no cause for concern, provided that the indicator/warning lamps  or  are not lit.

Vehicle functions

Overview

The on-board computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Further vehicle functions are available depending on the equipment on your vehicle.

- Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

- On-board computer ⇒ [page 18](#)
- Reduced display ⇒ [page 16](#)

– Reset trip recorder ⇒ *page 17*


On-board computer

Switching between displays

- Scroll the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel (7) ⇒ *page 15, Fig. 5* until the desired display appears.

Resetting values to zero

Important: The **consumption, short-term memory** or **long-term memory** display must be selected.

- To reset the values in the selected memory to zero, press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel for one second, or
- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab >  button > **Reset kilometres**.

Displays in on-board computer

The following displays can be called up, depending on the equipment on your vehicle:

- Time and date ⇒ *page 228*
- AdBlue range ⇒ *page 236*
- Average fuel consumption ⇒ *page 18*
- Short-term memory summary
- Long-term memory summary
- Driver assistance ⇒ *page 140*
- Traffic sign recognition ⇒ *page 130* / traffic light information ⇒ *page 133*

Short-term/long-term memory

The short-term memory collects the information on a journey from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the journey is resumed within two hours after the ignition is switched off, the new figures are automatically included in the calculation.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. In this way, you can determine the period for which you wish the on-board computer to supply driving information.

Average fuel consumption

The current consumption can be shown in a bar display. The average consumption from the

short-term memory can also be displayed. If the bar turns green, your vehicle is saving fuel (e.g. using recuperation).

Note

The date, the time and the time/date display format can be changed ⇒ *page 228*.


Gear shift indicator

To familiarise yourself with the gear shift indicator, drive in the normal way to start with. A gear change will be recommended on the instrument cluster display if the gear you are in is not the most economical choice. If no gear change is recommended, you are already in the most economical gear.

Vehicles with manual gearbox

- ► **Change up a gear:** The suggested gear appears to the right of the current gear when a higher gear is recommended.
- ◀ **Change down a gear:** The suggested gear appears to the left of the current gear when a lower gear is recommended.
- ►N: This is displayed in place of the current gear. Put the gear lever in neutral and take your foot off the clutch pedal. The engine will be switched off automatically.

Vehicles with automatic gearbox

The display is only visible in tiptronic mode ⇒ *page 98*. The symbol  after the current gear means **change up a gear**.

CAUTION

The gear shift indicator is intended to help the driver save fuel. It is not intended to recommend the right gear for all driving situations. In certain situations, only the driver can choose the correct gear (for instance when overtaking or driving up a steep gradient).

Touch display

General instructions for using the touch display

General information

Applies to: touch display

The centre display is touch-sensitive. It is operated in much the same way as a smartphone.

Note

Certain gestures are not available in all menus.

Pressing

Applies to: touch display

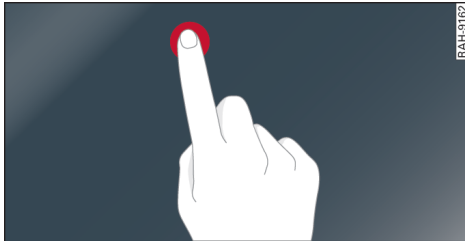


Fig. 7 Touch display: Pressing

Selecting a function or button

- Press the desired function or button.

Pressing and holding

Applies to: touch display

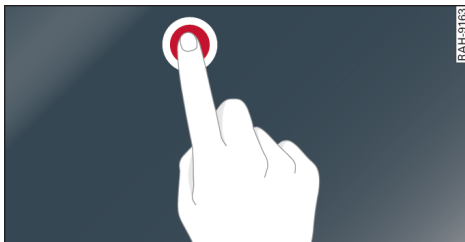


Fig. 8 Touch display: Pressing and holding

Calling up options

For certain items, you can call up further options which are not immediately visible.

- Press and hold an item until the corresponding options are displayed.

Pressing and dragging

Applies to: touch display

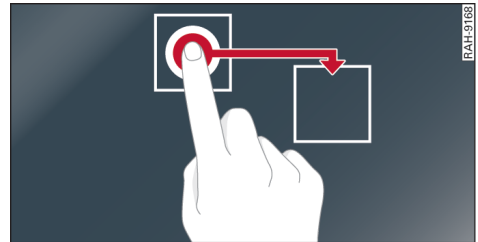


Fig. 9 Touch display: Pressing and dragging

Moving an object

You can re-arrange certain objects as desired.

- Press and hold an object and drag it with your finger to the desired position.

Pinching/spreading your fingers

Applies to: touch display

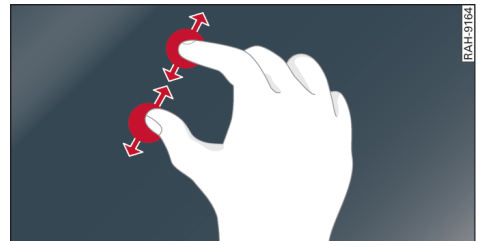


Fig. 10 Touch display: Pinching/spreading your fingers

Zooming in/out on an object

The following gestures can only be used on certain elements, such as a navigation map.

- Spread two fingers to make an object larger.
- Pinch two fingers together to make an object smaller.

Rotating

Applies to: touch display

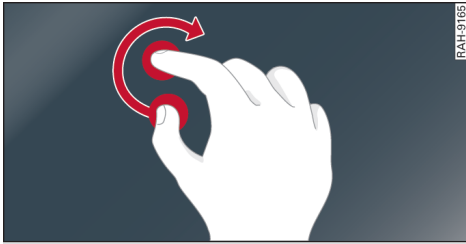


Fig. 11 Touch display: Rotating

Rotating the view or angle

- Rotate the object with two fingers.

Swiping

Applies to: touch display

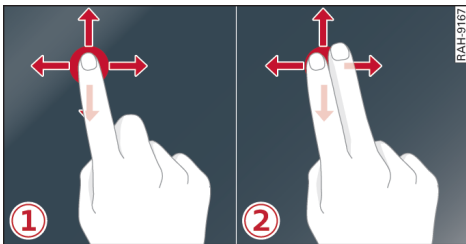


Fig. 12 Touch display: ① Swiping with one finger, ② swiping with two fingers

Scrolling or paging in menus/lists

- To scroll in menus/lists, swipe up/down with one finger.
- To page through menus/lists, swipe up/down with two fingers.

Angling 3D views

- Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Swiping away from/towards the edge

Applies to: touch display

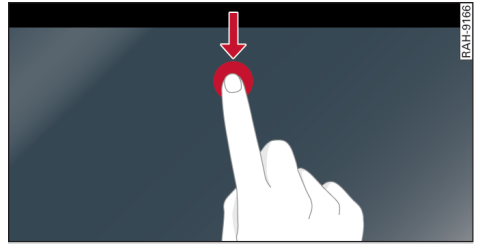




Fig. 13 Touch display: Swiping away from the edge

Opening hidden menus

The  symbol indicates a hidden menu.

- Swipe your finger from the top/bottom edge of the screen towards the centre, or
- Press the  button.

Closing a hidden menu

- Press within the menu and swipe it towards the top/bottom edge of the screen.


Notes on path descriptions

The path descriptions in this manual show you at a glance how to call up the menu you require along with its settings and functions.

Example of a path description

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **General** > **Date & time**.

Using a path description

- The first part of the path indicates which display is to be used (in this example it is the MMI display).
- Press  to call up the home screen.
- If the **SETTINGS** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- Press the **SETTINGS** button.
- If the **General** button is not displayed, swipe to the left/right with one finger until it appears.
- Press the **General** button.
- If the **Date & time** button is not displayed, swipe up/down with one finger until it appears.
- Press the **Date & time** button. ►

Note

Menus or symbols in the path description that are shown in brackets, e.g. **(General)** or **(📶)**, are optional menu items which do not need to be selected in all systems.

Settings

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > MMI**.

Available settings:

- **Brightness**
- **Touchscreen feedback**

Multi Media Interface**Notes on traffic safety**

Audi recommends that certain infotainment functions should not be used unless the vehicle is stationary, e.g. entering a destination or connecting a mobile device. Always be prepared to stop operating the infotainment system in the interest of your own safety and that of other road users.

WARNING

- Only operate the infotainment system when the road, traffic, visibility and weather conditions allow you to do so safely and when you can maintain proper control of your vehicle – risk of accident!
- The same applies when operating your mobile device via the MMI. Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident!

Note

- Certain functions are not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- Certain lists, such as the radio station list, are arranged alphabetically. Lists with messages or current notifications are arranged by date.


Switching on/off**Switching the MMI system on/off**

- To switch the MMI system off, press and hold the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 20* until all the infotainment functions are switched off.
- To start up the MMI system, press the MMI control dial.

Restarting the MMI system

- Press and hold the MMI control dial for at least ten seconds.

Switching the centre display on/off

- To switch the centre display off, press  in the notification centre ⇨ *page 24*.
- To switch the centre display on, touch the display.

Introduction

You can display and operate different infotainment and vehicle functions using the touch display of the Multi Media Interface (MMI).

Setup wizard

After switching on the system for the first time, you can use the wizard to set up your vehicle, e.g. to select the desired system language and connect a telephone.

- Follow the directions given on the centre display.
- Applies to MMI: To access the setup wizard at a later time, select the following on the home screen: **HELP > Setup wizard**.

Usage tips

You can display usage tips if necessary. Various MMI functions are presented.

- Applies to MMI: To call up usage tips, select the following on the home screen: **HELP > Usage tips > Basic information** or **Expert information**.
- Follow the directions given on the display. ►

Online Owner’s Manual

Applies to: vehicles with online Owner’s Manual

With the online Owner’s Manual, you can access your Owner’s Manual directly on the infotainment system ⇒ *page 6*.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **HELP > Owner’s Manual**.

Menus and symbols

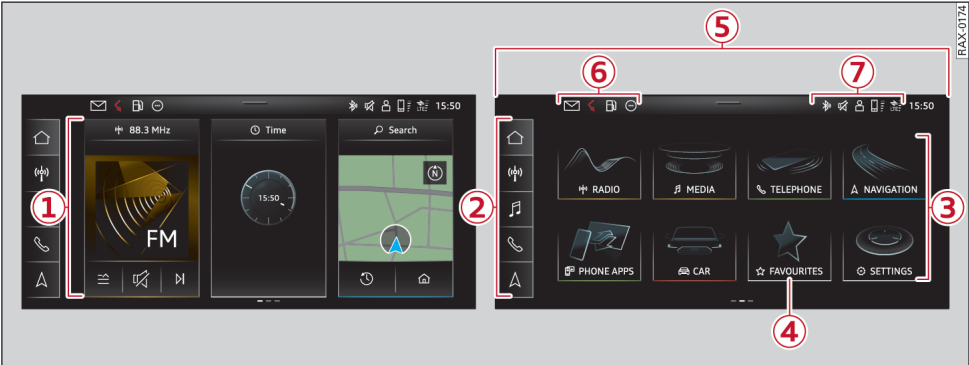


Fig. 14 MMI: Centre display

	Name	Description
①	Overview page	Selected information boxes and quick access buttons for certain functions are shown here ⇒ <i>page 23</i>
②	Quick access bar	Returning to the home screen or overview page, quickly accessing a menu ⇒ <i>page 23</i>
③	Display area	Selecting a menu, changing settings, displaying content ⇒ <i>page 23</i>
④	Favourites	Using/managing favourites ⇒ <i>page 23</i>
⑤ – ⑦	Status bar	Operating functions and adjusting quick settings ⇒ <i>page 24</i> , displaying current notifications ⑥ ⇒ <i>page 24</i> , status display ⑦ ⇒ <i>page 24</i> , time

Description of global symbols

The symbols below allow you to control standard functions. These symbols may appear in all menus in the appropriate context.

Symbol	Description
↶	Go back one level
✕	Close menu
🔍	Search for content
❗	Call up explanatory information for a menu

Symbol	Description
⚙️	Call up settings for the selected menu
📱	Call up sub-menu
✍️	Adjust settings
☆/★	Assign favourite/favourite assigned
☐/☑️	Switch functions on/off
🔄/🔄	Switch functions on/off
🔄/🔄	Switch functions on/off

Symbol	Description
...	Call up additional functions
>	Call up additional information on the selected menu

Note


Most of the illustrations on the following pages show the centre display with the largest possible screen. The display and position of the elements may be different, depending on the equipment in your vehicle.

Overview page

Applies to: vehicles with overview page

The overview page is the first menu page on the MMI. Information on certain vehicle functions, such as media, the clock and the telephone, is shown in information boxes. The information boxes available can be re-positioned on the overview page and some of them can be changed. In certain contexts you can use some functions directly, e.g. mute the volume.

Configuring the overview page

- Press and hold an information box on the overview page.
- To change the position of the information box, keep holding it and drag it to the desired position.
- To change the information box, press  and select the desired information box.
- Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Quick access bar

You can use the quick access bar to return to the home screen and switch easily between four menus which can be configured as desired.

Returning to the home screen or quickly accessing a menu


- Press  or one of the four buttons.

Configuring the quick access bar

- Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen or on the quick access bar.

- To move a button to the quick access bar, drag it from the display area to the quick access bar.
- To re-arrange the buttons, drag them within the quick access bar to the desired position.
- Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Note

It is not possible to move  to another position.


Display area

The buttons in the display area of the home screen can be re-arranged as desired.

Configuring the display area

- Press and hold a button in the display area of the start screen.
- To re-arrange the buttons, drag them to the desired position.
- Press **Done** to complete the configuration.

Switching between menu pages



If a menu contains more than one page,  is shown in the display area. The white bars indicate the position of the current menu page.


- To switch between menu pages, swipe to the right/left with one finger.

Favourites

You can create favourites for quick access e.g. to radio stations, frequently used contacts or vehicle settings. In the **FAVOURITES** menu, the stored favourites are sorted by topic in information boxes.

Adding a favourite

The  button indicates that e.g. a selected radio station can be added to the favourites. In certain contexts it is also possible to add elements without the  button to the favourites, e.g. entries in a list.

- Press , or
- Press and hold an item in a list.
- Press **Store as favourite**. The selected element will be added as a favourite.

Using a favourite

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **FAVOURITES**. The stored favourites will be shown.
- Select the desired favourite to call it up.

Stored favourites can only be deleted or re-arranged in the corresponding menu (e.g. **RADIO**).

Re-arranging information boxes

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **FAVOURITES**.
- Press and hold the desired information box.
- Drag the information box to the desired position.
- Press **Done** to confirm the position.

Status display



Fig. 15 Centre display: Frequent symbols in the status bar

The symbols in the status bar show you at a glance whether e.g. a mobile phone is connected or a data connection is available. The most frequent symbols are listed in the table.

	Description
①	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. Data transfer is in progress.
②	A data connection is available. The bars indicate the strength of the data connection. No data transfer is in progress.
③	A mobile phone is connected. The bars indicate the strength of the mobile reception.
④	No data connection is available.
⑤	A problem occurred when connecting the mobile phone to the MMI.
⑥	A user is selected. If a question mark appears in the symbol, the guest user is active.

	Description
⑦	A Bluetooth device is connected.
⑧	Bluetooth is switched on, but no Bluetooth device is connected.
⑨	Audio playback has been interrupted.
⑩	The audio source is muted.
⑪	A privacy setting is activated. The additional symbol indicates which privacy setting is currently activated ⇒ page 289.

Notification centre

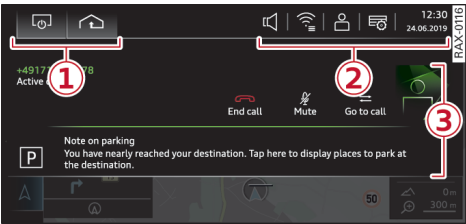



Fig. 16 Centre display: Notification centre


Notifications may be shown on the centre display. They will disappear after a certain time, and the corresponding symbol will appear in the status bar ⑥ ⇒ page 22, Fig. 14. You can view these notifications ③ ⇒ Fig. 16 and adjust the quick settings ② or operate functions ① in the notification centre.

How to use the notification centre

- To open the notification centre, drag the status bar downwards, or
- Press the  button in the status bar.
- To activate/deactivate functions, press the corresponding symbol ①.
- To adjust the quick settings, press the corresponding symbol ②.
- Press on a notification to receive further information about it.
- To delete a notification, drag it to the right edge of the screen.
- If there are more than four notifications in the notification centre, the older ones will be hidden. To display older notifications, swipe upwards with one finger.



Setting which information is displayed

You can determine whether or not certain notifications are displayed.

- To set which information is displayed, press the  button, or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Notifications**.
- Select and confirm which notifications you would like to have displayed.





Operating functions

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the following functions are available in area ①:

Symbol	Description
	Press: Switch the centre display on/off
	Press and hold: Switch screen cleaning mode on/off
	Call up garage door opener

Adjusting quick settings

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the following quick settings may be available in area ②:

Symbol	Description
	Adjust the sound settings
	Manage connected devices
	Manage users
	Set which information is displayed in the notification centre
12:30 24/06/2019	Set the date and time

Text entry

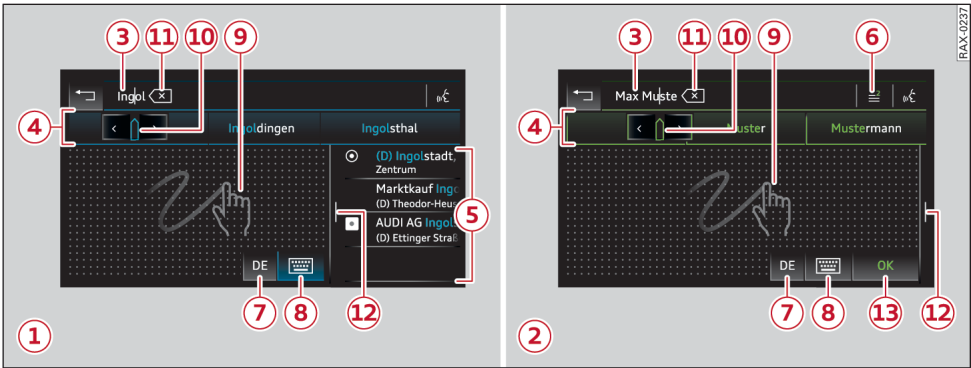


Fig. 17 Centre display: Entering text with MMI Navigation System plus ① / MMI Radio plus ②

Overview

You can enter letters, numbers and characters in the entry fields of different menus, e.g. to find a contact in the address book. The way in which the text entry is displayed ① or ② depends on the equipment fitted in the vehicle.

The centre display will show the text as it is entered ③. In certain contexts, the system will sug-

gest words based on the characters you have entered ④ and display them in a results list ⑤ / ⑥.

Calling up the text entry function

- Press within the entry field ③.

Changing the input language

Important: More than one input language must be set in the MMI ⇨ page 26.

- To switch between the set input languages, press the button **7**.

Changing the input method

- To switch between handwriting recognition and the on-screen keyboard, press the button **8**.

Entering text

- Applies to on-screen keyboard: You can enter text by pressing the keys on the keyboard. In certain contexts, you can also swipe your finger over the letters.
- Applies to handwriting recognition: Text can be entered by simply writing with your finger in the entry area **9**. You can write individual characters one over the other or one after the other without having to lift your finger from the screen. When you have finished, the system will interpret what you have written.
- Applies to on-screen keyboard with diacritical marks: To enter diacritical marks (e.g. â, ç, ñ, ö), press and hold the appropriate character and select the desired diacritical mark.
- Applies to handwriting recognition: To enter a space, draw a line from left to right¹⁾ in the entry area **9**.
- To select the position where the text is entered, press within the entry field at the desired position. You can adjust the position even more precisely using the slider **10** displayed on the screen.
- To delete a single character, press **<X>** **11**, or
- Applies to handwriting recognition: Draw a line from right to left¹⁾ in the entry area **9**.
- To delete more than one character, press and hold **<X>** **11**.
- To delete all characters up to a certain position, press and hold **<X>** **11** and drag your finger to the desired position²⁾. The characters that disappear when you do this will be deleted when you let go.

Confirming suggested words

- Press on a suggested word **4** to confirm it.

Selecting entries from the results list

- Applies to MMI Navigation System plus: To expand the results list **5**, press button **12** or drag it to the left.
- Applies to MMI Radio plus: To display the results list, press button **6**, **12** or **13**.
- Press on an entry in the results list to select it.
- To display more entries in the results list, swipe up/down with one finger.

Setting the input language/keyboard layout

- On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > Language & keyboard > Keyboard**.
- To set additional input languages, press the **⌂** button.
- To change the keyboard layout for one of the input languages, press **>**. Select e.g. QWERTZ or QWERTY.

¹⁾ If the input language is set to Arabic, make the gestures described in the opposite direction.

²⁾ Depends on equipment and country

Voice control

General information

You can operate many vehicle functions conveniently by voice from the driver's or front passenger seat.

For best results when using voice control

- ▶ Speak clearly in a normal volume. Speak louder if you are driving fast.
- ▶ Speak in a normal tone without long pauses.
- ▶ Close the windows to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not talking when you say a command.
- ▶ Keep the vents pointed away from the microphones located near the front interior lights in the headliner.



WARNING

- Please direct your full attention to the road at all times! As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. For this reason, you should only use the functions in a manner that allows you to maintain control of the vehicle in all situations – risk of accident!
- The voice control system must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!



Note

No navigation cues* or traffic announcements* are played when a dialogue is active.

Speech dialogue system

How to use

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

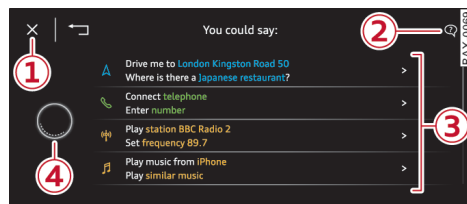






Fig. 18 Centre display: Speech dialogue system

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. The system language must be set to one supported by the speech dialogue system. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

Via the button

- ▶ Briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel, or, in certain contexts, press  on the centre display.
- ▶ Give a spoken command after the tone.
- ▶ To switch the speech dialogue system off, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel or say **Cancel**. Alternatively, press ① ⇒ Fig. 18.


Via a voice command

- ▶ Applies to MMI: To operate the speech dialogue system via a voice command, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Activate speech dialogue system with "Hey Audi"**.
- ▶ Say the activation phrase **Hey Audi** followed by the desired command.
- ▶ To switch the speech dialogue system off, say **Cancel**, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel or press ① ⇒ Fig. 18.

Commands and hints

The speech dialogue system menu shows possible commands or helpful hints for the current dialogue ③.

- ▶ For additional assistance for the current dialogue, say **Help** or press ②.

- To pause the speech recognition, say **Pause** or press ④. To resume using the speech recognition, press ④ again or briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with speech dialogue system

Command during speech dialogue

When this function is switched on, you can simply say a new command while the system is giving a spoken cue.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Allow command during speech dialogue**.

Online recognition

Applies to: vehicles with online recognition

You can activate online recognition for additional functions and even better results when using the speech recognition. A supported system language must be selected. When the system is connected to the internet, your spoken commands will be evaluated online as well as in the vehicle.

- A menu for the online recognition function is displayed when you switch the speech dialogue system on for the first time, or
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Speech dialogue system > Agreement for SDS online recognition**.
- Read and accept the licence conditions.

Amazon Alexa

Applies to: vehicles with Amazon Alexa integration

You can activate Amazon Alexa in order to access certain functions. A reduced number of Amazon Alexa commands is available.


Important: You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the vehicle. Online recognition must be activated. A system language that is supported by the speech dialogue system and by Amazon Alexa must be selected.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USER > Connect to Amazon Alexa**.
- Follow the directions given on the display.

- Applies to MMI: To operate Amazon Alexa via a voice command, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > General > (Speech dialogue system) > Activate speech dialogue system with "Hey Audi"**.
- Say the activation word "Alexa" followed by the desired command.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.



Note

Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.



External voice control function

Applies to: vehicles with external voice control function

You can use the system in the vehicle to call up and operate the voice control function of a connected mobile phone.


Switching the external voice control function on/off

Important: The ignition and the MMI system must be switched on. A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI system via the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 173*. The mobile phone connected must have a voice control function that can be controlled externally. A phone call must not be in progress, and the parking aid must not be active.

- To switch the external voice control function on, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.
- To switch off the external voice control function, press and hold the  button on the multi-function steering wheel, or press **Cancel**.

Operating the external voice control function

- Give a spoken command after the tone. ►

- To resume using the voice control function after pausing it, briefly press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel or press **Resume**.

**Note**

Audi only enables you to access your mobile phone's speech dialogue system and accepts no responsibility for the content and commands of the external speech dialogue system.

Global functions

Other function selector buttons

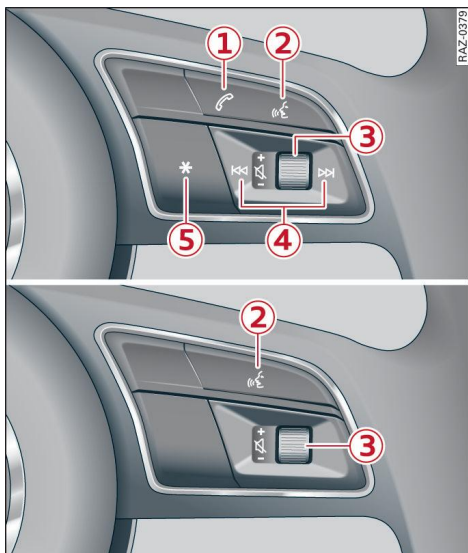


Fig. 19 Right side of multi-function steering wheel



Fig. 20 Centre console: MMI control dial

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or system message (e.g. during a speech dialogue) directly while it is being played.

- To turn the volume up/down, scroll the right thumbwheel ③ ⇒ Fig. 19 up/down or turn the MMI control dial ⇒ Fig. 20 clockwise or anti-clockwise.
- To mute the sound, press the right thumbwheel or the MMI control dial.

Selecting the previous/next track/station

- Press the << / >> button ④ or briefly push the MMI control dial to the left/right.

Fast forward/rewind

- Press and hold the << / >> button ④ or push the MMI control dial to the left/right and hold it there until the desired playing position is reached.

Quick access button on steering wheel

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

Button ⑤ gives you quick access to various functions, depending on your vehicle's equipment.

- For button, refer to ⇒ page 89.

You can program the * button with various functions.

- To use the function currently programmed, press the * button.
- To find out which function is currently programmed, press and hold the * button. Or:
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Steering wheel button**.
- Select and confirm the desired function.

Switching the voice control function on/off

button ②; refer to ⇒ page 27.

Operating telephone functions

Applies to: multi-function steering wheel plus

button ①; refer to ⇒ page 179.

WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.

Personal settings

Users

General information

Applies to: vehicles with individual user settings

Depending on the equipment and country, your vehicle can manage different users in the MMI system. Each user is assigned their most recently used settings.

Before driving off, you can select a user in the MMI system and load their individual infotainment and vehicle settings.

Possible users in the MMI system:

- **myAudi user:** myAudi users can use Audi connect services which require a myAudi account. Certain settings are transferred online to your myAudi account. If you log into your myAudi account in another vehicle, you can load your settings into that vehicle.
- **Local user:** Local users can only store their settings in the current vehicle. Your settings cannot be transferred to other vehicles. Audi connect services which require a myAudi account are not available.
- **Guest user:** Guest users can store their settings in the vehicle without changing other users' settings. Audi recommends the guest user for temporary use only, as the settings can be overwritten by other users.

So that the user settings can be loaded automatically before a journey, the active user is recognised from the following options (depending on equipment):

- Vehicle key

Important: The driver's door must have been opened.

The recognised user is displayed on the MMI. Confirm the user displayed, select another user ⇨ *page 31*, or add a different user ⇨ *page 31*.



WARNING

It is possible that some or all of the infotainment and vehicle settings may not be loaded. As the driver you are always responsible for

the infotainment and vehicle settings – risk of accident!



Note

- Certain infotainment and vehicle settings (e.g. mirror settings/last radio station) may be stored, depending on your vehicle's equipment. Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect**.
- Applies to myAudi users: The stored settings can only be transferred to compatible vehicles. This capability may be restricted in certain countries.
- Applies to myAudi users: The settings can only be transferred and loaded within the area covered by a particular mobile network service provider.
- Applies to myAudi users with PIN protection activated: If a recognised user is displayed on the MMI and you drive off or wait without entering the 4-digit PIN, the guest user will be selected. Some of the settings of the recognised myAudi user will be transferred to the guest user.

User management

Applies to: vehicles with user management

Calling up the user management

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, press **USERS**.

Selecting a user

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ Press on the desired user.
- ▶ If prompted, enter your 4-digit PIN.

Adding a myAudi user

Applies to: MMI and Audi connect

Important: You must have registered at my.audi.com and have created a 4-digit PIN.

- ▶ Press **Add user**.
- ▶ Press **Log in now** to log in with your myAudi access data.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system. ▶

Personal settings

To have existing destinations transferred once from the MMI to your myAudi account, confirm the system query with **Yes**.

Adding a local user

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ Press **Add user**.
- ▶ Press **Start setup**.
- ▶ Press **Local user**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

Editing a user

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have selected the user and loaded their settings.

- ▶ Press on the user.


Depending on the user type, some or all of the following options may be available:

PIN protection: When this function is activated, the 4-digit PIN must be entered before the user settings are loaded.


Delete user from vehicle: The user is only deleted from the MMI list in the vehicle.

Deleting a user

Applies to: MMI

- ▶ On the home screen, select: **USERS** >  > *one or more entries* > **Delete**. The user is only deleted from the list on the MMI. The user permissions for the vehicle (e.g. key user) are not deleted.

Note

- The guest user cannot be renamed.
- When you switch users, the vehicle will load the new user's settings into the vehicle.
- For users with the  symbol, PIN protection is active. You can edit the user and deactivate the PIN protection.
- Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.

Key user

Applies to: vehicles with key user management

The owner of the vehicle must be set as the key user for certain Audi connect vehicle control services, depending on the vehicle's equipment.

Key users automatically have remote access rights. These are required in order to control certain functions (depending on the equipment in your vehicle) such as Audi connect vehicle control services via the myAudi app.

Setting the key user

Important: You must not have set a key user yet.

- ▶ You need a myAudi account in order to set a key user for the vehicle. Register in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com.
- ▶ Add your vehicle in the myAudi app.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the myAudi app.


Managing further users

As the key user, you can authorise further users for equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services on my.audi.com.

Removing the key user in the myAudi app

- ▶ Open the myAudi app and remove the key user.

Removing the key user on the MMI

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **USERS** >  > **Remove key user**.

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the system to the factory settings.

Note

- In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
- It is not necessary to log in with a myAudi user in the vehicle in order to use the equipment-dependent Audi connect vehicle control services.

Opening and closing

Central locking system

General information



WARNING

- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is especially important if children are left in the car. They might otherwise be able to start the vehicle or use power-operated equipment such as the electric windows – this could lead to injuries.
- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ *page 36*, *Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to child lock: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car when the child lock is activated: the rear doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside – risk of fatal injury!

Description

All doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked simultaneously via the central locking system. When you unlock the vehicle, the central locking system will unlock either the entire vehicle or the driver's door only, depending on the setting you have selected on the MMI system ⇒ *page 34*. The turn signals will flash twice when the vehicle is unlocked and once when the vehicle is locked. If the turn signals do not flash when you lock the vehicle, check that all the doors and the boot lid are properly closed.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you have the following options for locking/unlocking your vehicle centrally:

- Vehicle key ⇒ *page 38*
- Sensors in the door handles ⇒ *page 38*
- Lock on the driver's door ⇒ *page 35*
- Interior central locking switch ⇒ *page 35*
- Mobile device (e.g. smartphone) ⇒ *page 186*

Key / vehicle key

In this manual, the word “key” may refer to a remote or convenience key* or a mobile device.

“Vehicle key” refers to the remote control key or convenience key*. The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇒ *page 38* and ⇒ *page 93*.

Automatic locking function

The vehicle will be locked again automatically if you do not open one of the doors, the boot lid or the bonnet within a short time after unlocking the car. This function prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked if the unlock button is pressed by mistake.

Automatic locking function (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks the doors and the boot lid when the vehicle exceeds a speed of about 15 km/h. The vehicle is unlocked again immediately when the unlock button in the central locking switch is pressed.




You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.

After an accident in which the airbags inflate, the doors will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.

Accidental lock-out

To prevent yourself from being locked out, only lock the vehicle when there are no keys in the vehicle and all of the doors and the boot lid are closed.

The central locking system prevents you from being locked out of the vehicle in the following situations: ►

- When the driver's door is open, you cannot lock the vehicle by pressing the  button on the vehicle key or touching the locking sensor* on one of the doors.
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: The boot lid will automatically spring open again slightly if the vehicle key that was last in use is left inside the luggage compartment when the boot lid is closed ⇒ .
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: If the vehicle key that was last in use is detected in the vehicle, it is not possible to lock the vehicle from the outside ⇒ .

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 33.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The following applies when locking the vehicle:

- If the most recently used vehicle key is detected in the passenger compartment, it is not possible to lock the vehicle **by sensor** from the outside. Take the vehicle key with you and lock the vehicle again; otherwise the vehicle will not be secure.
- If you attempt to lock the vehicle **using the button on the vehicle key** while the front passenger's door or a rear door is open, the vehicle will be locked initially when you close the door if you have accidentally left the key in the vehicle. However, if the keyless system detects a vehicle key inside the vehicle after it is locked as described above, the vehicle is unlocked again. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. However, if you do not open the vehicle and take out the key within a short period of time, the vehicle will be locked automatically (this prevents the vehicle from remaining unlocked indefinitely). In this case, the vehicle key will be locked inside the passenger compartment.
- If the boot lid is closed and the vehicle key that was last in use is detected inside the boot, the boot lid will spring open again

slightly. The turn signals flash several times to indicate this. The doors will be locked. Take the vehicle key with you; otherwise it will not be protected against unauthorised access.

Note


- Never leave any valuable items in the vehicle unattended. Even a locked vehicle is not a safe.
- When you lock the vehicle, the LED on the driver's window sill flashes. If the LED is still on about 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked, the central locking system is not working properly. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.


Adjusting the settings for the central locking system

The central locking system can be adjusted to your individual settings. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.


- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Central locking**.

Doors to unlock

- If you select **All**, all doors and the boot lid will be unlocked when you unlock the vehicle.
- If you select **Driver's door**, only the driver's door will be unlocked. You can still unlock all the doors and the boot lid by pressing the  button on the vehicle key twice. On vehicles with convenience key*, only the driver's door will be unlocked when you take hold of the door handle. Gripping any of the other door handles unlocks the whole vehicle.

The whole vehicle is always locked when you press the  button.

Long press to open windows

You can set whether all windows and the panoramic glass roof* can be opened using the vehicle key ⇒ page 46, *Convenience open/close function*. Pressing and holding the  button on the vehicle key will always close all the windows and the panoramic glass roof*.

Fold mirrors

You can set whether the exterior mirrors fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Tone when locking¹⁾

You can set the system to give an acoustic signal when you lock the vehicle.

Open with convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for locking/unlocking the vehicle via sensor ⇒ *page 38*.

Central locking switch



Fig. 21 Driver's door: Central locking switch

► To lock/unlock the vehicle, press the / button ⇒ .

Please note the following when you use the central locking switch to lock your vehicle:

- The doors and the boot lid cannot be opened from the outside (for safety reasons, when stopped at traffic lights, etc.).
- The LED in the central locking switch lights up when all of the doors are closed and locked.
- You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the inside door handle.
- After an accident in which the airbags inflate, doors locked from the inside will be automatically unlocked to facilitate access and assistance.



WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 33*.

- The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off.
- The central locking switch inside the vehicle is not operative if you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Automatic gearbox: **Driver's door: fault. Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual**

A malfunction has occurred in the driver's door. Select transmission position P to hold the vehicle before getting out. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Locking/unlocking the doors manually

If the central locking system should fail to work at any time, the doors will have to be locked/unlocked separately.

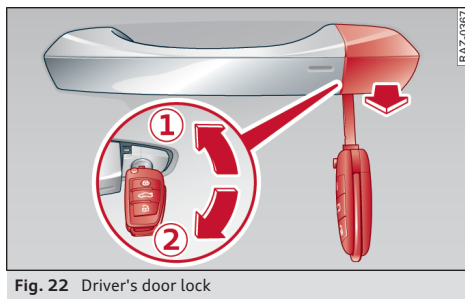


Fig. 22 Driver's door lock

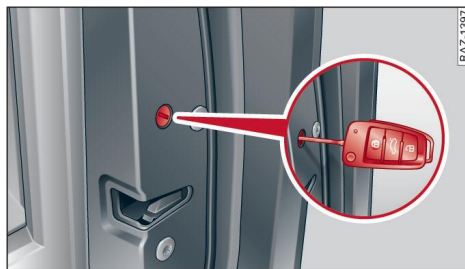





Fig. 23 Door: Locking the door manually

¹⁾ This function is not available in all countries.

Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system:
Switch on the ignition or press the  button on the vehicle key after opening the driver's door manually. Otherwise the alarm will be triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is not activated when the doors are locked manually.

Locking/unlocking the driver's door with the vehicle key

- Fold open the vehicle key ⇒ *page 37, Fig. 24*.
- Insert the vehicle key into the slot under the door handle and lever off the cap ⇒ *Fig. 22*.
- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position ① ⇒ *Fig. 22*.
- To open the driver's door, pull the door handle.
- Manual gearbox: To lock the driver's door, turn the key to the lock position ② once ⇒ .
- Automatic gearbox: To lock the driver's door, select transmission position P, close the door and turn the key to the lock position ② once ⇒ .

Locking front passenger's door/rear doors with the vehicle key

The mechanical locking device is located on the end face of the doors. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Fold open the vehicle key ⇒ *page 37, Fig. 24*.
- If necessary, pull the cap out of the opening ⇒ *Fig. 23*.
- Insert the vehicle key in the slot inside and turn it as far as the stop to the right (if the door is on the right side) or to the left (if the door is on the left side).
- If necessary, insert the cap to seal the opening and close the door.

Once the front passenger's door/rear doors have been closed, they can no longer be opened from the outside. The door can be opened from the inside by pulling the door handle once. If the child lock is engaged on one of the rear doors, the door can be opened by pulling the inside door handle and then opening the door from the outside.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 33*.

CAUTION


Ensure that you only insert the key in the lock in the direction illustrated to avoid damaging the key and the lock ⇒ *Fig. 22*. On right-hand drive vehicles, the key should be inserted the other way around correspondingly.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system senses interference with the vehicle it triggers an audible and visible alarm. The anti-theft alarm system is activated/deactivated automatically when you lock/unlock your vehicle. When the alarm is deployed, it switches off automatically after a certain period of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- To deactivate the alarm press the  button on the vehicle key or switch on the ignition.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the following components may be integrated in the alarm system:

Anti-theft alarm



The alarm is triggered if the boot lid, the bonnet or one of the doors is forced open, or if a door is opened after it is unlocked via the lock cylinder.

Interior monitor and tow-away protection

The alarm is triggered if movements (e.g. of animals) are detected in the interior or if the vehicle's angle of inclination is changed (e.g. during transport).

You can prevent the alarm from being triggered accidentally by deactivating the interior monitor and/or tow-away protection. ►


Safelock¹⁾

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle ⇒ . The message **Be aware of door safelock**  appears on the instrument cluster display when you switch off the ignition as a reminder that the safelock mechanism* will be activated.

You must deactivate the safelock mechanism if you leave people behind in the vehicle.

Deactivating the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock¹⁾

There are various ways to deactivate the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism*:

- ▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- ▶ Turn the vehicle key in the door lock to the lock position a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Interior monitor**.

If you lock the vehicle in this way, the interior monitor/tow-away protection and safelock mechanism* will remain deactivated until the vehicle is unlocked again.

When the function has been deactivated, the LED on the door sill will flash briefly and then remain off for approx. half a minute.



WARNING

Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors and windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.



CAUTION

- If you switch off the safelock mechanism*, the interior monitor and tow-away protection are automatically disabled, and vice versa. This means that your vehicle is no longer completely protected against break-ins and theft.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services: The safelock mechanism is not switched on if you use Audi connect services to lock the vehicle remotely.



Note

- The interior monitor and tow-away protection will only function as intended if the windows and the sunroof* are closed.
- The alarm is triggered if you pull one of the interior door handles, even if you have switched off the safelock mechanism*.

Keys

Set of keys

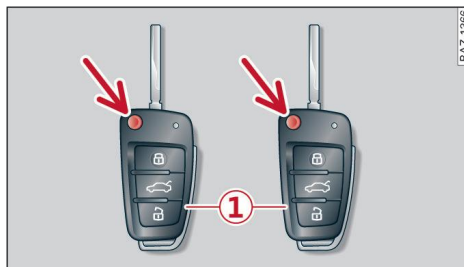


Fig. 24 Keys supplied with the vehicle

Two keys are supplied with each new vehicle.

① Vehicle key

The vehicle key can be used to lock and unlock the car. Press the release button ⇒ Fig. 24 to make the key spring out of the handle.

You can use the vehicle key to

- activate and deactivate the front passenger's airbag* ⇒ page 72.

¹⁾ This function may be optional in your country and is not available in all countries/equipment versions.

Opening and closing

- Applies to vehicles with lockable glove box: lock/unlock the glove box.
- lock/unlock the doors manually ⇒ *page 35*.
- release the boot lid manually ⇒ *page 44*.

Replacing a key

If you should lose a vehicle key, please contact an Audi dealer. Have the remote control coding for that vehicle key deactivated. For this purpose you should bring all available keys with you. It is also important to notify your insurance company if a key has been lost.

Applies to Audi connect vehicle control services: If you should lose a mobile device on which Audi connect vehicle control is active (remote locking/unlocking), the corresponding device must be deactivated ⇒ *page 186*.

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser is designed to prevent unauthorised persons from driving the vehicle.

It may not be possible to start the vehicle if there is another vehicle key from a different make of vehicle on the same key ring.

Data stored on the vehicle key

Data related to the service and maintenance of the vehicle are stored continuously on your vehicle key while you are driving. Your Audi dealer can read out the data and will then be able to tell you what service work is required.


WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 33*.

CAUTION

The key must not be exposed to excessive temperatures; do not leave it in the sun.

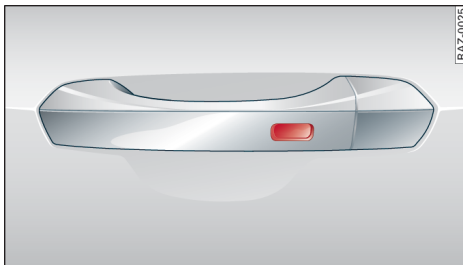
For the sake of the environment

 Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ *page 299, Information on waste disposal*.

Note

- The function of the vehicle key may be impaired by interference from other nearby radio signals (for example from a mobile telephone or TV transmitter) if these are in the same frequency range. You should always check that your vehicle is locked.
- Applies to MMI: You can check how many keys are initialised for your vehicle. On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Car information**.
- A key fob may be attached to the set of keys when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The key fob contains information on the vehicle keys. The key fob can be used to order new vehicle keys. Please store the key fob in a safe place and give it to the new owner if you sell the car.



Locking and unlocking the vehicle



Applies to: vehicles with convenience key
Fig. 25 Door handle: Sensor* for locking

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, there are various ways to lock/unlock your vehicle. You can select which doors are unlocked in the settings on the MMI system ⇒ *page 34*.

Unlocking/locking via buttons on vehicle key

- ▶ To unlock the vehicle, press the  button
⇒ *page 37, Fig. 24*.
- ▶ To lock the vehicle, press the  button **once**.

Unlocking/locking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key


- ▶ To unlock the vehicle, take hold of the door handle.

- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇒ Fig. 25. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked. Once the doors have been locked, they cannot be opened again immediately. This will enable you to check that the doors are properly closed.

Deactivating unlocking via sensors

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) for one lock/unlock cycle.


- **Automatic gearbox:** Move the selector lever to position P; otherwise it will not be possible to lock the vehicle.
- Close the door.
- Press the lock button  on the convenience key and touch the sensor on the door handle (driver's door) once within five seconds ⇒ Fig. 25. Do not take hold of the door handle when doing so, otherwise the vehicle will not be locked.
- To check if the function has been deactivated, wait at least ten seconds and then pull the door handle. It should not be possible to open the door.

The vehicle can be unlocked the next time only by using the remote control key or by turning the key in the lock. Keyless entry is reactivated the following time the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle using the Audi connect vehicle control services¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Important: The Audi connect vehicle control services must have been set up ⇒ page 187, *Setting up*. The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched off.

Please note the information on the safelock mechanism ⇒  in *Anti-theft alarm system* on page 37.




WARNING

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 33.



Note

- Do not use the vehicle key when the vehicle is out of sight.
- **Automatic gearbox:** The vehicle can only be locked when transmission position P is selected.
- Do not use the vehicle key for unlocking/locking when you are inside the vehicle, as you might trigger the anti-theft alarm*. In this situation, press the unlock button .



Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

- The convenience key must be no more than approx. 1.5 m from the door handle/luggage compartment to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- You can deactivate the function for unlocking the vehicle with the convenience key (keyless entry) ⇒ page 39.
- To prevent the vehicle battery from becoming discharged, the energy management system will gradually switch off convenience functions that are not required. In this case you may not be able to unlock the vehicle via sensor.

LED and battery in vehicle key

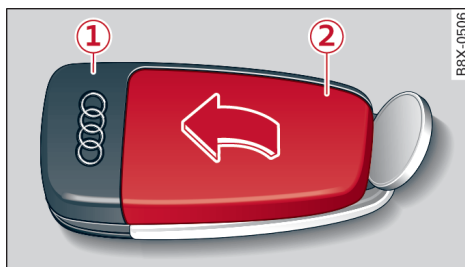


Fig. 26 Vehicle key (rear): Opening the cover

LED in the vehicle key

The LED on the front of the vehicle key lights up when you press the buttons. ►

¹⁾ Depending on country


Opening and closing

- ▶ The LED should flash once when you press one of the buttons briefly.
- ▶ The LED should flash repeatedly when you press and hold one of the buttons (convenience open/close).
- ▶ If the LED does not flash, the battery in the vehicle key is flat. Replace the battery in the vehicle key.

Replacing the battery in the vehicle key

The new battery must be of the same type as the original one (battery type **CR 2032**).

- ▶ Use a coin to lever the cover ② off the key ①
⇒ Fig. 26.
- ▶ Insert the new battery with the “+” symbol facing up.
- ▶ Press the cover back onto the key until it clicks into place.


If the indicator lamp  lights up and the corresponding message appears, the battery in the vehicle key is empty and must be replaced.

WARNING

- A button cell is fitted in the vehicle key.
- If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!
 - Keep the vehicle key and the key fob with batteries out of the reach of children.
 - Keep new and used batteries away from children.
 - If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the vehicle key and keep it away from children.
 - Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.






For the sake of the environment

-  Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ page 299, *Information on waste disposal*.

Synchronising the vehicle key

If the vehicle key fails to lock/unlock the vehicle, it will be necessary to re-synchronise the system.

- ▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key.
- ▶ Unlock the driver's door within 30 seconds by turning the key in the lock ⇒ page 35.
- ▶ Press button  or .

Boot lid

General information

WARNING

- Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside: the windows cannot then be opened from the inside. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Applies to vehicles with anti-theft alarm system: Do not leave anyone (especially children) in the car if it is locked from the outside and the safelock mechanism* is activated: the doors cannot then be opened from the inside ⇒ page 36, *Anti-theft alarm system*. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you are not using the vehicle. Children could otherwise enter the vehicle e.g. through the luggage compartment and become locked inside. To avoid risk of injury, never allow children to play in or around the vehicle.
- To prevent any risk of injury when closing the boot lid, make sure that no one is in its path – in particular around the hinges, the upper and lower edges and the complete surrounding edge.
- After closing the boot lid, always check that the catch has engaged properly. The boot lid could otherwise open suddenly when the vehicle is moving – this could result in an accident.
- The boot lid must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving;


otherwise toxic exhaust fumes can be drawn from outside the vehicle into the interior.

- If a luggage rack (e.g. a bicycle carrier) is attached to the boot lid, the boot lid may not open completely or may move downwards by itself due to the added weight. For this reason, make sure you support the boot lid or take the luggage off the carrier before opening the boot lid – risk of injury!
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated/sensor-controlled boot lid: Always be careful when closing the boot lid. A safety feature is provided (pinch protection), but this may not always be able to prevent serious injuries to yourself or others in all circumstances.

CAUTION

To avoid damage, please take care that the boot lid does not hit the ceiling when opening it inside a garage or car park, etc.

Note

When the vehicle is locked, you can unlock the boot lid separately by pressing the  button on the vehicle key. The boot lid will lock automatically when you close it again.

Opening/closing boot lid






Fig. 27 Boot lid: Release catch



Fig. 28 Driver's door: Opening boot lid

Opening boot lid

- Applies to vehicles without convenience key: Unlock the vehicle or the boot lid with the  /  button on the vehicle key and press the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ Fig. 27. Or
- Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ Fig. 27. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked. Or
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Pull the  button in the driver's door ⇒ Fig. 28.

Closing boot lid

- Applies to vehicles without power-operated boot lid: Pull the boot lid down slightly by the handle on the inside and let it drop into the latch. Or
- Applies to vehicles with power-operated boot lid: Refer to ⇒ page 42.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 40.

Power-operated boot lid

Applies to: vehicles with power-operated boot lid

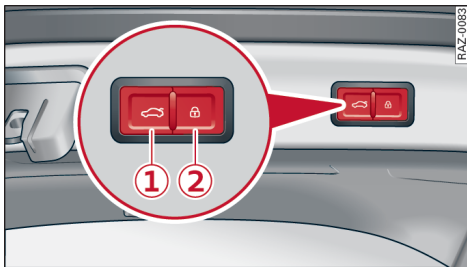










Fig. 29 Boot lid: ① close button*, ② lock button* (vehicles with convenience key*)


The boot lid can be opened and closed automatically ⇒ ⚠ in *General information on page 40*.

Opening boot lid

- ▶ Press the  button on the vehicle key ⇒ *page 37, Fig. 24* for at least one second with the ignition switched off. Or
- ▶ Briefly pull the  button in the driver's door ⇒ *page 41, Fig. 28*. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ *page 41, Fig. 27*. The vehicle key must be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the luggage compartment if the luggage compartment is locked.



Closing boot lid


- ▶ Press the  button inside the boot lid. Or
- ▶ Press the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ *page 41, Fig. 27*. Or
- ▶ Press the boot lid down slightly. Or
- ▶ With the ignition switched on, pull and hold the  button in the driver's door ⇒ *page 41, Fig. 28* until the boot lid is closed. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press and hold the  button on the vehicle key until the boot lid closes. Make sure to stand clear of the boot lid when doing so (do not stand further away than 1.5 m). Or
- ▶ Press the  button inside the boot lid. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with convenience key: With the ignition switched off, press the  /  button inside the boot lid. The vehicle key should be within a range of about 1.5 metres from the

luggage compartment and should not be inside the vehicle. The vehicle will be locked when you press the * button.

Stopping the automatic movement



The boot lid will stop moving if:

- ▶ You press the  button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇒ *page 41, Fig. 27* again. Or
- ▶ You press the  button on the convenience key*. Or
- ▶ The boot lid cannot open/close freely or there is an obstruction.

If you now press the  button or the release catch in the boot lid ⇒ *page 41, Fig. 27* again, the boot lid will open/close again.

Storing the open position of the boot lid

The boot lid must be opened at least as far as the minimum open setting, otherwise it will not be possible to store the setting.

- ▶ Open the boot lid as far as desired. When pulling the boot lid downwards, you should move it slowly in small steps; otherwise the boot lid will close automatically.
- ▶ Press the  button on the inside of the boot lid for at least four seconds to store the desired open position. A visual and audible signal will be given.
- ▶ To set a higher open position, wait for five seconds and then push the boot lid carefully upwards.
- ▶ Then press the  button for at least four seconds again to store the desired open position.

Opening/closing boot lid manually

The boot lid can be opened/closed manually if the power-operated mechanism fails or the vehicle battery charge is low. This will require more effort. If you move the boot lid slowly, less effort will be required.

- ▶ Pull the boot lid down slightly by the handle on the inside and then push the boot lid down until it closes. ▶

**WARNING**

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 40.

**Note**

If the vehicle key is in the luggage compartment or the passenger compartment while the boot lid is open, the button on the boot lid will not function.

Opening boot lid with a foot gesture (kicking movement)

Applies to: vehicles with sensor-controlled boot lid



Fig. 30 Rear of vehicle: Kicking movement (example)

The boot lid can be opened automatically ⇒ in *General information on page 40*.

Important: The ignition must be switched off and the convenience key function must be activated on the MMI. The convenience key* must be on your person. You must be standing centrally behind the boot lid. Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, it may also be possible to stand slightly off-centre behind the boot lid.

Activating/deactivating function

You can switch the foot gesture control for the boot lid on/off by activating/deactivating the function for unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) in the central locking menu ⇒ page 34, *Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

Opening boot lid

The turn signals flash to indicate that the boot lid is opening.

- To open the boot lid, swing your foot forwards and back under the bumper without touching it in one single fluid movement ⇒ Fig. 30. Take care not to slip. The boot lid will open when the system detects the gesture.

Stopping the automatic movement

The boot lid will stop moving if:

- You press button ⇒ page 42, Fig. 29 or the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ page 41, Fig. 27 again, or
- You press the button on the convenience key, or
- If it cannot open/close freely or if it is obstructed.

If you now press button ⇒ page 42, Fig. 29 or the release catch on the boot lid ⇒ page 41, Fig. 27 again, the boot lid will close/open again.

Information on using the foot gesture function correctly

The boot lid will open only if you make the exact gesture described above. This is to prevent the boot lid from opening in similar situations, for instance if you walk between the rear of the vehicle and a garage door. In certain situations, the system may be temporarily unavailable or the functionality may be restricted. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- If you are standing too close to or too far away from the bumper.
- If the boot lid was closed or opened immediately beforehand.
- If you park near a hedge and the wind blows the branches back and forth under the vehicle over an extended period.
- If you wash your vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner or drive through an automatic car wash.
- In heavy rain.
- If the bumper is very dirty (e.g. after driving on salted roads).
- If the radio signal from the convenience key was affected by interference from other transmitters (e.g. mobile phones or remote control devices).

Information on incorrect use

The boot lid may be opened unintentionally in situations such as the following:

- When sweeping under the rear bumper.
- If exposed to a strong jet of water or steam.
- When repair work is performed on or near the rear bumper.
- By gates moving in the area near the bumper.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 40*.
- Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened unintentionally if you have the convenience key on your person while you are behind the vehicle – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Please note that the sensor-controlled boot lid may be opened unintentionally (and could hit the garage ceiling) if you have the convenience key on your person while you are behind the vehicle.
- Always make sure that there are no valid keys within the area of detection around the boot lid.

CAUTION

Deactivate the function for unlocking with the convenience key (keyless access) on the MMI ⇒ *page 43, Activating/deactivating function* to prevent the boot lid from being opened unintentionally in the following situations:

- When you park the vehicle close to obstacles such as streetlights, posts or garage doors, or in an underground car park with a low ceiling
- Before washing the vehicle
- When using a car wash
- Before any maintenance and repair work on the vehicle
- Before fitting a bicycle carrier or attaching a trailer

Releasing the boot lid manually

The boot lid can be released manually from the inside.

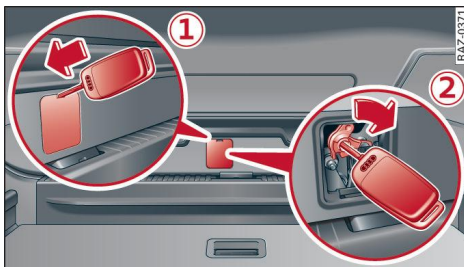



Fig. 31 Detail of inside of boot lid: Access to manual release

- ▶ Fold the rear seat backrest forwards ⇒ *page 82*.
- ▶ Fold open the vehicle key ⇒ *page 37, Fig. 24*.
- ▶ Prise off the cover  ① using the vehicle key.
- ▶ To unlock the boot lid, press the release lever in the direction of the arrow ② using the vehicle key.
- ▶ Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

WARNING

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 40*.

WARNING

After you have folded the backrest back upwards, always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Child lock

The child locks disable the rear window switches and prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

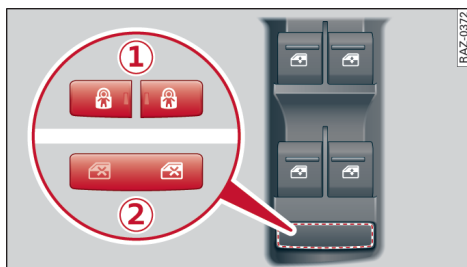


Fig. 32 Driver's door: Controls




Applies to: vehicles with manual child lock

Fig. 33 Rear door: Manual child lock


Vehicles with button

Applies to: vehicles with electric child lock

- To activate/deactivate the child lock (for the interior door handle and electric window switch) on each of the rear doors, press the left/right  button on the driver's door ① ⇒ Fig. 32. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.

Vehicles with button

Applies to: vehicles with manual child lock

- To activate/deactivate the child lock for the electric window switches in the rear doors, press the  button on the driver's door ② ⇒ Fig. 32. The LED in the button will light up or go out.
- To activate/deactivate the manual child lock for the interior handles in the rear doors, open the corresponding rear door and use the car key to

turn the key-operated switch in the direction of the arrow (or in the opposite direction) ⇒ Fig. 33. The rear door handle is out of action while the child lock is on.



- Make sure that the child lock is working by checking that the rear electric window switches and door handles are out of action.


Switching on the child lock deactivates the following functions:


- The rear interior door handles
- The rear window switches

Driver message in the instrument cluster display

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 /  **Child lock: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the child lock. Press the  button again.

If the message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified ⇒ .



WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 33.
- If there is a malfunction in the child lock, it may be possible to open the rear doors from the inside – risk of accident!

Electric windows

Opening/closing the windows

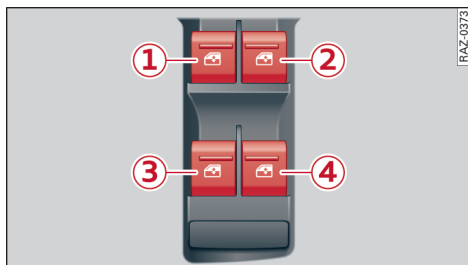


Fig. 34 Driver's door: Switches for electric windows

Switches for electric windows:

- ① Front left window
- ② Front right window
- ③ Rear left window
- ④ Rear right window

Opening/closing the windows

All of the window switches can be operated from the driver's seat. All electric windows have two-stage switches:



- ▶ To open/close the window automatically, press/pull the switch briefly to the second position. The window will stop moving immediately if the switch is operated again.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position, press/pull the switch to the first position until the window has reached the desired position.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 33*.
- Take care when closing the windows. Careless use of the windows can cause injuries.



Note

- The windows can be operated for a few minutes after the ignition has been switched off. The window switches are only deactivated when the driver's door or the front passenger's door is opened.
- The electric windows have a roll-back function. The window may stop moving upwards automatically, and may also re-open even when there does not appear to be an obstacle. Pull and hold the electric window switch until the window is fully closed.

- ▶ Press and hold the  button on the vehicle key until all the windows have reached the desired position and the sunroof* is open/closed ⇒ . Or:
- ▶ Touch and keep your hand in contact with the sensor* on the door handle ⇒ *page 38, Fig. 25* until all the windows and the sunroof* are closed. Do not rest your hand on the door handle while this is happening.

The turn signals flash once when all the windows and the sunroof* are closed.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 33*.
- Take care when closing the windows and the sunroof*. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries.
- For safety reasons, you should only use the vehicle key to open and close the windows and sunroof* when you are approx. 2 metres away from the vehicle and the vehicle is in sight. To avoid injuries, always keep an eye on the windows and the sunroof* when pressing the  button to close them. The windows and sunroof stop moving as soon as the  button is released.

Note

Applies to vehicles with panoramic glass roof:
If the roof blind is closed when you open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

Convenience open/close function

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

Convenience open/close function for windows/sunroof*

You can use the MMI to set whether all the windows and the sunroof* are opened all at once
⇒ *page 34, Adjusting the settings for the central locking system*.

Panoramic glass roof

Operating the sunroof and roof blind

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof and roof blinds

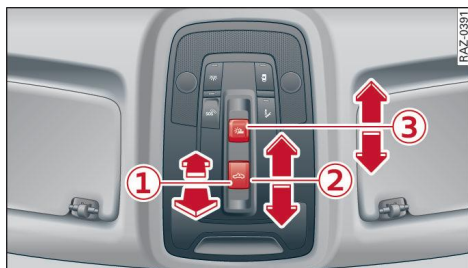


Fig. 35 Headliner: Switches for panoramic glass roof and sun blind*

The switches have two stages.

If the roof blind is closed when you tilt/slide open the roof, it will automatically be opened along with the roof.

Operating the roof blind

Applies to: Q3

The roof blind cannot be closed completely when the roof is open.

- ▶ To open/close the blind: Briefly slide the ☂ switch in the headliner ③ backwards/forwards to the second position.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position: Press/pull the ☂ switch to the first position until the blind has reached the desired position.

Operating the roof blind

Applies to: Q3 Sportback

The roof blind cannot be closed completely when the roof is open.

- ▶ To open/close the blind: Briefly slide the ☂ switch in the headliner ② backwards/forwards to the second position.
- ▶ To set an intermediate position: Press/pull the ☂ switch to the first position until the blind has reached the desired position.

Operating the sunroof

- ▶ To tilt the roof open: Briefly press the ☂ switch in the headliner upwards to the second position ①.

- ▶ To tilt the roof closed: Briefly pull the ☂ switch downwards to the second position.
- ▶ Applies when blind is open: To slide the roof open: Briefly slide the ☂ switch backwards to the second position ②.
- ▶ To slide the roof closed: Briefly slide the ☂ switch forwards to the second position.
- ▶ Applies when blind is open: To set an intermediate position: Slide, press or pull the ☂ switch to the first position until the roof has reached the desired position.

Opening quickly

The sunroof and roof blind can also be opened at the same time.

- ▶ Briefly slide the ☂ switch backwards to the second position twice ②.

If necessary, you can interrupt the quick opening/closing procedure by pressing the button again.

Closing the sunroof manually

If a trapped object is detected in the mechanism when the roof is closing, a safety cut-out will be triggered and the roof will open again automatically. If this happens, you can use the safety cut-out override to close it.

- ▶ After the panoramic glass roof opens automatically, pull and hold the ☂ switch within 5 seconds until the panoramic glass roof is closed.

WARNING

- Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 33*.
- Take care when closing the roof. Careless or uncontrolled use can cause injuries. For this reason, always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.

CAUTION

Always close the roof when you leave your vehicle and when it is raining or snowing to avoid damaging the interior equipment and, in particular, the electronic equipment.

Note

- The sunroof and the blind can still be operated for a few minutes after the ignition is switched off if neither of the front doors is opened.
- The sunroof cannot be opened if the temperature is too cold.

Garage door opener

Description

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

The garage door opener allows you to activate garage doors, security systems, home or office lighting and other electrical devices using control buttons inside your car. The functions are operated on the MMI. You can program several receivers, which perform the functions of up to eight¹⁾ hand-held transmitters.

WARNING

- When you are operating or programming the garage door opener, make sure that no persons or objects are close to the devices receiving the transmitter signals. Otherwise, persons might be injured or other damage caused by moving parts.
- Do not allow looking at the displays and operating the centre display to distract you from watching the traffic.

Note

Before you sell your vehicle, reset the settings to the factory defaults ⇒ *page 229*.

Note

Before programming your system for the garage door opener, please check that it is compatible:

- You can obtain information from your qualified workshop or at www.homelink.com. There you will also find further information on HomeLink.







- You can view information about HomeLink (compatibility level/status/country code/Homelink generation) on the MMI:
- On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener > ①**.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ *page 49, Programming*, the vehicle must be within range of the system and the ignition must be switched on.

Several options are available for opening/closing the garage door or other system.

- ▶ To display the  button (**garage door opener button**), press the  button in the status bar ⇒ *page 24*.
- ▶ If you have programmed only one hand-held transmitter, press the  button on the status bar of the centre display ⇒ *page 22*. Or
- ▶ If you have programmed more than one hand-held transmitter, press the  button on the status bar of the centre display ⇒ *page 22*, then press the appropriate button for the system. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with programmable steering wheel button: If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button, press the  button ⇒ *page 30*. Or
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with GPS link: If you have programmed the **GPS link**, press the appropriate button on the centre display (notification centre ⇒ *page 24*). The button will appear on the MMI shortly before you reach the linked system. Or
- ▶ When you select reverse gear, the parking aid* / reversing camera* / surround view camera* is shown on the centre display. To display the buttons for the first three garage door openers, press the  button in the status bar, then press the appropriate button for the system. ▶

¹⁾ The possible number of hand-held transmitters depends on the equipment.

When transmission has been completed successfully, the driver message **Send to: XXX** will appear.

Programming

Applies to: vehicles with garage door opener







The procedure described here is suitable for programming both fixed code and rolling code systems on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

Programming

Applies to: MMI

Important: You must have the hand-held transmitter with you, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door) you would like to program. If you program more than three hand-held transmitters, assign the first three slots to the systems you want to use in reverse gear.

- ▶ To display the garage door opener button , press the  button in the status bar
⇒ *page 24*.
- ▶ To program the garage door opener for the **first time**, press the  button on the centre display. Follow the instructions on the MMI. Or
- ▶ To program **further** systems, select the following on the home screen: **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**. Select the desired button: . Follow the instructions on the MMI.
- ▶ To **reprogram** a system, select the following on the home screen: **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**. Press the  button and select  for the system you would like to re-program. Select **Program**. Follow the instructions on the MMI.

For some systems, the garage door opener function will be available immediately after programming. For others, the garage door opener function must also be synchronised.

Synchronising¹⁾

Important: You must have already programmed the hand-held transmitter, and the vehicle must be within range of the system (e.g. garage door).

To synchronise the system directly following programming, follow the instructions on the MMI.

If you would like to synchronise at a later time:

- ▶ **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the button for the system you would like to synchronise.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

GPS link



Applies to: vehicles with GPS link


For more convenient operation, you can program in the location of your system.

Important: The relevant hand-held transmitter must have been programmed ⇒ *page 49* and the vehicle must be in front of the corresponding system.

- ▶ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or

If you wish to program the GPS link for a previously programmed system:

- ▶ **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ▶ Press the  button for the system your vehicle is currently positioned in front of.
- ▶ Select **GPS link**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

The notification centre ⇒ *page 24* can only display up to three programmed systems. If you would like to see all the systems, press .

Renaming an assignment



You can assign individual names (with up to 10 characters) to the systems you have programmed.

¹⁾ Applies only to rolling code systems

Opening and closing




- ▶ If you have just programmed your system, follow the instructions on the MMI. Or


If you wish to rename a previously programmed system:

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ▶ Press the  button for the system you would like to rename.
- ▶ Select **Rename**. You may have to delete the default name first (e.g. Garage door opener 1).
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the MMI.

Deleting a system

The programmed systems can be deleted individually or all at once.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.
- ▶ Press the  button.
- ▶ To delete an **individual** system, press the  button for the corresponding system. After the tick mark  is set, select **Delete**.
- ▶ To delete **all** systems, select: **All > Delete**.

- Press and hold the corresponding  button.
- Select **Yes, in UR-Mode** and follow the instructions on the MMI.

Note

- Before programming a button, make sure that the batteries in the hand-held transmitter are charged.
- The programming process can take up to 30 seconds, and you may need to press the button on the hand-held transmitter again during that time.
- It may be necessary to synchronise the garage door opener with the system after programming. Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

Note

- If a universal receiver is installed, the system must be programmed via “UR mode”.
- Switch on the ignition.
 - Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Garage door opener**.

Lights and vision

Exterior lights

Switching lights on and off

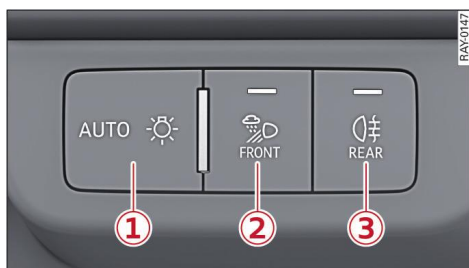






Fig. 36 Dashboard: Light switch module

① Light switch ☀

Press ① until the desired lighting function is selected. The selected function will be displayed briefly in the instrument cluster. The AUTO lighting function is selected automatically when the ignition is switched on.

- AUTO – The headlights are switched on automatically according to the ambient light conditions. On vehicles for some markets, the daytime running lights*, tail lights and number plate light are switched on permanently.
-  – You can turn on the dipped headlights as soon as you have switched on the ignition.
-  – You can turn on the side lights at speeds below 10 km/h.
- OFF – You can switch all of the light functions off at speeds below 10 km/h.

If the dipped headlights or side lights are switched on, the corresponding indicator lamp  /  will light up in the instrument cluster.

② All-weather lights

Applies to vehicles with all-weather lights: All-weather lights improve illumination of the road when visibility is poor.

③ Rear fog light

To avoid dazzling the traffic behind you, the rear fog light should only be used in accordance with country-specific regulations.

Automatic headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with automatic headlight range control. This prevents oncoming traffic from being dazzled when your vehicle is heavily loaded. The headlight range is adjusted automatically.


Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive light

With the adaptive light feature, you have better vision in the dark because the lights are controlled dynamically to match the vehicle speed and road conditions, e.g. on motorways or country roads, at intersections or through corners. The adaptive light feature can only be used when the AUTO lighting function is activated.




WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The automatic headlights are only intended to assist the driver. The driver must always ensure that the headlights are used when required, and may have to switch them on or off manually, e.g. when the light conditions or visibility are poor. For example, the light sensors are not able to detect fog. Therefore, you should always switch on the dipped headlights  in these conditions and when driving after dark.



Note

- If the vehicle battery has been losing charge for a while, the side lights or parking lights may be switched off automatically. Avoid using the side lights for long periods (several hours). Switch the left or right parking lights on where appropriate.
- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations when parking the vehicle and using the lights.
- When the daytime running lights are switched on*, only the front lights come on. On vehicles for some markets, the rear lights are also switched on.

- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals or rear lights can sometimes mist up, due to the temperature difference between the interior and exterior of the car. They should clear again partially or completely soon after you switch on the headlights. This has no influence on the life expectancy of the vehicle lights.
- When the side lights are switched on with the ignition switched off, the  symbol will light up in the light switch module.

Turn signal and main beam lever

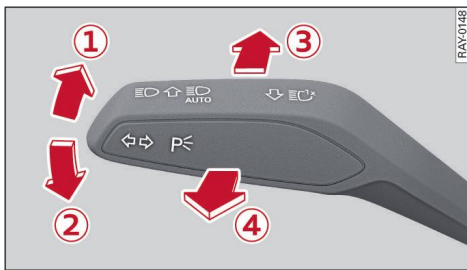




Fig. 37 Control lever: Switching light functions on/off


The turn signal lever also operates the parking lights, main beam headlights and headlight flasher.

Turn signals and parking lights P

The turn signals will flash if you move the lever while the ignition is switched on. The corresponding indicator lamp  or  will flash. If you just tap the lever, the turn signals will flash three times (one-touch signalling).

The parking lights will be switched on if you operate the lever with the ignition switched off:

- ① Turn signals/parking lights (right side)
- ② Turn signals/parking lights (left side)

When the ignition is switched off, you can switch on the parking lights on both sides by switching on the side lights  and locking the vehicle from outside.

If one of the indicator lamps flashes twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Drive care-

fully to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Main beam and headlight flasher

- Move the lever to the appropriate position:

- ③ Main beam headlights on (vehicles with main beam assist* → *page 52*)
- ④ Main beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beams or the headlight flasher in situations where they could dazzle other road users.

Main beam assist

Applies to: vehicles with main beam assist


The main beam assist automatically switches the main beam headlights on or off depending on the surrounding light conditions.


A camera (located in the mounting for the interior mirror) detects light sources from other road users. The main beams are activated/deactivated automatically depending on the position of vehicles on either side of the road, on the road speed, and on other traffic and ambient conditions.

On vehicles with matrix LED headlights*, individual segments of the main beam are activated/deactivated. The relevant sector in front of the vehicle is masked, while the surrounding areas remain lit. The ambient surroundings are thus illuminated optimally without dazzling other road users.

Activating the main beam assist




Important: The lights must be set to AUTO and the main beam assist function must be activated on the MMI → *page 53*.

- Briefly press the lever forwards ③ → *page 52*, Fig. 37 to activate the main beam assist. The indicator lamp  will light up in the instrument cluster display and the main beams will ►


be activated/deactivated automatically. The indicator lamp  is lit when the main beams are partially or fully on.

Activating/deactivating the main beams manually

If the main beams are not activated/deactivated as expected, you can do this manually:

- ▶ To activate the main beams manually, briefly press the lever forwards  ⇒ *page 52, Fig. 37*. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- ▶ To deactivate the main beams manually, pull the lever towards you  ⇒ *page 52, Fig. 37*. The main beam assist will be deactivated.

Flashing the headlights

- ▶ To flash the headlights, pull the lever towards you  ⇒ *page 52, Fig. 37*. The main beam assist function will remain activated if the headlights were dipped.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The main beam assist is only intended to assist the driver. It is always the driver who is responsible for controlling the lights and making adjustments according to the light conditions and visibility.
- The main beams can dazzle other road users. Risk of accident! Never use the main beams or the headlight flasher in situations where they could dazzle other road users.



Note

When using the lights, make sure you adhere to the relevant country-specific regulations, for example with regard to dazzling other road users. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Adjusting the settings for the exterior lighting

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▶ **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **CAR > Lights & vision > Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

The following settings are available in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time – You can determine how soon the lights are switched on by using the settings **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** to adjust the sensitivity of the light sensor.


Main beam assist – You can switch the main beam assist on/off.

Entry/exit lights

The **entry/exit lights** illuminate the area around the vehicle when the vehicle is unlocked or when the driver's door is opened with the ignition off. The entry/exit lights are operational in the dark when the lights are set to AUTO. The daytime running lights are switched on automatically every time the vehicle is unlocked, irrespective of the ambient light conditions.

Headlight dip settings for driving at home and abroad

If you drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, it is not necessary to adjust the headlights, as they are designed for use when driving on the left or right.

One exception to this is when you are driving on motorways. In this case you should turn the light switch to the dipped headlights setting  to prevent oncoming traffic from being dazzled.

Hazard warning lights

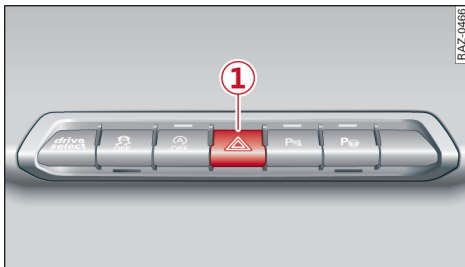




Fig. 38 Centre console: Hazard warning lights

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle in hazardous situations.

- Press the  button **1** to switch the hazard warning lights on/off.

When the hazard warning lights are on, the indicator lamps  and  both flash simultaneously.


If you brake hard at high speed, the brake lights will flash and the hazard warning lights will come on automatically¹⁾.


You can use the turn signals to indicate a change of direction (or lane) even when the hazard warning lights are on. The hazard warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp  lights up, a bulb has failed. The driver message shown indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message continues to be displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

 **Audi adaptive light: fault. See owner's manual**


The adaptive light feature is out of action. The dipped headlights will still be working normally. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

 **Headlight range control: fault. See owner's manual**


There is a malfunction in the headlight range control which may cause other road users to be dazzled. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

 **Main beam assist: fault. See owner's manual**

You can still switch the main beam headlights on and off manually. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

 **Main beam assist: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual**

This message will appear if the camera view is obstructed. The system will switch itself off. Try switching the system on again later.

 **Automatic headlights: fault. See owner's manual**

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. For safety reasons, the dipped beam headlights will then be switched on permanently when the lights are set to AUTO. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Interior lights


Front interior lights




Fig. 39 Headliner: Interior lights



¹⁾ This function is not available in all countries.

Buttons for interior lights

 – Interior lights on/off

 – Courtesy lighting on/off. The interior lights are switched on and off automatically when this function is activated.

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

- Briefly touch the surface  to turn the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function, touch the surface  when the light is switched off, and hold your finger on the surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Rear interior lights

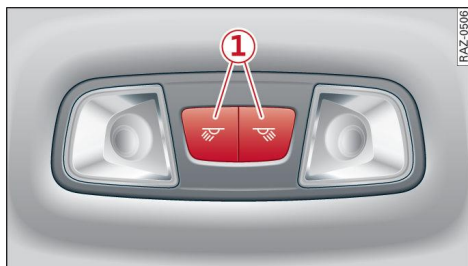






Fig. 40 Headliner: Reading lights

Reading lights

- Press the  button  to switch the appropriate reading light on/off.
- To use the manual dimmer function*, press the  button  when the light is switched off, and keep pressing it until the desired brightness level is reached.

Background lighting

Applies to: vehicles with background lighting

The background lighting turns on when the ignition is switched on. The background lighting is deactivated when the light function is OFF.

The following settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Lights & vision > Background lighting**.

Available settings:

- Colours
- Brightness

Display brightness

You can adjust the standard brightness of the instrument cluster and display lighting. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Display & brightness**.

Available settings:

- Cockpit dimming
- MMI
- Audi virtual cockpit

Clear vision



Adjusting the exterior mirrors





Fig. 41 Driver's door: Adjuster knob for exterior mirrors

- Turn the knob in the driver's door to the appropriate position:

0 – To deactivate all setting functions.

  – To select the exterior mirror (left or right side). To adjust the mirror surface, tilt the knob in the desired direction.

 – To heat* the mirrors (depends on the outside temperature).

 – To fold in the exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to any of the other positions. One of the MMI settings allows you to control whether or not the mirrors are folded in automatically when you lock the vehicle

⇒ page 34.

Tilt function* for exterior mirror on passenger side

Important: The knob must be in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side.

The mirror is tilted slightly when you select reverse gear in order to provide a better view of the kerb, for example, when reversing into a space.

You can adjust the mirror surface by tilting the knob in the desired direction.

The mirror returns to its original position from the reversing position:

- When you switch off the ignition
- If you drive forwards faster than 15 km/h.
- If the knob is no longer in the position for adjusting the exterior mirror on the passenger side

WARNING

Convex or wide-angle* exterior mirrors give a larger field of vision. However, they make objects look smaller and further away than they really are. If you use these mirrors to estimate the distance to vehicles behind you when changing lane, you could misjudge the distance. Risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Applies to vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), the mirrors must be fully retracted with the electric control. You will hear a loud noise when the mirrors snap back into place. Do not readjust the mirror housing by hand, as this will interfere with the mirror adjuster function.
- Applies to vehicles without electrically retractable exterior mirrors: If one of the mirror housings is knocked out of position (e.g. when parking), it must be returned to its proper position by hand.
- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent them from being damaged. Electrically retractable exterior

mirrors* must NOT be folded in or out by hand. Always use the electrical power control.

Note

If the electrical adjustment should fail to operate, both of the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by lightly pressing the edge of the mirror glass.

Anti-dazzle setting

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

- Pull the lever at the bottom of the mirror towards you.

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors*

- The interior and exterior mirrors* will darken automatically when bright light (e.g. from the headlights of a following vehicle) shines on the surface of the interior mirror.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

Electrolyte fluid can leak from a broken automatic anti-dazzle mirror. This fluid can damage plastic surfaces and paintwork. Use a wet sponge or similar to remove the fluid as soon as possible.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic anti-dazzle mirrors

- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors may not function as intended if the light falling on the surface of the interior mirror is obstructed.

- The automatic anti-dazzle mirrors do not darken if the interior lighting is on or the car is in reverse gear.

Sun visors



Sun visor

The sun visors can be pulled out of their mountings and turned towards the door ①.

Make-up mirrors

The light* for the make-up mirror comes on automatically when you slide open the mirror cover ②.

Windscreen wipers

Switching on the windscreen wipers

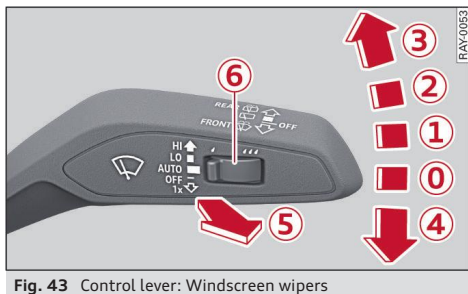


Fig. 43 Control lever: Windscreen wipers



Fig. 44 Control lever: Rear window wiper

► Move the lever to the appropriate position:

⑦ Wipers off

① Rain sensor/intermittent wipe. As long as the vehicle has been moving faster than approx. 4 km/h at least once, the windscreen wipers will be activated automatically in the rain. The higher the sensitivity level for the rain sensor (i.e. the further switch ⑥ is moved to the right), the sooner the windscreen wipers react to moisture on the windscreen. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode (this will activate the intermittent wipe mode). In intermittent wipe mode, you can adjust the interval with switch ⑥.

► Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Lights & vision > Rain sensor**.

② Slow wipe

③ Fast wipe

④ Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position, the wipers will switch from slow continuous wiping to fast continuous wiping after a while.


⑤ Wash/wipe . The number of wipe and extra-wipe cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position ⑤.

The windscreen is given an extra wipe a few seconds later to remove any dribbles of water (if the vehicle is moving). You can deactivate this function by moving the lever to position ⑤ again within 10 seconds after the extra wipe. The extra-wipe function is activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.


If you hold the lever in position ⑤ for more than half a second, the extended wipe function will be activated. In this case, the windscreen wiper will move closer to the edge of the windscreen during ►

the extra wipe, and remove the dirt collected during the wiping cycle. This function is available at speeds of up to 120 km/h.

The headlight washer system* only operates when the dipped headlights are switched on. The headlights are also automatically washed intermittently when you move the lever to position ⑤.

⑦ Rear wiper . The frequency of the rear wiper depends on the frequency of the windscreen wipers.

If the windscreen wipers are on and in operation, the rear window wiper will also be switched on automatically when you engage reverse gear.

⑧ Rear wash/wipe . The number of wiper cycles depends on how long you hold the lever in position ⑧.

WARNING

- The rain sensor is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still obliged to manually operate the windscreen wipers as required depending on visibility.
- Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle, which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.
- Poor visibility can cause accidents. Always ensure that the wiper blades are in good condition ⇒ page 58, *Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades*.

CAUTION

- In icy conditions, check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the wiper blades are frozen to the windscreen when you switch on the windscreen wipers, this could damage the wiper blades.
- Make sure you switch off the windscreen wiper system (lever in position ①) before you use an automatic car wash. This will avoid inadvertent triggering of the wipers and possible damage to the wiper system.

Note

- The windscreen wipers are deactivated when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windscreen wipers after switching the ignition on again by moving the lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty wiper blades can cause smearing on the glass. This can also impair the effectiveness of the rain sensor. Please check the wiper blades regularly.
- If you stop briefly, e.g. at traffic lights, the wiper speed setting will automatically be reduced by one level.

Cleaning/changing the windscreen wiper blades

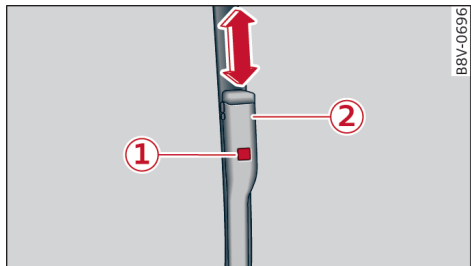


Fig. 45 Windscreen wipers: Changing wiper blades

Wiper change position

- ▶ Switch the ignition off, move the windscreen wiper lever to position ④ ⇒ page 57, Fig. 43 and hold it there until the wipers move into the wiper change position.
- ▶ To move the windscreen wipers back to their original position, switch on the ignition and hold the lever in position ④ until the wipers have returned to their original position, or drive faster than 12 km/h.

Applies to MMI: You can also switch the wiper change position on/off in the centre display:

- ▶ Switch the windscreen wipers off (position ①) ⇒ page 57, Fig. 43).
- ▶ On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Wiper change position**.

Cleaning wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇒ *table on page 264*.

Changing wiper blades

Important: The wipers must be in the wiper change position.

- Lift the wiper arm away from the glass.
- Keep hold of the wiper blade.
- Press the release button ① on the wiper blade.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the mounting on the wiper arm ②.
- Fit the new wiper blade into the mounting on the wiper arm. You should hear it engage.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the windscreen.
- Switch off the wiper change function.



WARNING

- For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.
- Dirty wiper blades can impair the driver's view – risk of accident!



CAUTION

- The wipers must be in the wiper change position before they are lifted off the windscreen! Otherwise the wiper motor or the paintwork on the bonnet may be damaged.
- Never move your vehicle or operate the lever while the wiper arms are off the glass in a raised position. The wipers will otherwise automatically return to their park position and may damage the bonnet and windscreen.



Note

- You can also use the wiper change position, for example, if you want to fix a cover over the windscreen in the winter to keep it clear of ice.
- You cannot activate the wiper change position when the bonnet is open.

Cleaning/changing the rear wiper blade



Fig. 46 Rear window wiper: Attaching the wiper blade

Cleaning the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Notes on cleaning ⇒ *table on page 264*.

Taking off the wiper blade

- Lift the rear wiper arm away from the glass.
- Pull the wiper blade out of the retainer.

Fitting the wiper blade

- Press the mounting on the wiper blade into the retainer.
- Fold the wiper arm back down onto the rear window.




WARNING

For safety, the wiper blades should be changed once or twice a year.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the indicator lamp  lights up, there is a fault in the wiper system. The driver message shown in addition indicates the cause and what action should be taken. If a message remains displayed and does not disappear, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.



Automatic wipers: fault. See owner's manual

The light sensor/rain sensor is out of action. You can continue to use all the other functions of the windscreen wiper lever that do not use the rain

sensor. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Sitting correctly and safely

Ensuring the correct seating position

General information

As the driver, you are responsible for ensuring that all vehicle occupants are sitting in the correct position and that they stay in this position for the entire journey. Ensure that:

- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their seat correctly ⇒ *page 61*.
- The steering wheel is set correctly ⇒ *page 64*.
- The mirrors have been adjusted so that you have a good view of the surrounding area ⇒ *page 55*.
- Every vehicle occupant has adjusted their head restraint correctly ⇒ *page 65*.
- Every vehicle occupant has fastened their seat belt correctly ⇒ *page 66*.
- Applies to vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: The front passenger's airbag is activated or deactivated as appropriate for the person occupying the front passenger's seat ⇒ *page 72*.
- Any children are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system on an appropriate seat ⇒ *page 72*. Please read the important safety information about the use of child restraint systems on the front passenger's seat ⇒ ⚠ in *General information on page 72*.

Examples of incorrect seating positions

Seat belts can only provide maximum protection if the belt webbing is positioned correctly. Sitting out of position greatly reduces the effectiveness of the seat belts and increases the risk of injury since the belt webbing is not worn in the position for which it is designed.

The list below contains examples of incorrect positions which can be dangerous to all vehicle occupants. The list is not complete, but will help to make you aware of possible dangers which can be avoided. Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- Never stand up in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never travel with the backrest reclined too far.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie down on the rear seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.
- Never lean out of the window.
- Never put your feet out of the window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never put your feet on the seat cushion.
- Never ride in the footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never climb into the luggage compartment.



WARNING

Sitting out of position, not wearing a seat belt or being too close to the airbag exposes the occupants to potentially fatal injuries if, for instance, the airbags inflate and strike an occupant who is not seated in one of the proper positions. Please note the important information and safety precautions in the corresponding chapters on the subjects above.



Note

If physical factors prevent you from being able to assume a correct seating position, please contact a qualified automotive specialist.

Front seats

General information

Ensure that:

- You can press the pedals down completely with your legs still slightly bent.
- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel/dashboard.
- Your knees are at least 10 cm away from the dashboard.
- Your thighs are resting lightly on the front of the seat cushion.

- The backrest is in an upright position and makes full contact with your back.
- You have a good view of your surroundings.
- You have an unobstructed view of the instrument cluster and warning/indicator lamps.

WARNING

- If you are too close to the steering wheel/dash panel, the airbag system cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
- To reduce the risk of injury to the driver in the case of sudden braking or an accident, you should never drive with the backrest reclined. The airbag system and seat belts can only provide proper protection when the backrest is in an upright position and the driver is wearing the seat belt in the correct position. If the backrest is reclined too far, the seat belt may slide away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach – risk of injury!
- Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless use of the seat adjustment controls can cause injuries to both the front seat and rear seat occupants.
- Never place objects in the driver's footwell. Such objects could move under the pedals and interfere with their proper function. In the event of sudden braking or a change of direction, you would not be able to use the pedals. This could result in a loss of control and possibly cause an accident.
- Always make sure that the floor mats are properly secured.
- Never lay additional floor mats or other floor coverings over the existing floor mats; this would restrict the pedal area and possibly obstruct the pedals, which could cause an accident.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat, as this could lead to injury. This also applies to the rear seat occupants.

CAUTION

Take care when adjusting the seat to ensure the head restraint does not collide with the roof. This could cause damage.

Manual adjustment of front seats

Applies to: vehicles with manual seat adjustment

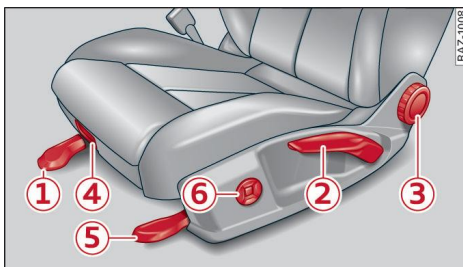


Fig. 47 Front seat: Adjuster controls

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the seat position

- ▶ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever **1** and move the seat.
- ▶ To move the seat upwards/downwards, pull/press the lever **2**.

Adjusting the backrest

- ▶ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, turn the knob **3**.

Adjusting the thigh support

- ▶ To move the thigh support in or out, lift the handle **4** and slide it in either direction.

Adjusting the seat cushion angle

- ▶ To adjust the angle of the seat cushion, pull/press the lever **5**.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▶ To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button **6**.

Electric adjustment of front seats

Applies to: vehicles with electric seat adjustment

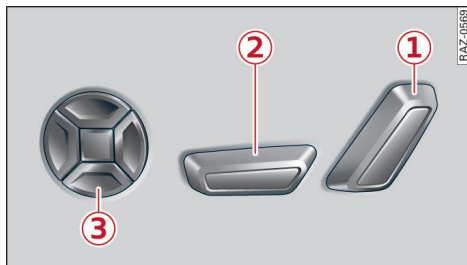


Fig. 48 Front seat: Buttons for seat adjustment

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting the backrest

- ▶ To move the backrest forwards/backwards, press button ① forwards/backwards.

Adjusting the seat position

- ▶ To move the seat forwards/backwards, push button ② forwards/backwards.
- ▶ To move the seat up/down, press the rear area of button ② upwards/downwards.
- ▶ To adjust the seat cushion, press the front area of button ② upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▶ To adjust the lumbar support, press the appropriate side of the button ③.



WARNING

The electric front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is off. To avoid accidental injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle.

Front centre armrest

Applies to: vehicles with front centre armrest

The front centre armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the centre armrest

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

- ▶ To move the armrest forwards/backwards, move it in the corresponding direction.
- ▶ To adjust the angle, lift the armrest until it engages in the desired position.
- ▶ To move the armrest back to the initial position, lift the armrest slightly from the top position and then fold it back down.



WARNING

In certain positions, the centre armrest may limit arm movement – risk of injury!

Memory function

General information

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function can be used to store and call up seat profiles via the recall buttons in the door trim.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, settings such as the position of the driver's seat and the exterior mirrors can be stored.

Storing and calling up seat profile

Applies to: vehicles with memory function

The memory function buttons are located in the door trim.

Storing seat profile

- ▶ Press the **SET** button. When the LED in the button lights up, a seat profile can be stored.
- ▶ Press one of the numbered recall buttons. A tone will sound to confirm that the settings have been stored.

Recalling seat profile

- ▶ If the corresponding door is open and the ignition is off, briefly press the recall button once. All the settings for the seat profile will be applied.
- ▶ If the corresponding door is closed or the ignition is on, press and hold the recall button until the seat profile settings have been applied. ▶

WARNING

- For safety reasons, never recall seat settings when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
- If necessary, the recall function can be stopped at any time by pressing the seat adjustment button in the door/on the display for the relevant seat.

Adjusting the seat position

- ▶ To move the seat forwards/backwards, pull the lever ⇨ *Fig. 49* and move the seat.
- ▶ Release the bar and move the seat further until it locks in position.

Adjusting the backrest

- ▶ Hold the backrest with one hand while pulling the ring ① with the other.
- ▶ Move the backrest forwards/backwards to the desired position.
- ▶ Let go of the ring again and keep moving the backrest until it locks in place.

Rear seats

General information

WARNING

- Never adjust the seats when the vehicle is moving – this could lead to an accident.
- Be careful when adjusting the seats. Careless or uncontrolled use of the height adjustment can cause injuries.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.

Steering wheel

General information

Ensure that:

- Your torso is at least 25 cm away from the steering wheel.
- Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows.
- You have a good view of your surroundings and can see the instrument cluster at all times
- You always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the rim at about the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position while driving.

WARNING

- Before setting off, make sure that the steering wheel is correctly adjusted and that it cannot slip out of the engaged position – risk of accident!
- If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver airbag cannot protect you correctly – risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or with your hands inside the rim or on the steering wheel hub. This could result in serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the driver's airbag inflates.

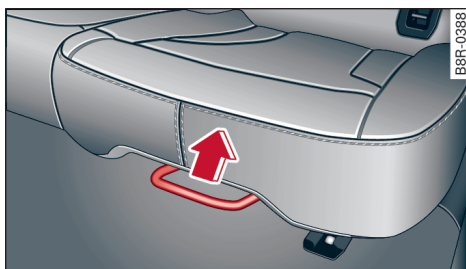


Fig. 49 Adjusting the seat position

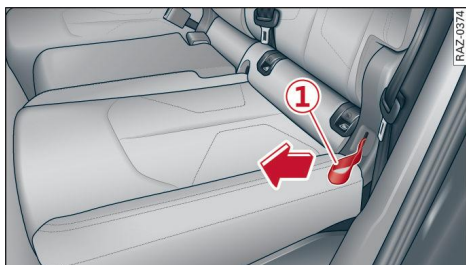


Fig. 50 Adjusting the backrest

Adjusting the steering wheel position (manual adjustment)

Applies to: vehicles with manual steering wheel adjustment

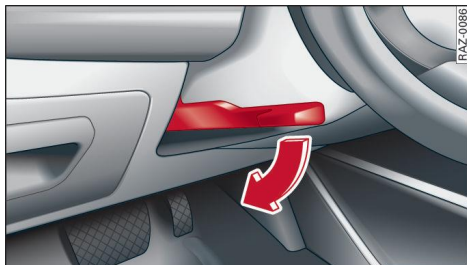


Fig. 51 Steering column: Lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

- ▶ Press the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- ▶ Move the steering wheel to the desired position.
- ▶ Push the lever all the way up until the catch engages.



WARNING

- Adjust the position of the steering wheel only before driving off – risk of accident!
- Press the lever upwards so it is secure and so that the position of the steering wheel cannot shift unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

Head restraints

General information

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

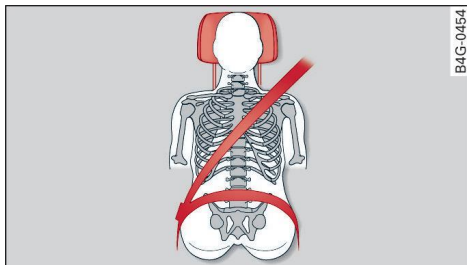


Fig. 52 Correctly adjusted head restraint

Ensure that:

- The top of the head restraint is level with the top of your head.
- The head restraint is as close as possible to the back of your head.
- The head restraints on any occupied rear seats are pulled all the way up.



WARNING

- There is a head restraint for every seat. It is very important that all vehicle occupants adjust their head restraint correctly before every trip. Incorrectly adjusted head restraints can increase the risk of neck injuries in an accident or during sudden or unexpected braking or other manoeuvres.
- Remove the rear head restraints only if this is necessary in order to attach a child restraint system ⇒ page 72. Store head restraints securely if you remove them, e.g. in the luggage compartment. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system. Travelling with the head restraints removed increases the risk of severe neck injuries.

Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

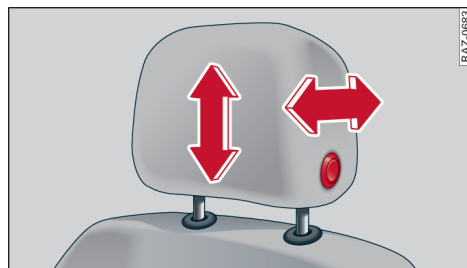


Fig. 53 Front seat: Adjusting head restraint

The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Adjusting head restraint

- ▶ To raise the head restraint or move it forwards, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.

- To lower the head restraint or move it backwards, press the side button and move the head restraint in the desired direction. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

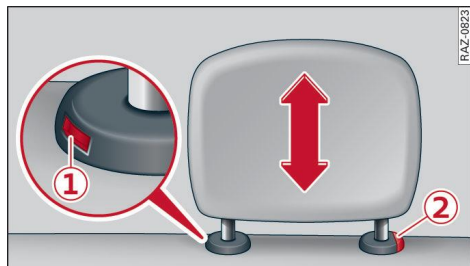


Fig. 54 Rear seat: Operating the head restraint

Adjusting head restraint

- To raise the head restraint, adjust the position of the head restraint until you feel it click into place.
- To move the head restraint to the fully raised or lowered position, press the button (2) and move the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint further until you feel it click into place.

Removing head restraint

- Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ page 82.
- Raise the head restraint as far as it will go.
- Use a suitable tool from the vehicle toolkit or open the blade of the vehicle key or emergency key and press it into the release point (1) ⇒ Fig. 54 on the inside or outside of the base.
- Press the button (2) and pull the head restraint out of the backrest ⇒ ⚠ in General information on page 65.

Installing head restraint

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- Fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ page 82.
- Push the posts of the head restraint into the guides until you feel them click into place.
- Press the button (2) and push the head restraint all the way down. It should no longer be possi-

ble to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button.

Seat belts

General information

Every seat is equipped with a three-point seat belt. When worn correctly, seat belts are the most effective way to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries in an accident. You should therefore always wear your seat belt correctly and you should also ensure that all vehicle occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly while the vehicle is moving.

Although the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, every vehicle occupant must still wear a seat belt. In addition to their normal function of protecting the vehicle occupants in a collision, the seat belts also hold them in a position where the airbags can inflate properly and provide maximum protection. Seat belts offer protection in accidents in which no airbags are triggered or where they have already been triggered.



WARNING

- The risk of severe or fatal injury is increased if the seat belt is worn incorrectly or not at all, or if it is damaged.
- All vehicle occupants (including the driver) must put their seat belt on correctly before every trip and must always keep it on while the vehicle is moving, regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not. This also applies to children who are being secured in a child restraint system appropriate to their height, weight and age using the seat belt.
 - In the event of an accident, anyone not wearing a seat belt will be thrown around in the vehicle and make violent contact with the steering wheel, dashboard, windscreen, doors, etc. They could even be thrown out of the vehicle. Rear passengers not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves but also the other occupants.
 - Never allow passengers to share the same seat belt. Never secure more than one

person (including small children) with the same seat belt.

- Never travel with children or babies on your lap and never share the same seat belt.
- To ensure that the seat belt is fully effective, the latch plate must always be engaged in the correct buckle for a particular seat.
- To ensure that the seat belts can provide maximum protection, all vehicle occupants must be seated in the correct seating position ⇒ *page 61*.
- Check the condition of the seat belts at regular intervals ⇒ *page 264*. If you notice that the belt webbing, fittings, retractor mechanism or buckle of any of the belts is damaged, the belt must be replaced by a qualified workshop.
- The seat belts must not be removed or modified in any way. Do not attempt to repair a damaged belt yourself.
- Seat belts which have been worn in an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Seat belts must always be worn correctly in order to provide the best possible protection in the event of an accident and to reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries. Correctly worn seat belts also hold the vehicle occupants in position in such a way that the airbags provide maximum protection if they are triggered. For this reason, it is essential that you always fasten your seat belt and ensure that it is worn correctly ⇒ *Fig. 55*.

Make sure that you are wearing your seat belt correctly by checking the following points:

- The lap belt section of the seat belt should be worn tightly across the hips.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder.
- The seat belt must always make firm and even contact with the body.

At all times during pregnancy, women must wear the seat belt so that it runs evenly across the chest and as low as possible over the hips; the belt must make even contact so that there is no pressure on the stomach ⇒ *Fig. 56*.

Wearing a seat belt correctly

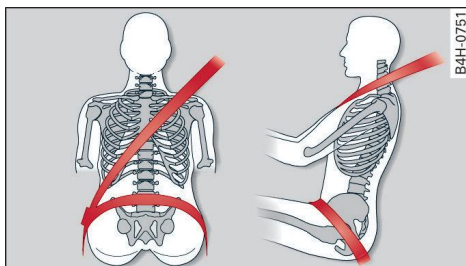


Fig. 55 Positioning seat belts over lap/shoulder

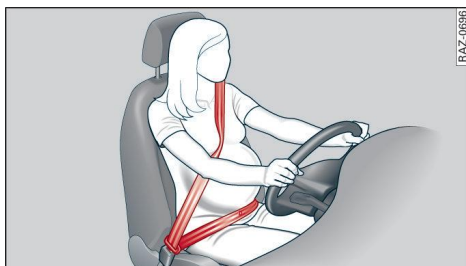


Fig. 56 Positioning seat belts during pregnancy

WARNING

Wearing a seat belt incorrectly may result in serious injuries in the event of an accident or under sudden braking or manoeuvres.

- Never travel in a moving vehicle with the backrest reclined. The further the backrest is tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the seat belt.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if it slides away from harder body parts towards softer areas such as the stomach.
- The shoulder section of the seat belt should be fitted across the centre of the shoulder and torso and never under the arm, behind the back or over the neck or face.
- The lap belt section of the seat belt must be worn tightly across the hips, and never over the stomach or abdomen.
- The seat belt must make firm and even contact with the upper body and hips.

- Do not allow the seat belt to become twisted or jammed, or to rub on any sharp edges.
- The protection offered by the seat belt in an accident is reduced if the height of the belt is not correctly adjusted or if the seat belt is not properly positioned. Make sure that the seat belts are properly positioned and the height correctly adjusted to suit the vehicle occupants.
- Seat belts worn too loose can result in injuries because they allow excessive forward movement in a crash; the occupant will be brought to a sudden stop by the belt webbing.
- Loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket) impairs the proper fit and function of the belts.
- Do not wear the belt over hard or fragile objects (such as glasses or pens, etc.).
- During pregnancy, women must wear the lap belt section of the seat belt as low as possible across the hips and underneath the rounded stomach.

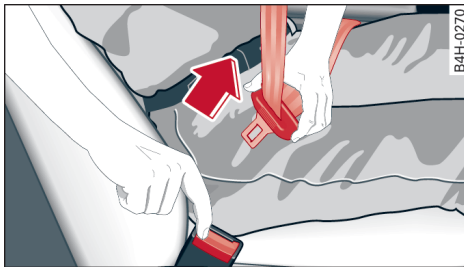


Fig. 58 The latch plate of the belt springs out of the buckle

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 66*.

Fastening the seat belt

- ▶ To fasten the belt, take hold of the latch plate and pull it slowly across your chest and lap.
- ▶ Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it is securely locked with an audible click ⇒ *Fig. 57*.
- ▶ Pull the belt to check that it is now securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

- ▶ Press the red button in the seat belt buckle ⇒ *Fig. 58*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- ▶ Guide the belt back by hand so that it is taken up more easily.

Seat belt monitor

- 🚨 – If the warning lamp lights up/flashes in the instrument cluster, one of the seat belts is not fastened/was unfastened while the vehicle was moving. Audible warning signals may also be given.

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the status of the rear seat belts may also be monitored by the following indicator lamps in the instrument cluster:

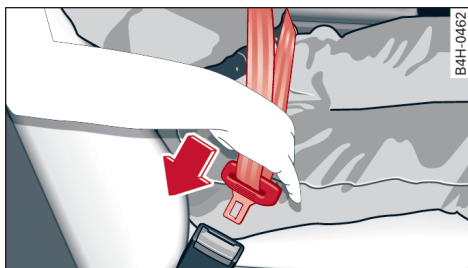
- 🚦 – If the indicator lamp lights up, the seat belt for the corresponding rear seat is not buckled or the seat is not occupied.
- 🚦 – If the indicator lamp lights up, the rear seat belt has been fastened.

Fig. 57 Latch plate and buckle

CAUTION

Make sure that no velcro fasteners or sharp objects, such as zip fasteners or rivets on clothing, are in the way of the seat belt while you are wearing it; otherwise the seat belt could be damaged.

Fastening/unfastening the seat belt



Adjusting seat belt height

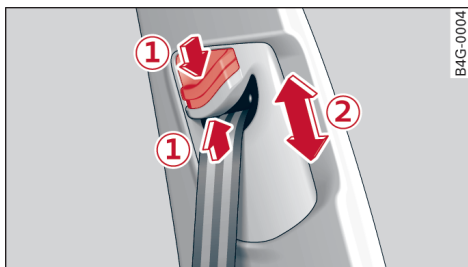


Fig. 59 Belt height adjustment for the front seats: guide fitting

- ▶ To move the seat belt higher, slide the guide fitting ② upwards.
- ▶ To move the seat belt lower, squeeze the release mechanism ① and slide the guide fitting ② downwards.
- ▶ After adjusting, pull the shoulder belt sharply to check that the catch on the guide fitting is engaged securely.

Note

It is also possible to adjust the height of the front seats to obtain the best position for the front seat belts.

Additional seat belt functions

Automatic belt retractors

The seat belts are equipped with automatic belt retractors. The retractor system gives complete freedom of movement, as long as the pull on the belt is slow. Hard braking locks the belt. The belt will also lock when you accelerate, drive up or down a steep hill or corner sharply.

Belt force limiters

Seat belts with belt force limiters reduce the forces acting on the body from the seat belts themselves in an accident.

Belt tensioners

Seat belts with reversible belt tensioners may be tightened in certain driving situations. This is done if the belt is too loose and needs to be tak-

en up in order to lie more tightly against the body.

Seat belts with pyrotechnic belt tensioners may be tensioned automatically in certain types of collision. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

The pyrotechnic system can only be activated once. If the pyrotechnic belt tensioners have been activated at any time, the system must be replaced by a qualified workshop.

Note

Some smoke may be released when the pyrotechnic belt tensioners are activated. This does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

General information

WARNING

- If you do not wear a seat belt or sit in the correct position, or if you are seated too close to the airbag system, you will not be fully protected by the airbag system. This puts you at risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that all occupants are seated in the correct position with their seat belts fastened ⇒ *page 67*. This applies regardless of whether the seat is equipped with an airbag or not.
- Never place your feet on the dashboard, out of the windows or on the seat. To ensure that the airbag systems can open without obstructions, never lean forwards or lean on the door or the side window. You could otherwise sustain potentially fatal injuries if the airbags are triggered.
- Persons, pets or objects positioned between the airbag system and the occupant will prevent the airbag system from inflating properly and could be catapulted through the vehicle cabin – risk of serious or fatal injury. Ensure that there are no objects between the vehicle occupants and the airbag

system. Never secure or carry objects in the area of inflation of the airbag systems, in particular around the steering wheel, on the dashboard, against the doors, on the windows and in the footwell.

- Never apply stickers or other coverings to the airbag system covers.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- If you intend to fit protective covers over the seats, these must be of the specific type approved for use on Audi seats with side airbags. The side airbags inflate from the backrest and the protection they provide would otherwise be seriously impaired.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery in the area from which the airbags inflate must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Components of the airbag system are located in various parts of the vehicle. Improper servicing or repairs to the vehicle can cause damage to parts of the airbag system or prevent the airbags from working properly. As a result, the airbags may not inflate correctly or may not be triggered at all in an accident situation, putting the occupants at risk of serious or fatal injury. Have any repairs or modifications to the vehicle carried out by a qualified workshop.
- The airbag system can only be activated once; after it has been triggered, have the

airbag system replaced by a qualified workshop without delay.

- The airbag may release a fine dust when it is triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can irritate the skin and eyes and/or cause breathing issues, particularly in persons who suffer or have suffered from asthma or other breathing issues. Get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors to breathe in fresh air.




Note

If you are travelling with children, please note the information and safety precautions

⇒ page 72.

Safety system monitoring

The indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including control units, sensors and wiring) and belt tensioners. It lights up for a few seconds when you switch on the ignition.

If the indicator lamp does not light up when you switch on the ignition, if it does not go out after a few seconds, or if it lights up or flashes while you are driving, there is a fault in one of the safety systems. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.



WARNING

Have the fault in the safety systems examined without delay; otherwise the systems may fail to trigger in an accident – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Description

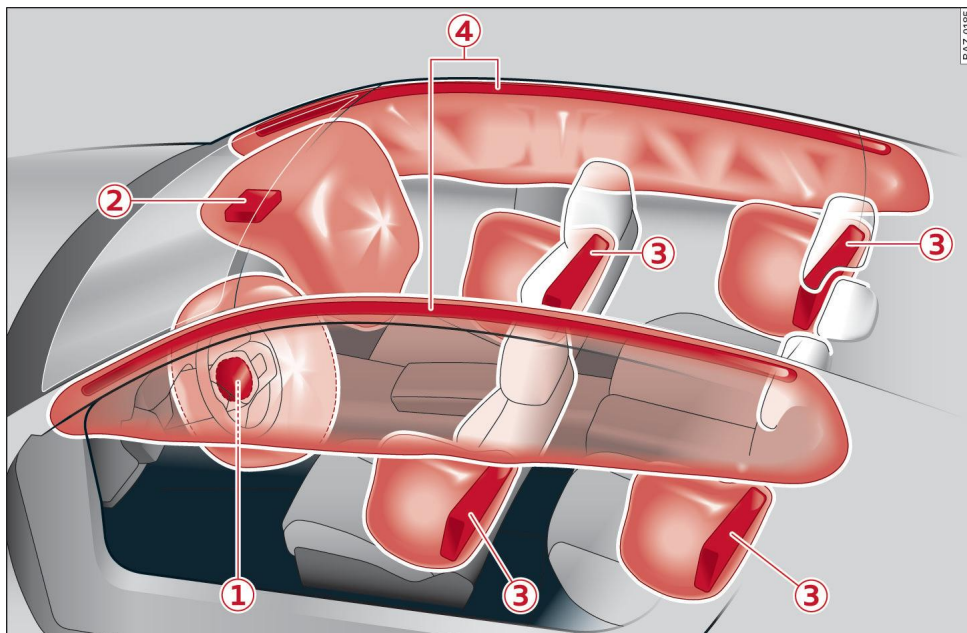


Fig. 60 Overview of airbags (inflation area after airbags are triggered)

The locations of the airbags are marked with the word “AIRBAG”. The following airbags are fitted in your vehicle:

- ① Driver's airbag
- ② Front passenger's airbag
- ③ Front side airbags and rear side airbags (optional)
- ④ Head-protection airbags

The airbags in your vehicle provide the greatest possible protection in accident situations when passengers are seated in the correct position with their seat belts properly fastened. Airbags are a supplementary restraint system; they are not a substitute for seat belts.

The airbags may be triggered in accidents affecting the front or side areas of the vehicle or in which the vehicle overturns.

It is not possible to define the exact triggering response of the airbag system in all possible situations, since the circumstances in different types of accident will vary considerably. Important fac-

tors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed and so on. Whether the airbags are triggered depends primarily on the vehicle deceleration rate resulting from the collision. By processing the signals from the sensors located in the vehicle, the electronic control unit is immediately able to evaluate the severity of the collision and activate the restraint systems accordingly. If the deceleration rate is below the predefined reference value in the control unit the airbags will not be triggered, even though the accident may cause extensive damage to the car. In these situations, the occupants are restrained by the correctly fastened seat belts.

When an airbag is triggered, it is filled with gas. This causes the relevant airbag cover panel to break off. The airbag then opens into its deployment zone in milliseconds, with significant force. As the seat belt-restrained occupants move in the direction of the impact, the inflated airbags slow their movement, thereby helping to protect e.g. the head, torso and pelvis. Nonetheless, the

possibility cannot be ruled out completely that an airbag might cause injury when triggered.

The airbag system works when the ignition is on.

Deactivating the front passenger's airbag

Applies to: vehicles with key-operated switch for front passenger's airbag



Fig. 61 Glove box: Key-operated switch for deactivating front passenger's airbag



Fig. 62 Headliner: Indicator lamp for status of front passenger's airbag

It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.

If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always switch the front passenger's airbag off ⇒ *page 74*. If you have deactivated the front passenger's airbag, reactivate it as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed so that the airbag can continue to give the required protection.

- To deactivate the front passenger's airbag, insert the blade of the vehicle key into the key-operated switch and turn it to the **OFF** position ⇒ *Fig. 61*. The indicator lamp **OFF** with a red 'X' icon will light up and remain lit.

- The front passenger's airbag can be reactivated by turning the vehicle key to the **ON** position. The indicator lamp **ON** with a green checkmark icon will light up briefly.

WARNING

- A child in a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury! Always secure any child restraint systems to the rear seats. If you have no other alternative than to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, always check while driving that **OFF** with a red 'X' icon remains lit at all times.
- Adults travelling on the front passenger's seat will not be protected by the front passenger's airbag if it is deactivated – risk of severe or fatal injury! In this case, while driving, always check that **OFF** with a red 'X' icon is not lit.

Child restraint systems

General information



Fig. 63 Passenger's sun visor: Airbag sticker

When installing and using child restraint systems, always observe the information in this Owner's Manual, the applicable country-specific regulations and the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system.

WARNING

- To avoid serious or fatal injury, children travelling in the vehicle must always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

- Children under 1.50 m tall or younger than 12 must not travel in the vehicle without a suitable child restraint system. Please observe any other applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.
- Improperly secured child restraint systems in the vehicle can lead to serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Always secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Children and babies must NEVER travel on another occupant's lap.
- Never allow more than one child to occupy one child restraint system.
- Never leave a child without supervision in a child restraint system.
- Never allow a child to travel unrestrained in the vehicle or to stand up or kneel on a seat while the car is moving. In an accident, the child could be catapulted through the car, potentially causing fatal injuries to itself and other occupants.
- If children are out of position when the car is moving, they are at greater risk of injury during a sudden braking manoeuvre or in an accident. This applies in particular if the child is travelling on the front passenger's seat, or if the child's head is near the opening for the side airbag when the airbag system is triggered in an accident. This incorrect seating position can result in serious or even fatal injury.
- Make sure there is sufficient clearance in front of the child sitting in the child restraint system. If necessary, adjust the seat position and backrest angle of the seat in front of the child restraint system.
- The back of any forward-facing child restraint system must be flush with the backrest of the vehicle seat. Adjust or remove the head restraint if it hinders installation ⇨ *page 65*. Install the head restraint again immediately after removing the child restraint system.
- Always make sure that the backrest of the seat carrying the child restraint system is properly engaged and that it cannot move forwards. Otherwise the backrest could be moved forwards, together with the child restraint system attached to it, in the event of an accident or other emergency.
- No anchorages are provided in the vehicle for child seats which need to be secured additionally with restraint systems such as a lower tether. Do not secure any additional restraint systems to the front seats, for example to the backrest or seat rail.
- NEVER use a rearward-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
 - Applies to vehicles on which the front passenger's airbag cannot be deactivated: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat.
 - Applies to vehicles with key-operated switch for deactivating the front passenger's airbag: Do NOT use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat while the front passenger's airbag is active. If you have no alternative but to use a rearward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, the front passenger's airbag must be deactivated beforehand via the key-operated switch ⇨ *page 72*. Make sure that the front passenger's airbag is reactivated by means of the key-operated switch as soon as the child restraint system is no longer needed on the front passenger's seat.
- If you need to use a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. A child in a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat could suffer a severe impact if the front passenger's airbag were to deploy – risk of severe or fatal injury!
- Always replace the child restraint system with a new one after an accident as damage not externally visible may have occurred.
- The child restraint system must always be properly secured, even when it is

unoccupied; otherwise it could be flung through the cabin during sudden braking or in the event of an accident.

The right place to seat children

Children should always be protected with child restraint systems appropriate to their height, weight and age.

You can secure child restraint systems in your vehicle using the ISOFIX retaining rings or the seat belts. You can also secure child restraint systems to the top tether anchorages.

Always seat children on the rear seats

Accident statistics show that the rear seats are the safest place for children to sit. Children should always be seated in an appropriate child restraint system on the rear seats approved for these systems ⇒ *table on page 75*, ⇒ *table on page 76*.

In exceptional cases: children on the front passenger's seat

Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations regarding whether a child restraint system may be used on the front passenger's seat in exceptional circumstances. A child restraint system must not be used on the front passenger's seat if this is prohibited by the relevant country-

specific regulations. If the relevant country-specific regulations allow the use of a child restraint system, check the tables ⇒ *table on page 75* and ⇒ *table on page 76* to see whether your system can be secured on the front passenger's seat in the vehicle.

If your child restraint system complies with the relevant country-specific regulations and is suitable for use on the front passenger's seat of your vehicle, please note the following:

Applies to: rearward-facing child restraint systems

- Vehicles without deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag: Use on the front passenger's seat is **not** permitted.
- Vehicles with deactivation switch for front passenger's airbag*: The front passenger's airbag must be deactivated ⇒ *page 72*.

Applies to: forward-facing child restraint systems

- Move the front passenger's seat all the way back so that it is as far away from the front passenger's airbag as possible. Before doing so, you should ensure that there is nothing blocking the adjustment area. ►

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with ISOFIX

Child restraint system	ISOFIX size category	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat ^{a)}	
		Outer	Centre	Front passenger's air-bag on	Front passenger's air-bag off*
Category 0: Up to 10 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
Category 0+: Up to 13 kg	E/R1	IL	X	X	IL
	D/R2				
	C/R3				
Category 1: 9 to 18 kg	D/R2	IL	X	X	IL
	C/R3				
	B/F2	IL, IUF	X	X	IL
	B1/F2x				
	A/F3				
Category 2: 15 to 25 kg	-	IL	X	IL	IL
Category 3: 22 to 36 kg	-	IL	X	IL	IL
i-Size child restraint system	F2x/R2/B2	i-U	X	X	X

^{a)} If you fit a child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the height and longitudinal position of the seat and the angle of the backrest as necessary.

- **ISOFIX size category:** The size category specifies the weight range for which the child restraint system is approved. On child restraint systems with universal or semi-universal approval, the size category is specified on the ECE approval label. Each child restraint system carries a label specifying the weight category.
- **IL:** Seat suitable for the attachment of an ISOFIX child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **IUF:** Seat suitable for the attachment of a forward-facing ISOFIX child restraint system with universal approval.
- **i-U:** Seat suitable for the attachment of an i-Size child restraint system with universal approval.
- **X:** Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system. ►

Seats suitable for the attachment of child restraint systems with the seat belt

Child restraint system	Rear seats		Front passenger's seat ^{a)}	
	Outer	Centre ¹⁾	Front passenger's air-bag on	Front passenger's air-bag off*
Category 0 Up to 10 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 0+ Up to 13 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 1 9 to 18 kg	U, L	U	X	U
Category 2 15 to 25 kg	U, L	U	U	U
Category 3 22 to 36 kg	U, L	U	U	U

a) If you secure a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat with the seat belt, move the front passenger's seat to the highest position, and adjust the longitudinal position of the seat and the angle of the backrest as necessary.

- **U**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with universal approval.
- **L**: Seat suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with semi-universal approval. Refer to the vehicle list provided by the manufacturer.
- **X**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of the corresponding child restraint system.
- **1)**: Seat not suitable for the attachment of a child restraint system with a support leg.

Attaching a child restraint system to the bottom ISOFIX anchorages

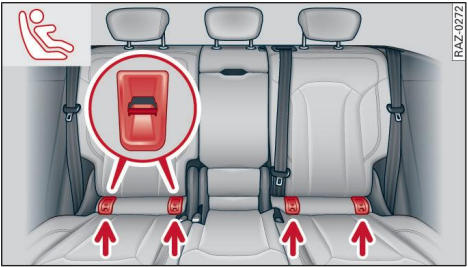


Fig. 64 Rear seat: Bottom ISOFIX anchorages

Note

- Child restraint systems can also be secured on seats with side airbags. Side airbags can provide additional protection to children who are correctly secured in a suitable child restraint system in the event of an accident.
- For correct installation, some child restraint systems require the use of both the lower ISOFIX anchorages and the seat belt. The simultaneous use of both of these is permissible as long as this does not restrict the restraint systems or seat belts on an adjacent seat.

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 72*.

The bottom ISOFIX anchorages are located between the seat cushion and the backrest on the vehicle's outer rear seats and on the front passenger's seat*. There are two bottom ISOFIX anchorages on these seats to which you can secure an ISOFIX or i-Size child restraint system, according to the table ⇨ *table on page 75*.

- Applies to vehicles with rear seat bench with forward/rearward adjustment: Move the rear seat all the way back.
- Activate the child lock ⇨ *page 45*.
- Remove the covers* from the two ISOFIX anchorages.

- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ Pull on the child restraint system to check whether both sides have engaged properly in the ISOFIX anchorages.
- ▶ If possible, also secure the child restraint system to the corresponding top tether anchorage of the vehicle ⇒ *page 77*.

WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- The ISOFIX anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with ISOFIX. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

Note

The ISOFIX anchorages are designed for a maximum total weight of 33 kg (weight of child and child restraint system). If the total weight is higher, the child restraint system must be attached to the vehicle using the seat belt.

Securing child restraint systems with a seat belt

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 72*.

- ▶ Applies to vehicles with rear seat bench with forward/rearward adjustment: Move the rear seat all the way back.
- ▶ Activate the child lock ⇒ *page 45*.
- ▶ When attaching a child restraint system to the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far upwards as possible.
- ▶ Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- ▶ After securing the child restraint system on the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's backrest so that it makes full contact with the child restraint system. You should also

ensure that the upper securing point for the seat belt is behind the child restraint system.

- ▶ If you are using a child restraint system on the rear seat, you should additionally secure the child restraint system to the vehicle's corresponding top tether anchorage ⇒ *page 77*, if possible.

WARNING

- NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it; DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
- To ensure proper protection by the child restraint system, it is important to wear the seat belts in the correct position. Always check that the belt is properly positioned according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint system. Incorrectly worn seat belts can give rise to injuries even in a minor collision.

Additionally securing a child restraint system to the top tether anchorage

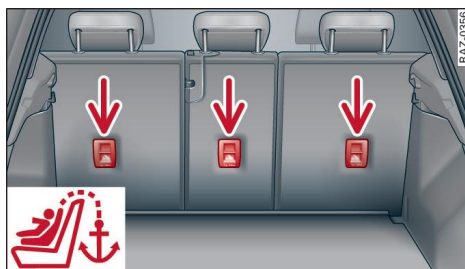


Fig. 65 Rear backrest: Top tether anchorages for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap



Fig. 66 Rear backrest: Hooking strap into top tether anchorage

Please refer to the safety information ⇨ *page 72*.

The top tether anchorages are intended for use as an additional point for securing a child restraint system with a top tether strap. The anchorages may be fitted in the following locations in the vehicle:

- Behind the outer seats on the rear bench seat.
- Behind the centre seat on the rear bench seat.¹⁾

Make sure that the combined weight of the child seat and child is not over the maximum permissible weight of 33 kg.

- Raise the head restraint behind the child restraint system.
- Secure the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Guide the top tether strap of the child restraint system underneath or past both sides of the head restraint (depending on the type of child restraint system) towards the rear.
- Hook the strap into the top tether anchorage ⇨ *Fig. 66*. When doing so, make sure that the belt is not twisted and that it is not on any sharp edges.
- Pull the strap tight so that the top of the child restraint system rests securely against the backrest.
- If necessary, lower the head restraint behind the child restraint system.



WARNING

The top tether anchorages in the vehicle are designed only for child restraint systems with a top tether strap. Do not attempt to secure other types of child restraint system, seat belts or other objects to these anchorages – this could result in serious or possibly fatal injury.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Storage and convenience

Ashtray

Applies to: vehicles with ashtray

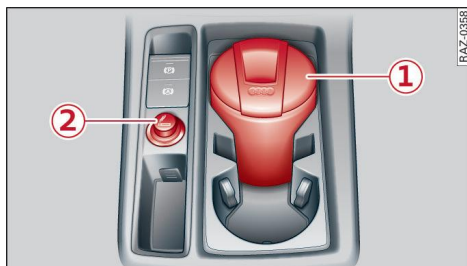


Fig. 67 Front centre console: Ashtray and cigarette lighter

- ▶ Open the ashtray ①.
- ▶ To empty the ashtray, lift it out of its holder.
- ▶ Rotate the upper section to separate it from the ashtray insert.
- ▶ Always put the ashtray safely back into the holder after removing it.



WARNING

Never put waste paper in the ashtray, as this could cause a fire.

Cigarette lighter

Applies to: vehicles with cigarette lighter

- ▶ Press in the button on the cigarette lighter ②
⇒ page 79, Fig. 67.
- ▶ When the button on the cigarette lighter springs out, pull the insert out.



WARNING


The cigarette lighter only works when the ignition is on. Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, several power sources for external devices are available (depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle).



12-volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12-volt sockets. The devices connected must not exceed a power rating of 120 W. Do not connect several devices to the vehicle sockets at the same time.

The 12-volt sockets are marked with the  symbol or 12V. They are located in the front centre console, in the rear* and in the floor trim on the left of the luggage compartment*.

USB inputs

Applies to: vehicles with USB inputs

You can use the USB inputs to charge mobile devices. Depending on the vehicle model, USB inputs may be indicated by one of the following symbols: ,  or CHARGE ONLY.



WARNING

- Make sure that all connected devices are securely stowed when driving to prevent them from being catapulted through the car under braking or in an accident – danger to life!
- Improper use can cause serious injury or start a fire. To avoid the risk of injury, never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle with the key.



CAUTION

- Please observe the operating instructions for the connected devices.
- To avoid damage to the vehicle's electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electrical current to the power sources in order to charge the vehicle's battery.
- Do not connect a device with a voltage different from the designated voltage of the socket.
- To avoid damage, please take care when detaching connectors from the power sources.



Note

Do not plug any additional devices into the sockets while the compressor*⇒ page 270 supplied with the vehicle is in use. The power rating for the sockets may be exceeded for a

short period of time while the compressor* is in use.

Cup holders

Applies to: vehicles with cup holders



Fig. 68 Front centre console: Cup holder

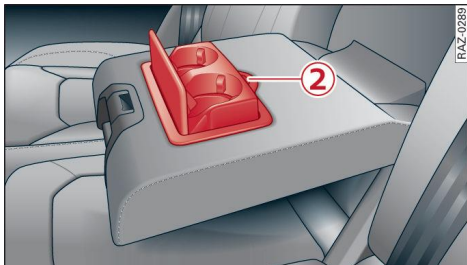


Fig. 69 Rear centre armrest*: Cup holder

Cup holders in front centre console

- Place your drinks in the holder ①.

Cup holder in rear centre armrest*

- Fold down the centre armrest*.
- To open the cup holder, lightly press the button ②.
- To close the cup holder, fold the cover back until it engages.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot drinks in the cup holders while the vehicle is moving. You could be scalded if the hot liquid is spilt.
- Do not use cups, mugs or glasses made from hard materials such as glass or porcelain. These could cause injury in the event of an accident.

CAUTION

You should avoid putting open drinks containers in the cup holders. The drinks could otherwise spill over and cause damage to the vehicle's equipment.

Storage compartments

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you will find several storage compartments and retainers that can be used to safely store items. These include, for example, the glove box.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of injuries, always keep all storage compartments closed when driving.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The storage compartments in the door trims should only be used to store small objects. Make sure that they are stored safely inside the compartment, as otherwise they might impair the protection offered by the side airbags.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang up clothing. Do not leave any heavy, fragile or sharp-edged objects in the pockets. This could otherwise interfere with the effectiveness of the head-protection airbags.
- Make sure that your view to the rear is not obstructed (e.g. by any items of clothing hanging up or objects in the vehicle).

Note

Applies to vehicles with Wi-Fi: Do not place any metal objects in the storage compartment* at the end of the centre console in the rear cabin, as these could impair the function of the Wi-Fi aerial.

Luggage compartment

General information

All luggage and other objects must be safely secured in the luggage compartment. To maintain safe handling on the road, please observe the following points:

- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Close the luggage compartment cover before starting the journey if the vehicle load permits this.
- ▶ Place heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.
- ▶ Secure items of luggage to the fastening rings with non-elastic straps.



WARNING

- The luggage compartment cover should not be used as a storage shelf. Items placed on this cover could injure the vehicle occupants in an accident or in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres.
- The luggage compartment cover must always be securely attached when in use – risk of accident!
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Always stow objects safely in the luggage compartment and secure them on the fastening rings. Use suitable securing straps when transporting heavy objects.
- If items of luggage or other objects are secured to the fastening rings with inappropriate or damaged tensioning straps, injuries could result in the event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Transporting heavy objects may affect the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity – this could cause an accident. Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.
- The stretch net* is only strong enough to secure light items. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!

- Never exceed the maximum axle loads or the maximum gross weight for the vehicle
⇒ *page 296*.
- Never secure a child restraint system to the fastening rings.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the boot lid is open. Children could climb in to the boot and close the boot lid from the inside. In this case the children would be unable to get out of the vehicle without help. This could have fatal consequences.
- Never allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always close and lock the boot lid and all the doors when you leave the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. All occupants must be properly restrained by the seat belts at all times
⇒ *page 66*.
- Be careful when releasing and folding down the backrest! Carelessness when folding it down could result in injuries.
- The rear backrest must always be securely latched so that objects stored in the luggage compartment will not fly forward during sudden braking.
- Make sure that the rear backrest is securely locked in position so that the seat belt can provide proper protection on the centre rear seat.
- Always check to see if the locking mechanism is properly engaged by pulling the backrest forwards.
- If the seat belt is trapped when the backrest is returned to its upright position, fold the backrest down again and free the seat belt. Hold the seat belt in one hand while you carefully fold up the backrest.
- The retaining hooks* should only be used to hold objects weighing up to 3 kg. Heavier objects cannot be safely secured – risk of injury!



CAUTION

- Lower the rear head restraints ⇒ *page 66* before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
- When returning the backrest to an upright position, make sure that the seat belts for

the outer rear seats are not trapped – risk of damage!

- Remove all items from the rear bench seat before you fold down the backrest – risk of damage!
- If you need to adjust the front seats when the rear backrest is folded forwards, please take care to avoid damaging the rear head restraints.
- Please ensure that hard objects do not chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

Note

- The tyre pressures must be adjusted according to the load the vehicle is carrying
⇒ *page 258*.
- Securing straps are available from specialist retailers.

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

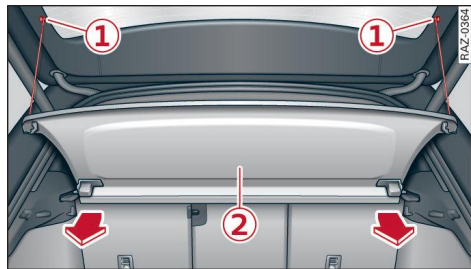


Fig. 70 Luggage compartment: Cover (with boot lid open)

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 81*.

- ▶ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the cords ①.
- ▶ Pull the cover ② out of the retainers in the direction of the arrows.
- ▶ To install the luggage compartment cover, push it into the retainers so that it engages.
- ▶ Attach the cords ① to the boot lid.

Note

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, it may be possible to store the luggage compartment cover under the adjustable floor

panel ⇒ *page 83*. You can remove the side inserts to do so.

Folding the outer backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrest

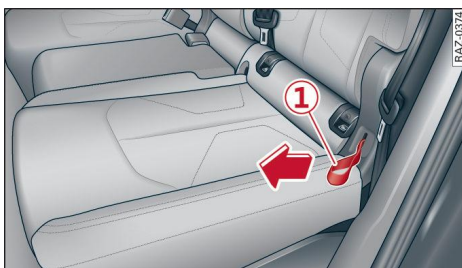


Fig. 71 Rear seat bench: Ring

The backrests can be folded down separately or together.

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 81*.

- ▶ Move the rear seat bench backwards if necessary ⇒ *page 64*.
- ▶ To fold down the backrest, pull the ring ① in the direction indicated by the arrow. The backrest will move forwards.
- ▶ Fold down the backrest until it engages.
- ▶ To fold back the backrest, pull the ring ① again in the direction indicated by the arrow.
- ▶ Move the backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

Folding the centre backrest up/down

Applies to: vehicles with folding centre backrest

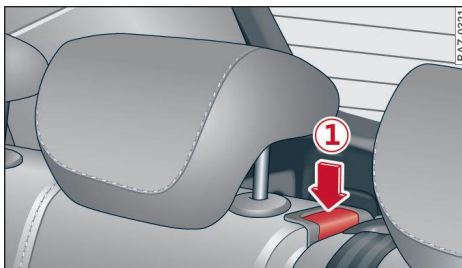


Fig. 72 Centre backrest: Release button

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 81*.

- ▶ To fold down the centre backrest, press the release button ①.

- When you no longer need the extra luggage space, move the centre backrest back into its upright position and make sure it engages.

Fastening rings and stretch net

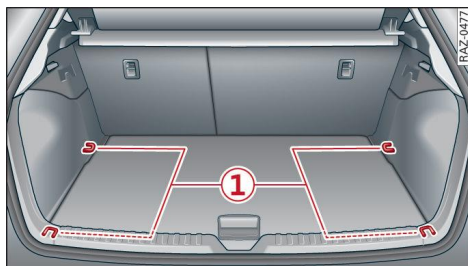


Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: Location of fastening rings

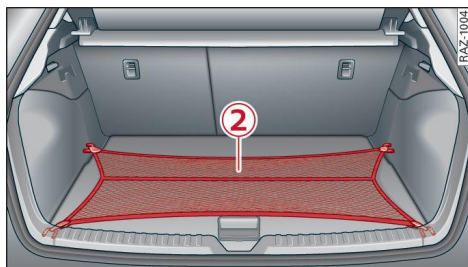


Fig. 74 Luggage compartment: Stretch net* attached

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 81*.

Fastening rings

There are fastening rings (1) in the luggage compartment which can be used to secure luggage and other objects.

- Use the fastening rings to secure items in the luggage compartment.

Stretch net

Applies to: vehicles with stretch net

The stretch net (2) can be used to secure light objects in the luggage compartment.

- Fold up the clips on the front fastening rings.
- Insert the hooks of the stretch net into the fastening rings.

Floor panel

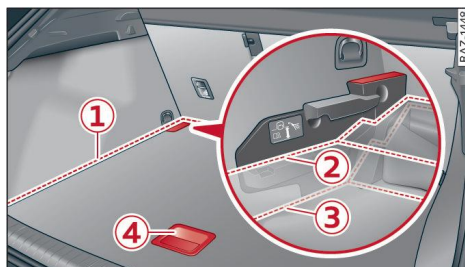


Fig. 75 Luggage compartment: Lowering floor panel*

Removing and installing the floor panel

- To remove the floor panel, lift it by the handle (4).
- Pull the floor panel towards the rear of the vehicle and out of the luggage compartment.
- To insert the floor panel, slide it all the way in towards the backrest.

Lowering/raising the floor panel

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable floor panel

The height of the floor panel can be adjusted to increase the loading height of the luggage compartment or to facilitate loading/unloading.

- To lower the floor panel, lift it by the handle (4).
- Then pull the floor panel back slightly and slide it towards the front again at position (2) or (3).
- To raise the floor panel, take it out and re-insert it in position (1).

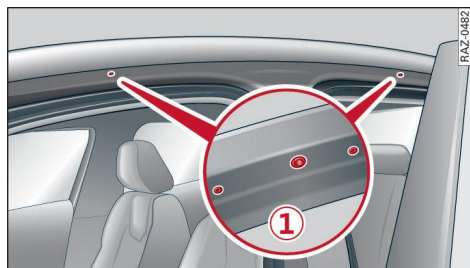
Audi recommends returning the floor panel to position (1) when you no longer need the extra height.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, there may be an intermediate section underneath the floor panel. Take out the intermediate section to access the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 270* stowed below it.

Roof carrier

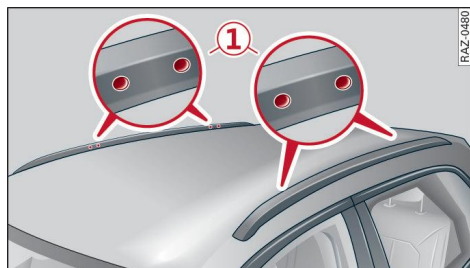
General information

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings



Applies to: vehicles without roof railings

Fig. 76 Roof: Attachment points



Applies to: vehicles with roof railings

Fig. 77 Roof railings: Attachment points

Note the following points if you intend to carry loads on the roof:

- The cross bars form the basic elements of a complete roof carrier system. Only use roof carriers suitable for use with your vehicle. Audi recommends using roof carriers and additional elements from the range of Audi Genuine Accessories.
- Ensure that roof carriers are only fitted at the points provided on the vehicle ①.
- You should ensure that you do not exceed the maximum permitted axle loads, gross weight and roof load for your vehicle ⇨ *page 296*. The roof load limit applies to the combined weight of the roof carrier, the additional elements and the load itself. Please do not exceed the maximum carrying load of the carrier system you are using.

WARNING

- Note the fitting instructions provided by the manufacturer of the roof carrier system. If you do not secure the roof carrier system and roof load correctly, they can become separated from the vehicle and cause an accident.
- The use of a roof carrier system affects the vehicle's handling by shifting the centre of gravity and increasing susceptibility to cross winds – risk of accident! Take extra care when driving and adjust your speed accordingly.

CAUTION

Please take care that the boot lid and panoramic glass roof* do not come into contact with the roof load when opened.

For the sake of the environment

The increased air resistance means that the vehicle uses more energy. For this reason you should always take off the roof carrier when it is not in use.

Heating and cooling

Air conditioner

Description

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, one of the following options is available:

- Manual air conditioner
- A 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature and air distribution at the front left and right individually
- A 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner which can be used to adjust the temperature and air distribution at the front left and right and rear individually

The air conditioner heats, cools, dehumidifies and filters the air inside the vehicle. It operates most effectively with the windows and the sunroof (if fitted) closed. If the vehicle has been standing in the sun, it may cool down faster if you open the windows briefly to let the hot air escape.

The deluxe automatic air conditioner will maintain the desired temperature at a constant level. When the heater is on, the blower normally only switches to a higher speed once the coolant has warmed up sufficiently (this does not apply to the defrost setting).

Enhanced air filter with activated carbon

When the blower is switched on, the filter reduces the concentration of fine particulate mat-

ter and pollen and neutralises odours in the vehicle interior.

Note

- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windscreen clear of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling, and to prevent the windows misting over.
- Condensation can drip off the air cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.
- If you notice, for instance, that the seat or rear window heating (if fitted) is not working, it may have been temporarily switched off by the energy management system. These systems will be available again as soon as sufficient electrical power is available.

Information on the air conditioner for the European Union

The air conditioner contains the fluorinated greenhouse gas known as R-1234yf.

Further information on the quantity of this greenhouse gas, the CO₂ equivalent and the global warming potential (GWP) is provided on a sticker in the engine compartment.

Controls on dashboard

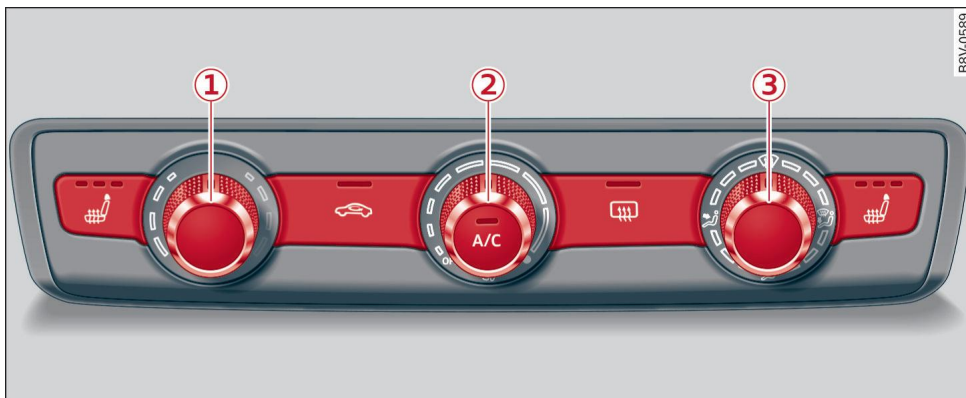


Fig. 78 Manual air conditioner: Controls



Fig. 79 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: Controls

Please refer to the safety information ⇒

The functions can be switched on and off using the buttons and controlled using the rotary controls. The LED in the corresponding button or rotary control lights up when the function is switched on.

A/C Cooling mode

The air cooling system only works when the blower is switched on. The air cooling mode is switched on/off when the **A/C** button is pressed. When the air cooling is switched off, the air is neither cooled nor dehumidified. The windows may mist up as a result. The cooling system is switched off automatically at low outside temperatures.

AUTO Automatic mode



Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner


The automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, output and distribution are regulated automatically. The AUTO mode is switched off immediately when you operate any of the manual air controls.

Applies to vehicles with eco mode: The energy saving mode of the air conditioner is activated if you press the **AUTO** button briefly while automatic mode is active. **eco** will be shown on the display of the air conditioner console. You can end eco mode by pressing the **AUTO** button again.

/ Temperature




Applies to vehicles with manual air conditioner: Rotary control  is used to adjust the temperature.




Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The temperature for the left and right sides can be set separately using rotary controls /. The temperature can be adjusted between 16 °C (+60 °F) and 28 °C (+84 °F). Outside this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear on the console display. In the two extreme settings the air conditioner operates continuously with maximum cooling or heating output.

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: **Synchronisation:** By pressing the  button for two seconds, the temperature of the passenger's side can be set to the temperature of the driver's side. The settings remain synchronised until the temperature is changed on the passenger's side.

Blower

You should leave the blower on and make sure the setting is not too low to prevent the windows from misting up and to ensure that the vehicle interior is constantly ventilated.



Applies to vehicles with manual air conditioner: You can adjust the blower speed manually using the rotary control . If the windows are misted up, turn the control  to  and set the blower and temperature settings to the highest level.

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: You can adjust the blower speed manually using the rotary control . Press the  button for automatic control of the blower speed. To demist the windows, press the  button.

/ / / Air distribution

Applies to: vehicles with manual air conditioner

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them towards the side windows.


The rotary control  can be used to adjust the air distribution. At the  setting, the windscreen and side windows can be defrosted or demisted

as quickly as possible. You should also set the blower and temperature settings to the highest level.

/ / Air distribution


Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

To prevent the front side windows from misting up, open the side vents and point them towards the side windows.


The buttons can be used to adjust the air distribution. Press the  button for automatic air distribution.


Defrosting


Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner



The windscreen and side windows are defrosted or demisted as quickly as possible. Open the side vents and point them towards the side windows. The air output is increased to maximum and most of the air comes out of the vents below the windscreen. The air recirculation mode is deactivated. The temperature is regulated automatically and should be set to 22 °C or higher. A/C cooling mode is switched on and automatically regulated/activated depending on the outside temperature. The defroster is switched off when the  button is pressed.

Air recirculation mode

In air recirculation mode, the air from the interior of the vehicle is filtered and recirculated. This setting prevents fumes etc. from entering the interior ⇨ .

To switch the air recirculation mode on/off, press the  button.


Applies to vehicles with manual air conditioner: The air recirculation mode is also switched off when the control is in the defrost position .


Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The air recirculation mode is also switched off when the  or  button is pressed.

/ Rear window heating

The rear window heating operates only when the engine is running, and switches off automatically ►

after about 10 to 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

Applies to vehicles with manual air conditioner: To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the  button for at least two seconds. It will then remain on until the ignition is switched off.




Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: To switch on the rear window heating permanently, press and hold the  button for at least two seconds. It will then remain on until the ignition is switched off.

Vents

The thumbwheels can be used to open and close the vents in the centre and on either side of the dashboard. The lever in the centre of the vents can be used to adjust the direction of air flow.

Seat heating

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

The seat heating temperature can be adjusted in several levels ⇌ . Press the  button once to activate the highest level. Press the  button repeatedly to lower the temperature by one level each time. When no LEDs are lit, the seat heating is switched off.

WARNING

- You should not leave the air recirculation switched on for too long. The windows can mist over as a result – risk of accident!
- If the air recirculation function or (if fitted) the automatic air recirculation function is used for a long period, the concentration of CO₂ can build up inside the vehicle. This can cause personal discomfort and may even lead to an accident! Switch off the air recirculation or automatic air recirculation immediately and ventilate the vehicle if you experience any discomfort.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: The vehicle has functions which activate the seat heating automatically. People with limited capacity to feel pain or sense temperature must make sure that the seat heating is

switched off at the start of the journey to ensure that they do not burn themselves.

- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: An alternating magnetic field is generated when the seat heating is switched on. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) are very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions.
- Applies to vehicles with seat heating: Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.



CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with seat heating

- To avoid damaging the heating elements of the seat heating, please do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point.
- Only use the seat heating when the seat is dry.
- Only place dry objects on the seats.
- Do not spill any liquid on the seats.
- Covering the seats can impair the seat heating function. Do not use seat covers and do not place any objects (e.g. jackets, blankets or bags) on the seats when the seat heating is switched on.
- Explain to your passengers how to use the seat heating safely.



For the sake of the environment

Switching off A/C cooling mode saves energy.

Controls in rear

Vents are provided underneath the front seats for air conditioning in the rear cabin.

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The levers in the outlets can be used to adjust the direction of air flow. Adjustable vents are provided on the centre console in addition to the foot-level outlets. ►

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The thumbwheel can be used to control the amount of air.

Applies to vehicles with 3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The thumbwheels can be used to control the amount of air and temperature.

Further settings

Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner

Further settings can be adjusted.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > A/C**.

Automatic air recirculation

If air pollution is detected, air recirculation is regulated automatically when this function is activated.

Automatic supplementary heater

Applies to: vehicles with automatic supplementary heater

The vehicle interior warms up more quickly with the supplementary heater.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with automatic supplementary heater

When the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater is in operation, hot exhaust gases are emitted from the exhaust outlet under the car.

For the sake of the environment

Applies to: vehicles with automatic supplementary heater

Switching off the automatic supplementary heater saves energy.

Note


Applies to: vehicles with automatic supplementary heater

At low outside temperatures, water vapour may form in the engine compartment when the fossil fuel powered supplementary heater is in operation. This is no cause for concern.

Steering wheel heating

Switching on/off

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

- Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel to switch the steering wheel heating on/off.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Steering wheel heating: fault. See owner's manual

If this message appears, a malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The auxiliary heating warms up the inside of the vehicle, while the auxiliary ventilation draws in fresh air and can lower the temperature inside the vehicle, depending on the ambient temperature. The function can be used either when the engine is off or when driving (for instance while the engine is warming up).

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the settings for the auxiliary heating/ventilation can be controlled via:

- Centre display
- Remote control

Conditions for operation

- There is enough fuel in the tank.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run when the vehicle is in a confined space – risk of poisoning!

- Never have the auxiliary heating switched on when refuelling the vehicle – risk of fire!
- Because of the high temperatures which occur when the auxiliary heating is running, make sure when parking the car that the exhaust outlet under the car is not obstructed in any way and that the exhaust gases do not come into contact with flammable materials (fire risk).

Note

- It is advisable to open the vents on the dashboard when using the auxiliary heating/ventilation.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation system heats/cools the interior to the temperature last selected on the air conditioner control console.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation will not switch on or will switch itself off earlier than intended if the battery charge or fuel level is low.
- If the auxiliary heating/ventilation is on, it is not switched off automatically when the engine is started or stopped.
- At low outside temperatures, some visible water vapour may form in the engine compartment. This is a normal phenomenon, and no reason for concern.
- When parking on a hill or gradient, the function of the auxiliary heating may be restricted if the fuel gauge is just above the reserve zone.


Switching on/off in the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ *page 89*.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR** > **A/C** > **Auxiliary heating**.

Immediate start


You can set the operating time and switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off immediately by selecting .

When a function is switched on, a coloured bar will light up above the button.

Timer programming

You can set up to two timers for the departure time. One of the two timers can be activated.


The departure time specifies when the vehicle interior is to reach the desired temperature. The departure time must be within the next six days. The auxiliary heating will continue to run for approx. ten minutes after being switched off.

- ▶ Select a timer via >.
- ▶ Set the date and select **Next**.
- ▶ Set the time (departure time) and select **OK**.
- ▶ Use  to activate the timer.

Heat level

- ▶ To have the system defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows, select **Defrost**.
- ▶ If you want the system to defrost the vehicle's windscreen and front side windows and also warm up the vehicle, select **Warm up**.

Switching on/off using the air conditioner control console

Applies to vehicles with 2-zone/3-zone deluxe automatic air conditioner: The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on via the MMI or using the remote control, depending on the version. However, when the auxiliary heating/ventilation is running, you can press the rotary control  ⇒ *page 86, Fig. 79* on the air conditioner control console to switch the auxiliary heating/ventilation off.

Note

- To ensure that the timer operates correctly, check that the correct time and date are entered in the system settings ⇒ *page 228*.
- The auxiliary heating/ventilation can be switched on/off immediately even if a timer has been programmed. This has no effect on the programmed timer setting as long as the auxiliary heating/ventilation is not switched off manually during the programmed period.

Switching on/off using the remote control

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control



Fig. 80 Remote control: Auxiliary heating/ventilation

Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 89.


The range of the remote control is approx. 400 metres; however this can be greatly reduced by obstacles.

You can achieve the best range by holding the remote control with the aerial ① pointing vertically upwards. Do not cover the aerial.

Switching the auxiliary heating/ventilation on/off

► To switch on, press and hold the  button ②.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched on when the LED ③ lights up in green for approx. two seconds.

► To switch off, press and hold the  button ④.

The auxiliary heating/ventilation is switched off when the LED lights up in red for approx. two seconds.

LED in remote control

The LED ③ provides status information each time you press a button:

- If the LED flashes steadily in red or green for approx. four seconds, the signal was not received. Move closer to the vehicle.
- If the LED lights up in orange for approx. two seconds, and then lights up or flashes in red or green, the remote control battery charge is low.

- If the LED flashes irregularly in green for approx. five seconds, the auxiliary heating is disabled. The fuel level or vehicle battery charge is too low or a system fault has occurred in the auxiliary heating/ventilation.
- If the remote control LED flashes rapidly in orange for approx. six seconds after you press a button, the remote control battery needs to be replaced. The same applies if the LED does not light up at all.

Changing the remote control battery

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation and remote control

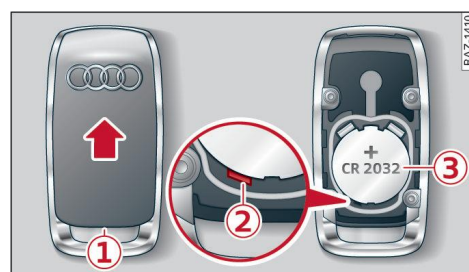


Fig. 81 Remote control: Changing battery


- Insert a screwdriver or similar in the slot on the side ①.
- Pry the battery cover off upwards.
- Slide the battery cover slightly in the direction of the arrow and detach it.
- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool in the slot ②. Do not touch any other areas with the tool.
- Carefully pry out the battery.
- Insert a new battery of the same type ③.
- Put the battery cover back on and slide it in the opposite direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.


⚠ WARNING

If batteries or button cells are swallowed or enter the body in any other way, they can cause severe or lethal injuries within an extremely short period of time – risk of chemical burns!

- Keep the remote control out of the reach of children.

- Keep new and used batteries away from children.
- If the battery compartment does not close securely, stop using the remote control and keep it away from children.
- Seek a doctor's assistance immediately if you suspect that a battery has been swallowed or has entered the body in any other way.


 **For the sake of the environment**

 Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ page 299, Information on waste disposal.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary heating/ventilation

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:




 **Auxiliary heating/ventilation: fault. Not available**





If this message appears, a system malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Fluids in the air conditioner

Refrigerant in the air conditioner


The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. This sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or rear of the bonnet.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Type of refrigerant
	Type of lubricant

Symbol	Meaning
	Refer to workshop information (only available to Audi workshops and other qualified workshops)
	Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be performed by qualified personnel.
	Flammable refrigerant
	Ensure that all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle which have been removed from old vehicles or recycled.


Lubricant in the air conditioner

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type of lubricant used in the vehicle's air conditioning system. For information about the quantity of lubricant used, please contact a qualified workshop.

 **WARNING**

Maintenance work on the air conditioning system must only be carried out by qualified and certified personnel who have been trained in accordance with the standards required in the specific country, e.g. SAE norms J2845 and J2911.

- Refrigerant is flammable. Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other ignition sources – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant is under pressure and could explode if it is heated – risk of fatal injury!
- The refrigerant may produce toxic vapours when it comes into contact with hot surfaces; such vapours must not be inhaled – risk of fatal injury!

 **Note**

Components from old vehicles or recycled components must never be used when repairing the evaporator of the air conditioning system.

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

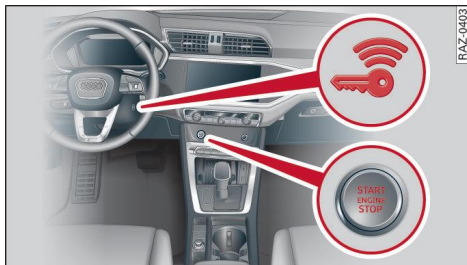


Fig. 82 Centre console: Starting the engine

Important: The key must be in the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button. The engine should start.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, the starter will be switched off automatically after a few seconds. In this case, you should try to start the engine again after about 30 seconds.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal (automatic gearbox) or clutch pedal (manual gearbox) until the engine starts.

Switching off the engine

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button. The engine will switch off.

Applies to vehicles with steering lock: The steering will be locked if you switch off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock acts as a

theft deterrent. On vehicles with automatic gearbox, transmission position P must be selected.

Switching off the engine in an emergency

If necessary, the engine can be switched off in an emergency* while the vehicle is still moving.

- ▶ Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button twice in quick succession or press and hold it.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on/off and do not want to start the engine as well, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Press the **START ENGINE STOP** button without pressing the clutch pedal.

Automatic ignition off

To prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged, the ignition and, in some cases, the exterior lighting may be switched off automatically.

Requirements:

- The start/stop system must have switched off the engine.
- You must have left the vehicle more than 30 seconds ago.
- The ignition must be switched on.

The methods used by the vehicle for detecting whether you have left include the following:

- Driver's door has been opened.
- Driver's seat belt has been unbuckled.
- Brake pedal is not pressed.

The ignition will also be switched off when you lock the vehicle from the outside.

Ignition key

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

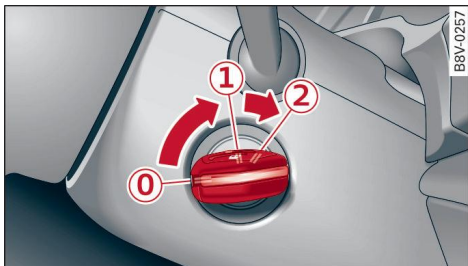


Fig. 83 Steering column: Ignition key

Starting the engine

- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Press the brake pedal.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- ▶ Insert the ignition key into the ignition lock.
- ▶ Turn the ignition key briefly to position ②. The ignition key automatically returns to position ①. Do not press the accelerator.
- ▶ The engine will start and the vehicle will be ready to drive.

Electrical components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while you start the engine. If the engine fails to start immediately, switch off the starter by turning the ignition key to position ① and try again after about 30 seconds.

If it is difficult to turn the ignition key to position ①, move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until the key turns freely.

Diesel engine: The engine may take a few seconds longer than usual to start on cold days. Please keep your foot on the brake pedal (automatic gearbox) or clutch pedal (manual gearbox) until the engine starts.

Switching off the engine

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Turn the ignition key to position ①. The engine will switch off.

Engaging the steering lock

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock

The steering lock acts as a theft deterrent.

- ▶ Remove the ignition key.
- ▶ Turn the steering wheel until you hear the steering lock engage.

Switching the ignition on/off

If you only wish to switch the ignition on/off and do not want to start the engine as well, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Switching on: Turn the ignition key to position ①.
- ▶ Switching off: Turn the ignition key to position ①.



WARNING

Never remove the key from the ignition while the vehicle is moving. The steering lock could engage, and you would not be able to steer the car – risk of accident!

General information



WARNING

- Never run the engine in confined spaces. The exhaust gases are toxic – risk of poisoning!
- Never switch off the engine until the vehicle is stationary. Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would. This would mean a greater risk of accidents and serious injury, because you cannot steer and brake in the normal manner.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ page 95.



CAUTION

- Avoid high engine speeds, full throttle and extreme load conditions until the engine has reached its normal operating temperature; otherwise this can damage the engine.
- If the engine has been working hard for a long time, there is a risk of heat building up ▶

in the engine compartment after the engine has been switched off; this could cause engine damage. For this reason, you should leave the engine idling for about 2 minutes before switching it off.

Note

- Any brief noises which may be heard when the vehicle is started and stopped are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- After the engine is stopped, the radiator fan may remain on or turn itself back on for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off.
- It may not be possible to start the vehicle at extremely low outside temperatures.
- The full performance is not available until the engine is warm.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:


Power unit start system: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the engine start system. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Remote control key: key not recognised. Is key still in vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle with the engine running. If the vehicle key is not in the vehicle you will not be able to switch on the ignition or restart the engine after it has been switched off. You will also not be able to lock the vehicle from the outside.

Remote control key: hold back of key against marked area. See owner's manual

The vehicle key battery is empty or there is radio interference. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the  symbol
⇒ page 93, Fig. 82.

If the fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Driving the vehicle

Driving away, stopping, parking

Driving away from a standstill

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

- ▶ Press and hold the clutch and brake pedals.
- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Select a gear.
- ▶ Release the parking brake.
- ▶ Take your foot off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Release the clutch pedal slowly and press the accelerator to pick up speed.

Driving away from a standstill

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- ▶ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Select a transmission position.
- ▶ Release the parking brake.
- ▶ Take your foot off the brake pedal. The vehicle may start to creep forwards.
- ▶ Press the accelerator to increase the speed.

Securing the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away

Before leaving the vehicle, always secure it so that it cannot roll away.

- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- ▶ When parking on a slope, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle would roll into the kerb if it did start to move unexpectedly.

If this is not possible (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you must take additional steps to secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away.

- ▶ Only park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Block the wheels by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of each wheel.

Automatic gearbox: Always apply the parking brake before selecting transmission position P. This reduces the load on the locking mechanism when the vehicle is on a slope. ▶

WARNING

- Always apply the parking brake before leaving your vehicle – even if you only intend to be gone for a short time. Otherwise the vehicle can roll away – risk of accident!
- Never leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running – risk of accident!
- If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Always switch off the ignition and take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. This is particularly important if persons or animals are left in the vehicle. They might otherwise unintentionally start the vehicle, release the parking brake or use power-operated equipment – this could cause accidents.
- Do not leave any persons or animals in the vehicle when it is locked. Locked doors could delay assistance in an emergency, potentially putting lives at risk.
- If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.

CAUTION

To avoid rolling back on gradients always hold the vehicle with the brake pedal if you have to stop. Do not attempt to hold the vehicle by slipping the clutch or keeping your foot on the accelerator. This could cause the clutch and gearbox to overheat – risk of damage!

Hill hold assist

When you take your foot off the brake pedal when driving away on a slope, the braking force will be maintained for several seconds. During this period, the vehicle will not roll backwards when you set off.

Important: The driver's door must be closed, the engine must be running and the vehicle must be on a slope and facing uphill.

- To activate the hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

Use the hold assist ⇨ *page 107* if you want to hold the vehicle with the brakes for more than a few seconds.

WARNING

- If you do not drive away immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may start to roll backwards. You should therefore immediately press the brake pedal or apply the parking brake.
- The hill hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy).

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Hill hold assist: unavailable

The hill hold assist is temporarily unavailable. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Changing gear

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

On vehicles which have a manual gearbox, gears are changed by hand using the gear lever. The positions of the gears are marked on the gear lever. Please note that reverse gear can only be selected when the gear lever is pressed down.

CAUTION

- Always press the clutch pedal all the way down.
- Take your foot off the clutch pedal after you have changed gear. Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal.
- Always be prepared to change up or down as the road speed and engine speed vary.
- Wait until the vehicle has stopped completely before selecting reverse gear.

Transmission positions and driving programs

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

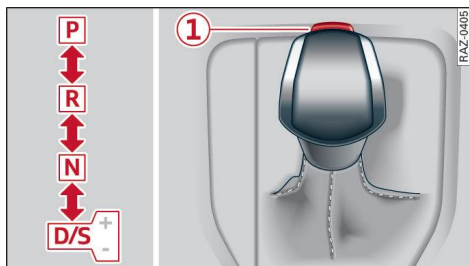


Fig. 84 Centre console: Selector lever

The automatic gearbox changes gear according to the transmission position selected and the way the vehicle is currently being driven. When you drive at moderate speeds, the gearbox will change up early and delay the downshifts to give better fuel economy. The gearbox allows higher engine speeds for performance driving.

Transmission positions

The transmission positions are shown next to the selector lever.

- **P** (Park): Parking lock
- **R** (Reverse): Drive backwards
- **N** (Neutral)
- **D** (Drive): Drive forwards

Driving programs

Various driving programs can be selected in transmission position D. These have an effect on when the gearbox changes gear and the reaction to accelerator pedal inputs, for example.

The selected driving program will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

- **D** (Drive): Normal driving
- **E** (Efficiency*): Economical driving
- **S** (Sport): Performance driving

Selecting a transmission position

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Stop the vehicle and press the brake pedal.
- Press and hold the release button ① on the selector lever.

- To select a transmission position, move the selector lever to the corresponding position.
- The selected transmission position will light up next to the selector lever.

Transmission position N (neutral)

No power is transmitted to the driven wheels in transmission position N. Use transmission position N, for example, in a tunnel car wash.

If you accidentally select transmission position N while the vehicle is moving (at more than 2 km/h), you can switch back to D without pressing the brake.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when N is selected.

Transmission position P (parking lock)

In transmission position P, the vehicle is prevented from rolling away by the parking lock. The parking lock is a mechanical locking mechanism for the gearbox.

If you cannot move out of transmission position P (e.g. if the vehicle has no electrical power), you may need to release the parking lock manually ⇒ *page 99*.

Selecting a driving program

Press the selector lever downwards to switch between the current driving program and S.

If you select **dynamic** or **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*, the driving program S or E respectively will be activated. The driving program may be switched back to D when the ignition is switched off.

It may not be possible to select S in Audi drive select* mode **offroad**.



WARNING

- Before driving off, check that the desired transmission position is displayed next to the selector lever.
- Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 95*.
- In all transmission positions except P and N the vehicle must always be held with the footbrake when the engine is running. This

is because an automatic gearbox still transmits power even at idling speed, and the vehicle tends to “creep”.

- Do not press the accelerator before selecting a transmission position with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, as this could cause an accident.
- Never select transmission position R or P when driving at normal speeds, as this could cause an accident.
- The car can roll away even if the ignition is switched off.

Note

- You do not have to press the brake pedal if you switch back and forth between D and R within one second. This allows you to rock the car backwards and forwards, e.g. to free it from snow or mud, etc.
- Audi recommends driving program D for everyday use.

Manual gear selection

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

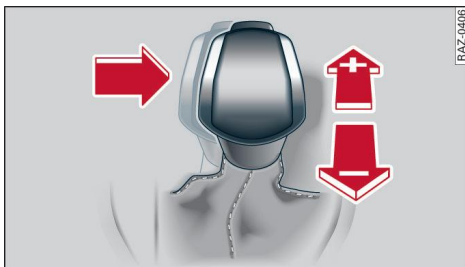


Fig. 85 Centre console: Manual gear selection using selector lever





Fig. 86 Steering wheel: Paddle levers*

You can change gear manually in transmission position D. The gearbox must be in tiptronic mode.




Gear selection with selector lever

You can switch to manual gear selection mode either with the vehicle stationary or on the move.

- ▶ To switch to manual gear selection mode, move the selector lever toward the passenger's side
⇒ Fig. 85. M will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ To change up: Press the selector lever forwards .
- ▶ To change down: Pull the selector lever towards the rear .
- ▶ To switch back to automatic mode, move the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Gear selection with paddle levers

Applies to: vehicles with paddle levers

- ▶ To change up: Press the paddle lever 
⇒ Fig. 86.
- ▶ To change down: Press the paddle lever .
- ▶ To switch back to automatic mode, hold the paddle lever  for longer or pull the selector lever towards the rear.

The gearbox will revert to automatic mode if you do not operate one of the paddle levers again within a short period. To switch to manual gear selection mode permanently, move the selector lever toward the passenger's side.

Note

- The gearbox only allows manual gear changes if the engine speed would remain within the permissible range.
- The gearbox automatically shifts up or down into the next gear before a critical engine speed is reached.

Accelerator

You can use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle's speed. ▶

Maximum acceleration

A kick-down function is available for maximum engine output and acceleration if you press the accelerator all the way down.



WARNING

The driven wheels may start to spin when you use the kick-down function, causing the vehicle to lose grip, on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!

Launch control

Applies to: vehicles with launch control

The launch control gives you optimum acceleration when starting from a standstill.

Important

- The engine must be warm.
- The steering wheel must be pointing straight ahead.
- The start/stop system* must be deactivated ⇒ *page 104*.
- The hold assist* must be deactivated ⇒ *page 107*.
- The ESC must be restricted ⇒ *page 113*.
- Driving program S must be selected ⇒ *page 97* and Audi drive select* must be set to **dynamic** mode ⇒ *page 111*.

Using the launch control

- Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it down for at least one second.
- Keeping the brake pedal pressed, simultaneously press the accelerator all the way down with your right foot.
- When the engine revs are high and steady, take your foot off the brake.

When you are finished with the launch control, please remember to fully activate the ESC again.



WARNING

Only use the launch control when road and traffic conditions permit, and make sure your driving style and acceleration do not inconvenience or endanger other road users. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the

vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!



CAUTION

- Accelerating with the launch control places a heavy load on all parts of the vehicle. This can result in increased wear and tear.
- Do not use the launch control when the vehicle is in towing mode as this could result in damage to the vehicle, trailer and load.



Note

Some vehicle components may be hot after accelerating with the launch control. In this case, the function may not be available for several minutes. This is to avoid damage. The launch control will be available again after a cool-down period.

Releasing the parking lock manually

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

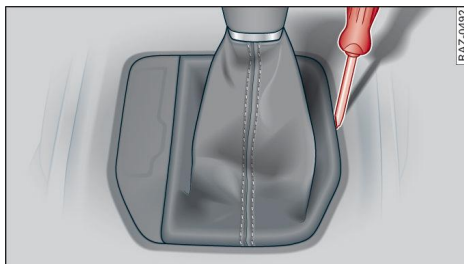


Fig. 87 Selector lever: Removing the boot

The manual release mechanism is located underneath the selector gate. Only perform the release procedure yourself if you have the skills required. Seek assistance if necessary.

To release the selector lever, you will need the screwdriver from the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 270*. Use the flat-blade side of the reversible screwdriver insert. A very long screwdriver may also be required.

Removing the selector lever boot

- Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 95*.
- Switch off the ignition.

- ▶ To loosen the selector lever boot, carefully insert the flat-blade side of the screwdriver into the opening at the side of the boot ⇒ *page 100, Fig. 88*.
- ▶ Carefully lever off the boot with the screwdriver and, at the same time, pull the boot upwards at the crease with your hand until it is released at all four corners ⇒ *page 100, Fig. 89*.
- ▶ Fold the boot over the selector lever knob.
- ▶ Applies to RHD vehicles: Take out the panel for the selector lever position indicator and let it hang down to one side, suspended by the cable.

Releasing the parking lock manually

- ▶ Operate the manual release mechanism ⇒ *page 100*.

Fitting the boot back on

- ▶ Applies to RHD vehicles: Fit the panel for the selector lever position indicator back in the selector gate.
- ▶ Clip the boot back into the selector gate.

WARNING

- The parking lock must only be released manually when the vehicle is secured so that it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 95*. If you do not apply the brake, the vehicle may roll away and cause an accident.
- Only use the manual release mechanism when the vehicle is on level ground or a slight gradient.
- You must not drive the vehicle if the parking brake has been released manually – risk of accident!

Operating the manual release mechanism

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

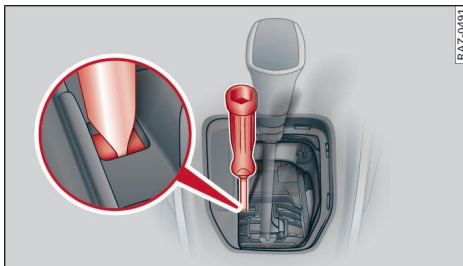


Fig. 88 Manual release mechanism (bottom left)

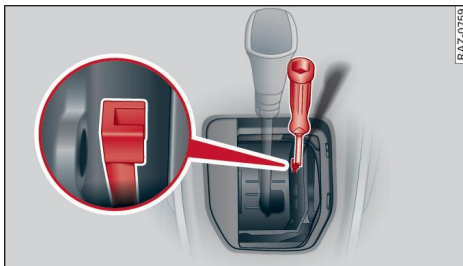


Fig. 89 Manual release mechanism (top right)

The manual release mechanism is located under the selector gate at the bottom left or top right, depending on the version.

The procedure is different, depending on the version:

Manual release mechanism (bottom left)

- ▶ Press the yellow release mechanism sideways with the screwdriver and hold it in place.
- ▶ Now press the release button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to transmission position N.

Manual release mechanism (top right)

- ▶ Insert the screwdriver in the opening on the yellow release lever.
- ▶ Using the screwdriver, carefully pull the release lever towards the rear as far as it will go and hold it in this position.
- ▶ Now press the release button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to transmission position N.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Gearbox: fault. Safely stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible and secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 95*. Seek professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please stop vehicle

Do not drive on. Select transmission position P and seek professional assistance.

Gearbox overheating: please adapt driving style

The gearbox temperature has risen significantly. Drive more passively or take a break until the temperature is back to normal and the indicator lamp has gone out.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving. See owner's manual

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. You can continue driving. However, you should drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving (functions limited). Please contact workshop

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: no reverse gear. You can continue driving

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. The programme will only move into certain gears or may not be able to shift gears at all. The engine may stall. You can no longer engage reverse gear. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Gearbox malfunction: you can continue driving in D until power unit off

A gearbox malfunction has occurred. The gearbox will switch to the back-up programme. If you switch off the engine, you will not be able to engage any other transmission positions after the engine is started again. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Vehicle may roll! Cannot shift to P. Please apply parking brake

- The parking lock has been released manually ⇒ *page 99*. Or
- It is no longer possible to engage the parking lock. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 95*.

Clutch: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a permanent malfunction in the clutch. The transmissible torque is reduced. You can continue driving, but avoid placing an excessive load on the clutch and do not slip the clutch for longer than necessary. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Clutch: overheating. Please adapt driving style

There is a malfunction in the clutch. The transmissible torque is reduced. You can continue driving, but avoid placing an excessive load on the clutch and do not slip the clutch for longer than necessary. The indicator lamp will go out when the transmission capability of the clutch has been restored completely.

Clutch: check pedal. You can continue driving

The clutch is not transmitting the full engine torque. If your foot is on the clutch pedal, please remove it.

Engine

Running in

A new vehicle should be run in over the first 1,500 km so that all moving parts can settle in ►

together gently and the service life of the engine and other powertrain components can be increased.

For the first 1,000 km, do not exceed two thirds of the engine's maximum rpm speed and do not accelerate at full throttle. You can increase the engine speed gradually over the next 500 km.

Conventional and mild hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive systems or mild hybrid drive

Vehicles with conventional drive systems are powered by a combustion engine which burns fuel to generate energy.

Vehicles with mild hybrid drive are equipped with additional battery technology.

Coasting

Applies to: vehicles with coasting function

Coasting can be used to save fuel. When the vehicle is coasting, the combustion engine is disengaged and the vehicle rolls without the engine braking effect. Coasting mode may be activated between 16 km/h and 130 km/h on vehicles with conventional drive systems and between 40 km/h and 160 km/h on vehicles with mild hybrid drive when you take your foot off the accelerator. Data from the efficiency assist* are used to anticipate the road ahead and regulate accordingly.

The combustion engine may be switched off automatically on vehicles with mild hybrid drive when coasting is activated.



WARNING

When coasting is activated, there is no longer an engine braking effect and the vehicle does not slow down as quickly as usual or may even pick up speed if you are driving down a slope – risk of accident!



Note

- You can cancel coasting by applying the accelerator or brakes. Slight corrective brake applications are also possible without cancelling coasting.

- Coasting is not possible in all driving programs.

Driving in an efficient and environmentally conscious way

Fuel and energy economy, environmental impact and wear on the power unit, brakes and tyres depend largely on the way you drive the vehicle. You can drive in an efficient and environmentally conscious way by considering the following tips:

- Select **efficiency** mode in Audi drive select*.
- Switch off any electric equipment you do not need (e.g. seat heating*).
- Anticipate the traffic conditions to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Avoid driving at high speeds.
- Remove ballast, such as roof racks or rear carriers, when not needed.
- Make sure the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Have the vehicle serviced regularly.
- Do not leave the engine running while the car is stopped.
- Do not use winter tyres in summer.
- Make use of the start/stop system.
- Make use of the engine braking effect.
- Avoid short trips.



Note

Sporty driving can lead to significantly higher noise emissions. Please therefore be aware of your social responsibilities and consider the environment and those around you, particularly at night.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with a smart energy management system to control the distribution of electrical energy. This significantly improves reliability when starting the engine, and also prolongs the life of the vehicle battery.



Note

- If the vehicle is driven frequently on short trips, the battery may not be sufficiently charged while driving. In this case, certain

convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.

- If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, or if electrical equipment is used without running the engine, the battery will gradually lose its charge. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. The brake servo and the power steering system could stop working. Stop your vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇨ *page 95*. You should have the fault rectified by a qualified workshop.

Drive system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the drive system. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Start/stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system can help to save fuel and reduce CO₂ emissions. In start/stop mode, the engine is switched off automatically when the vehicle stops, e.g. at traffic lights.

If certain conditions are met, the engine may be switched off before the vehicle has come to a standstill. If the accelerator pedal is pressed in this case, the engine starts and delivers power again.

The ignition and important supporting systems, e.g. the brake servo, remain available during the stop phase. The engine is automatically started on demand.

The start/stop system is automatically activated each time you switch on the ignition.

Basic conditions

- The driver's door and bonnet must be closed.
- Automatic gearbox: Transmission position P, N or D must be selected.
- Manual gearbox: The gearbox must be neutral.
- The steering wheel must be relatively straight.
- The vehicle must have been moving at over 3 km/h since the last stop.



CAUTION

Always switch off the start/stop system
⇨ *page 104* before driving through water.




Note

- In certain situations, the engine may stop earlier while the vehicle is still **coasting**. A direct transition from coasting mode* to a stop phase is thus possible ⇨ *page 102*.
- Automatic gearbox: If you select transmission position D after selecting reverse gear, the car must have been moving at over 10 km/h before the system can switch off the engine again. This allows you to manoeuvre the vehicle without the engine being switched off.

Switching off/starting the engine


Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox

- Apply the brakes and keep your foot on the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary. The indicator lamp  will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- The engine will start again automatically when you take your foot off the brake pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

If the parking brake is applied or the hold assist* is switched on, the engine will restart when you press the accelerator pedal or release the brake pedal. ►

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

- ▶ Stop the vehicle and select neutral.
- ▶ Take your foot off the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp  will appear in the instrument cluster as soon as the engine has been switched off automatically.
- ▶ The engine will start again automatically when you press the clutch pedal. The indicator lamp will go out.

Note


- Keep your foot on the brake pedal during a stop phase to prevent the vehicle from moving.
- If you press the **[START ENGINE STOP]** button during a stop phase, the ignition will be switched off.
- If you briefly leave the vehicle during a stop phase, you will need to close the driver's door and fasten your seat belt for the engine to start again.
- Automatic gearbox: You can control whether or not the engine is switched off by varying the amount of pressure on the brake pedal. For instance, if you brake gently in stop-and-go traffic or before turning off at a junction, the engine will remain on while the vehicle is at a standstill. As soon as you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will be switched off.

Automatic engine start/stop

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system


Before and during each stop phase, the system checks that certain conditions have been met and decides whether to switch off the engine and for how long. For instance, the engine is not switched off if the power consumption is high. Whether or not the engine is started/stopped automatically depends on factors such as the following:


- Ambient conditions (downhill/uphill gradient, altitude and temperature)
- Battery (charge level, temperature and power consumption)
- Engine temperature
- Driver assist systems
- Driving style

Depending on the engine, the indicator lamp  may be displayed when the engine is not being switched off.

Switching the start/stop system off and on manually

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The  button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▶ Press  to switch the function on/off. The button lights up when the function is switched off.

Note

If you switch off the system during a stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with start/stop system

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Drive system: please start vehicle manually

This message appears if certain conditions have not been met during the stop phase and the start/stop system cannot start the engine again automatically. The **[START ENGINE STOP]** button must be used to start the engine.

Vehicle start system: fault. Please contact workshop

A malfunction has occurred in the start/stop system. Drive to a workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Brakes

General information

You can use the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

Noises

Brake noise may develop in certain situations, depending on the speed, braking force and ambient ►

conditions (such as temperature and relative humidity).


Braking effect

To ensure an optimum braking effect, the brake pads are applied to the brake discs briefly at high speeds when the windscreen wipers are on.

If the brake system is wet, e.g. after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Further causes of a temporary increase in brake response time include:

- Wet conditions
- Low temperatures, ice and snow
- Salted roads
- Dirty brake pads

Corrosion

Corrosion can form on the brake discs if the car is used infrequently, or if you only drive low mileages. In this case, you can clean the brake discs by braking firmly a few times from a moderately high speed ⇒ .

Brake pads

New brake pads do not give full braking effect for the first 400 km, they must first be “bedded in”. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal. Avoid placing a heavy load on the brakes during the running-in period.

The rate of wear on the brake pads depends a great deal on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is operated. For example, the rate of wear will increase if the vehicle is used frequently in city traffic, for short distances, or for hard driving with abrupt starts and stops.

Ceramic brakes

Applies to: vehicles with ceramic brakes

Ceramic brakes provide excellent braking performance.

When new, ceramic brake discs can take much longer to bed in than normal brake discs. In addition, noises may occur, particularly at low speeds, due to the properties of the material. Ceramic brake discs absorb more moisture in extremely wet weather. This can cause a temporary reduc-

tion in braking performance in comparison to dry brakes. You can compensate for this by applying greater pressure to the brake.



WARNING

- When applying the brakes to clean off deposits on the pads and discs, select a clear, dry road. Be sure not to endanger other road users; do not risk an accident.
- All brake repairs must be carried out by a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory – risk of injury! Improper repairs can also impair the function of the system.
- Never let the car coast with the engine switched off (this can cause accidents).
- If a braking manoeuvre is initiated by the vehicle, the brake pedal may move automatically towards the floor. Do not rest your foot underneath the brake pedal – risk of injury!



CAUTION

- Never let the brakes “drag” by leaving your foot on the pedal when you do not really intend to brake. This can cause the brakes to overheat, resulting in longer stopping distances and greater wear.
- Please observe the important safety warnings on driving on gradients ⇒ *page 108*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan.





Note


- On vehicles with an electromechanical brake servo, the resistance of the brake pedal can vary depending on the driving situation (e.g. if driver assist systems are active).
- If you wish to equip the car with accessories such as a front spoiler or wheel covers, it is important that the flow of air to the brakes is not obstructed; otherwise the brakes can overheat.
- Please also observe the information on brake fluid ⇒ *page 250*.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: fault. Safely stop vehicle

A malfunction has occurred in the brake system. If  and  also light up, this means that the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems have failed. You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails.

Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Please refer to the additional safety information ⇒ .

Warning! Brake servo inoperative

You need to apply much more force to operate the brakes if the brake servo fails. Seek professional assistance.

Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact workshop

The brake pads are worn. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the brake pads checked.

Brake servo: restricted. You can continue driving

The brake servo assistance is restricted or not available.

- If the driver message appears when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is off, this does **not** indicate a fault in the system. In this case, the full brake servo assistance will be available when the ignition is switched on. If you wish to exit the vehicle, first secure it so that it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 95*.
- If the driver message appears when the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is on, this indicates a fault in the system. Secure the vehicle so that it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 95*. Take your foot off the brake pedal. Switch the ignition off and then on again. If the message is still displayed or if it reappears during driving, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. The brake servo remains available with reduced capacity. The brakes may perform differently than usual.


WARNING

If the ABS, ESC and brake force distribution systems fail, input from the functions that stabilise the vehicle is no longer available. This could cause the vehicle to skid sideways. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.




Electromechanical parking brake

Operating the parking brake

The electromechanical parking brake is intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling away accidentally.

The  button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the parking brake is engaged. You can release the parking brake manually or automatically when you drive off.

Applying and releasing the parking brake

- Applying: Pull the .
- When  appears, the parking brake is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Releasing: With the ignition switched on, press and hold the brake pedal and press the  button.

Automatic gearbox: If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should select transmission position P or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

Manual gearbox: If the red warning lamp flashes, insufficient braking force has been applied or released. When you park the vehicle, you should engage first gear or press the brake pedal in addition to stop it from moving. Make sure that the warning lamp has gone out before you drive off.

Releasing the parking brake automatically when driving off

Important: The driver's door must be closed and the driver's seat belt must be buckled. ►

- Press the accelerator to drive off.




WARNING

- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!
- If the parking brake is engaged, it may be released automatically if the accelerator pedal is pressed. Take care when pressing the accelerator pedal and always select position P when you park the vehicle – risk of accident!
- If the electrical power supply fails, it is not possible to apply the parking brake (if it was released) or to release the parking brake (if it was applied). Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away
⇒ *page 95*. Seek professional assistance.



Note


- The vehicle may roll backwards on steep inclines when moving off, especially when towing a trailer or caravan. To prevent this from happening, pull the  button and hold it while you press the accelerator. Once enough power has been built up at the wheels to ensure that the vehicle will not roll back, release the button to drive off.
- Automatic gearbox: The parking brake will be applied automatically if you leave your vehicle while transmission position D or R is selected.
- Any noises heard when the parking brake is applied or released are quite normal and no cause for concern.
- The parking brake runs an automatic test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is parked. This may cause a slight noise, which is normal.


Hold assist

Applies to: vehicles with hold assist

If the vehicle is regularly stationary, for example, at traffic lights, on inclines or in stop-start traffic, this system can help you to move off easily.


Switching the hold assist on/off

The  button is located in the centre console below the selector lever. It lights up when the system is switched on.

- To switch the hold assist on/off, press the  button.

Driving off with the hold assist

Important: The driver's door must be closed. The engine must be running or ready to start automatically.

- With the vehicle stationary, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds.
- When  appears, the hold assist is keeping the vehicle stationary. You can now take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Press the accelerator pedal to drive off.

In certain situations, the hold assist may transfer the job of holding the vehicle to the parking brake.



WARNING

- The hold assist function cannot keep the vehicle stationary in all conditions on a gradient (e.g. if the road is slippery or icy). Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the hold assist function.
- Always ensure that the vehicle is stopped properly and safely – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Switch off the hold assist function before driving the vehicle into a tunnel car wash to prevent the parking brake from being applied automatically.




Note

Applies to vehicles with automatic gearbox: When the hold assist function is switched on, it stops the vehicle from creeping forwards when you take your foot off the brake pedal.

Emergency braking function

You should only use the emergency braking function in a real emergency, for example if the brake ►

system were to fail or if the brake pedal were to be obstructed. If you use the emergency braking function, this has the same effect as heavy braking.

- ▶ Pull and hold the  button while the vehicle is moving.
- ▶ A warning buzzer will sound and the emergency braking procedure will be triggered.
- ▶ If you press the accelerator pedal, the emergency braking procedure will be cancelled.




WARNING

Heavy braking in corners or in bad road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to skid or lose steering control – risk of accident!

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Parking brake: fault. Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual**

 **Parking brake: fault. Please release parking brake**

If one of these two messages appears, there is a parking brake fault. If this message appears while the vehicle is stationary, check whether the parking brake can be released and reapplied. If so, switch the ignition off and on again.


If the driver message still appears, if the parking brake cannot be released or if the driver message appears while the vehicle is moving, do not continue driving. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 95*. Seek professional assistance.

 **Parking brake: fault. Please contact workshop**

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the fault rectified. Do not park the vehicle on a slope and secure the vehicle before leaving it so it cannot roll away ⇒ *page 95*.

 **Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep**

The braking force may not be sufficient to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle at a location with a gradient that is less steep.

 **Parking brake is applied**

The parking brake is applied. Press and hold the brake pedal and release the parking brake.



Please take over.

The vehicle can no longer be held stationary. Press the brake to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Special driving situations

Driving on hills and gradients

Please follow the tips below when driving on hills and gradients or at high altitudes:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
- Do not try to turn round if you can't make it up a hill or gradient. Instead, drive back down in reverse gear.
- **Automatic gearbox:** When driving down steep gradients, the downhill speed control function may be activated if you press the brake pedal while in transmission position D. The automatic gearbox will then select a suitable gear for the gradient and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was travelling when the brakes were applied. You should still continue to use the brakes as necessary. Downhill speed control is deactivated as soon as the road levels out again or you accelerate.
- **Automatic gearbox:** When driving down steep gradients, use the engine braking effect by selecting driving program S ⇒ *page 97*. This is especially important when towing a trailer or caravan. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
- **Manual gearbox:** When driving down a steep gradient, select a lower gear to use the engine braking effect. This will reduce the load on the brakes.
- Try not to stay on the brakes; apply them periodically.
- If necessary, use the hold assist ⇒ *page 107*. ▶

- If necessary, use the downhill assist
⇒ *page 109*.

**WARNING**

- Drive only on gradients for which your vehicle is designed. Do not exceed the vehicle's available climbing power. Your vehicle could tip over or slide away.
- Keep the vehicle straight when driving on steep hills and gradients. If your vehicle is in danger of tipping over, you must steer in the direction of the gradient immediately – risk of accident!
- Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill speed control.

Driving off-road

Your car is not an off-road vehicle. Please therefore note the following if you drive the vehicle on unsurfaced tracks or off-road:

- Drive slowly and be ready for possible hazards.
- Take the ground clearance of your vehicle into account and do not drive the bottom of your vehicle directly over raised obstacles. Instead, drive the wheels on one side of the car up and across the top of the obstacle to prevent damage to the underbody.
- When driving over sand or soft mud, maintain a moderate speed. The vehicle will be less likely to get stuck if you avoid stopping.

Use the following functions as required:

- Audi drive select* **offroad** mode ⇒ *page 111*
- Downhill assist function* ⇒ *page 109*
- Restrict the ESC ⇒ *page 115*

**WARNING**

When driving off-road you are advised to avoid tracks or terrain which are not suited to the design of the car and your own driving skills and experience.

**For the sake of the environment**

Take care not to damage the environment and respect natural surroundings. Keep to the marked tracks and routes.

**Note**

Wash your vehicle after driving it off-road. Dirt and stones falling from the car can be a hazard to other road users.

Driving through water

If you cannot avoid driving on a flooded road, you should follow the advice below:

- Check the type of road surface under the water, the strength of the current and the depth of the water. The water **must not be higher than the vehicle's underbody**, even allowing for landslides, strong currents and waves.
- Deactivate the start/stop system*.
- Drive carefully and not faster than walking pace so that any waves created by the movement of the car do not splash over the underbody. Bear in mind that waves can also be created by on-coming traffic.
- Do not stop the car in water.
- Do not drive in reverse.
- Do not switch off the engine.

**WARNING**

After driving through water, carefully apply the brakes to dry them and restore the full braking power.

**CAUTION**


Parts of the vehicle (e.g. engine, gearbox, running gear or electrical components) can be badly damaged when driving through water.

**Note**



Avoid driving through salt water to prevent corrosion. If any vehicle parts come into contact with salt water, rinse them with fresh water.

Downhill assist function


Applies to: vehicles with downhill assist function

The  button is located in the centre console above the selector lever. It lights up when the system is switched on.

The downhill assist function can help you to drive down steep gradients by applying the brakes automatically on all four wheels to maintain a constant speed. You can use the accelerator and brake pedals to control the speed. How the regulating function operates depends on the gradient and road speed.


- ▶ To switch on: Press .
- ▶ To switch off: Press  again.

When is the regulating function active?

The regulating function is active shortly after you drive off and up to a speed of approx. 30 km/h on gradients of approx. 10 – 60 %. When these conditions are met, the regulating function is active and the indicator lamp  lights up.

Manual gearbox: The system will only maintain the speed at levels below approx. 9 km/h if you keep your foot on the clutch or select neutral gear. If you release the clutch again, the speed will be increased automatically where appropriate.

Standby mode

If one of the conditions for the regulating function has not been met, the system is in standby mode. The indicator lamp  may light up. The system can revert to active regulation as soon as the conditions have been met again.

Applies to vehicles without Audi drive select: The system switches itself off completely if you exceed approx. 60 km/h.

Note

If you set Audi drive select* to **offroad** mode, the downhill assist function will be switched on.

WARNING

- Always be ready to apply the brakes when using the downhill assist function.
- Always adjust the speed to suit the vision, weather, road and traffic conditions. The system cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.
- The system cannot keep your vehicle's speed constant under all circumstances when you are driving down a hill, e.g. if the road is slippery – risk of accident!

Handling dynamics

Audi drive select


Introduction


Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Audi drive select allows you to use different set-ups on your vehicle. You can switch between different driving modes, e.g. from a dynamic set-up to a comfortable one. In addition, you can adapt the vehicle set-up to suit your personal driving style. For example, you might choose to combine a more dynamic drive set-up with more comfortable steering settings.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The  button is located in the centre console above the selector lever.

- ▶ Press the  button repeatedly until the desired mode appears on the instrument cluster or centre display. Or:
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Audi drive select**.

You can change the mode while the vehicle is stationary or moving. If traffic conditions permit, briefly take your foot off the accelerator after changing the mode so that the new mode is also activated for the power unit.

The following options are available, depending on the equipment in your vehicle:


offroad – assists the driver on unsurfaced tracks. The function of the ESC is restricted and the downhill assist function* is activated. The mode is cancelled again when you switch off the ignition.

efficiency – trims the vehicle to a fuel-saving set-up and helps you to adopt an economical driving style. The start/stop system is activated and driving program E is selected on vehicles with automatic gearbox.

comfort – alters the vehicle set-up for a more comfortable ride and is suitable for long motorway trips, for instance.

auto – gives an overall impression of a comfortable but dynamic ride.

dynamic – gives the vehicle a tighter set-up and is ideal for performance driving. Driving program S is selected on vehicles with automatic gearbox.

individual – allows the vehicle set-up to be adjusted to your personal preferences. Press  to configure the mode ⇒ *page 111, Individual settings*.

Note

- When the ignition is switched on, certain systems (such as the drive system) are reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to use its settings in full.
- Audi recommends **auto** mode for everyday use.

Individual settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select and MMI

The equipment installed on your vehicle determines which systems you can select:

Drive system

The response of the engine to accelerator pedal movements is more spontaneous or balanced. On vehicles with automatic gearbox, the gear changes take place at higher or lower engine speeds.

Depending on the equipment on your vehicle, the control response of certain driver assist systems may be more dynamic or more efficient.

Depending on the selected setting, the four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power from dynamic to moderate.

Steering

The degree of power assistance can be varied. A lighter steering response is suitable on long motorway trips or for relaxed driving on winding roads, for example.

Suspension

The suspension is set for a firmer or more comfortable ride depending on the road surface. ▶

Engine sound

The sound of the engine is matched to the selected setting and ranges from subdued to dynamic. If you use the automatic settings, the engine sound depends on which driving program is selected.

Suspension

Suspension control

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The suspension control is an electronically controlled shock absorber system. The firmness of the shock absorbers is adapted to the road conditions and the driving situation. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Ground clearance

The height and ground clearance of the vehicle can be affected by the following factors:

- Changes in temperature
- Changes in vehicle loading

WARNING


Take special care that no-one can be injured if the ride height is changed, e.g. while the underbody or wheel arches are being washed.

CAUTION

Always ensure that there is sufficient clearance above and below the vehicle. This applies especially when driving into areas with low headroom, e.g. car parks. You should also be aware that the underside of the vehicle can make heavy contact with the ground if you drive onto the kerb or up a steep ramp – risk of damage!

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Suspension: fault. You can continue driving**

A malfunction has occurred. Drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Steering

Description

The electromechanical steering assists you when steering the vehicle by adapting the degree of power assistance electronically, depending on the speed. The settings depend on the Audi drive select* mode selected.

Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

For increased dynamic performance and vehicle handling, the steering ratio is varied depending on the steering input. The more the steering wheel is turned, the more direct the steering response. This facilitates manoeuvring and provides precise steering feedback at high speeds.

Driver messages


The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle**

The power assistance may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to allow for the possibility of heavy steering and stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

 **Steering: fault. Please stop vehicle**

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. The ignition can no longer be switched on. Before leaving the vehicle, secure it to prevent it from rolling away ⇒ *page 95*. Do not have the vehicle towed away, because you won't be able to steer it. Seek professional assistance.

 **Steering: fault. You can continue driving**

There is a fault in the steering system. The steering may be heavier or its response may be more sensitive than usual. Adjust your driving style accordingly. Have the steering checked by a qualified workshop without delay. Please note that the red warning lamp may appear if you restart ▶

the engine, and in this case you must not continue driving.

Steering lock: fault. Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.





WARNING

Your vehicle must not be towed if there is a fault in the electronic steering lock – risk of accident!



Note


You can drive on if the warning/indicator lamp  or  lights up only briefly.

Four-wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with four-wheel drive

The four-wheel drive system varies the distribution of power to the front and rear axles and thus improves the vehicle's handling characteristics. It interacts with a selective wheel torque control, which may intervene when cornering ⇒ *page 114*.

The four-wheel drive is specially designed to complement the superior engine power of your Audi. This combination gives the car exceptional handling and performance capabilities – both on normal roads and in more difficult conditions, such as snow and ice. Even so (or perhaps especially for this reason), it is important to observe certain safety points ⇒ .



WARNING

- Even with four-wheel drive, you should always adjust your speed to suit the conditions – risk of accident!
- The braking ability of your car is limited by the grip of the tyres. In this respect, your car is no different from a car without four-wheel drive. Therefore, do not be tempted to drive too fast – risk of accident!


– On wet roads bear in mind that the front wheels may start to “aquaplane” and lose contact with the road if the car is driven too fast. If this should happen, there will be no sudden increase in engine speed to warn the driver, as with a front-wheel drive car. Therefore, do not drive too fast in the wet: adjust your speed to suit the conditions (accident risk).


Electronic stabilisation control

Description

The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) increases the car's stability. It reduces the tendency to skid and improves the stability and roadholding of the vehicle. The ESC detects critical handling situations, such as understeer, oversteer and wheelspin on the driven wheels. It stabilises the vehicle by braking individual wheels or by reducing the engine torque.

If the indicator lamp  flashes while the vehicle is in motion, the ESC is intervening.

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the ESC system has been switched off for system reasons. In this case, the ESC can be reactivated by switching the ignition off and then on again. If the indicator lamp goes out, this means the system is fully functional.

If the indicator lamp  lights up, the ESC system has been partially or completely switched off manually ⇒ *page 115*.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking up under braking until the vehicle has reached a virtual standstill. You can continue to steer the vehicle even when the brakes are on full. Keep your foot on the brake pedal and do not pump the brakes. You will feel the brake pedal pulsate while the anti-lock brake system is working. ►

Brake assist

The brake assist system can shorten the braking distance. The braking force is automatically boosted if you press the brake pedal quickly in an emergency. You must keep pressing the brake pedal until the danger has passed. The activation of certain driver assist functions can cause the response of the brake assist system to be more sensitive than usual.

Traction control system (ASR)

In the event of wheelspin, the traction control system reduces the torque to match the amount of grip available. This increases driving stability.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

When the EDL detects wheelspin, it brakes the spinning wheels and directs the power to the other wheels. This function is not available at high speeds.

To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the EDL cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The vehicle can still be driven. The EDL will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

Steering assistance

The ESC can also intervene via the steering in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Trailer stabilisation system*

Trailers have a tendency to sway. If the ESC detects that the trailer is swaying and this is affecting the towing vehicle, it will automatically brake the vehicle in order to stabilise the trailer
⇒ page 120.

Selective wheel torque control

The selective wheel torque control function intervenes when cornering by braking the wheels on the inside of the bend individually as required. This enables precision cornering.

Multicollision brake assist system

The multicollision brake assist system can help to reduce the risk of skidding and further collisions during an accident. If the airbag control unit de-

fects that a collision has taken place, the ESC system applies the brakes.

The vehicle will not be braked automatically if:

- you apply the accelerator, or
- the brake pressure applied by pressing the brake pedal is higher than the brake pressure initiated by the system, or
- the ESC, the brake system or the vehicle's electrical system are not fully functional.



WARNING



- The grip provided by the ESC and the integrated systems is still subject to the physical limits of adhesion. Always bear this in mind, especially on wet or slippery roads. If you notice the systems cutting in, you should reduce your speed immediately to suit the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- Remember that the accident risk always increases if you drive fast, especially in corners or on a wet or slippery road, or if you follow too close behind the vehicle in front of you. Please bear in mind that even the ESC and the integrated systems cannot compensate for the increased accident risk.
- When accelerating on a uniformly slippery surface (for instance all four wheels on ice or snow), press the accelerator gradually and carefully. The driven wheels may otherwise start to spin (in spite of the integrated control systems), which would impair the car's stability and could lead to an accident.



Note

- The ABS and ASR systems can only work properly if all four tyres have a similar degree of wear. Any differences in the rolling circumference of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power when this is not desired.
- The systems can make noises when they intervene.



Operation

The  button ( on some vehicles) for operating the ESC is located in the centre console above the selector lever.



The ESC is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on. However, in certain situations it may be appropriate to restrict the ESC so that the wheels can spin. For example, when:

- Rocking the car backwards and forwards to free it
- Driving in deep snow, on loose surfaces or with snow chains fitted
- Braking on unsurfaced tracks when driving downhill
- Driving with axle articulation

Restricting the ESC (offroad mode)

- To restrict the ESC, press the  button briefly. The indicator lamp  will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamp will go out.

Switching off the ESC

- To switch off the ESC, press and hold the  button for more than 3 seconds. The indicator lamps  and **ESC OFF** will light up.
- To reactivate the full range of ESC stabilisation functions, press the button again. The indicator lamps will go out.



WARNING

- If the ESC has been switched off or if its functions have been restricted, the vehicle will not be stabilised at all or will only be stabilised to a limited degree. The driven wheels may start to spin, causing the vehicle to lose grip, in particular on slippery or wet roads – risk of accident!
- Only drive the vehicle with the ESC switched off or with restricted functions if this is necessary. You should switch the ESC on again as soon as possible.



Note

- If you set Audi drive select* to **offroad** mode, the ESC will be restricted.
- Systems which can apply the brakes automatically may be partially or completely unavailable if the ESC is restricted, switched off or malfunctioning.
- If there are faults in other systems or if specific driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on for system-related reasons. The ESC is switched on automatically if necessary and cannot be operated via the button in this case.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Stabilisation control (ESC/ABS): fault!

See owner's manual

There is a fault in the ABS or EDL. This will also cause an ESC malfunction. The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (however the ABS control function will be out of action).

Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Towing a trailer

Driving the vehicle with a trailer or caravan

General information

If the car is supplied with a factory-fitted towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements. When towing a trailer or caravan, always observe the statutory requirements and follow the manufacturer's instructions for operation and driving.

Towing a trailer or caravan affects the energy consumption, performance and wear of the vehicle. It also requires greater concentration.

If a towing bracket is to be fitted after the car is purchased, this must be done according to the instructions of the towing bracket manufacturer
⇒ *page 121* / ⇒ *page 123*.



WARNING

- Never carry passengers in a trailer – danger to life!
- Use only ball joints of the correct type approved for your vehicle. The use of unapproved ball joints can cause the trailer to be unstable or to become detached during a journey – risk of accident! Please contact a qualified workshop if you have any questions.



Note

If a non-detachable towing bracket is retrofitted to the vehicle, it must not block the number plate or the rear lights. Observe the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

Points to check before towing

Trailer weight

Never exceed the maximum permitted trailer weights ⇒ *page 296*.

If you do not load the trailer up to the maximum permitted trailer weight, you can correspondingly climb steeper gradients.

The maximum trailer weights listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level. With increasing altitude the engine power and therefore the car's climbing ability are impaired because of the reduced air density, so the maximum trailer weight has to be reduced accordingly. The weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by about 10 % for every further 1000 m (or part thereof). The actual trailer weight is the combined weight of the (loaded) vehicle and (loaded) trailer.

Draw bar weight

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed the maximum weight specification.

In the interests of road safety, Audi recommends that you always use the maximum draw bar weight without exceeding it. If the draw bar weight is too low, the trailer's handling will be affected.

You can determine the draw bar weight e.g. using a weighing machine, bathroom scales or a public weighing station. Audi recommends checking the draw bar weight, particularly when using twin-axle trailers. If the draw bar weight does not meet the specification, you can adjust it by distributing the load in the trailer correctly. If the draw bar weight meets the specifications, you should not change the load in the trailer.

If the maximum permitted draw bar weight cannot be obtained, the trailer should be loaded so that the draw bar weight is at least 4 % of the actual trailer weight. However, the draw bar weight must not be less than 25 kg. This applies to single-axle and twin-axle trailers with a wheelbase of less than 1.0 m.

You can find the maximum draw bar weight for your vehicle in the registration documents or on
⇒ *page 296*.



Distributing the load

The vehicle's handling can be impaired if the load is poorly distributed. Load the trailer according to the following criteria as far as possible:

- Objects should preferably be stowed in the luggage compartment. The vehicle load should be as heavy as possible and the trailer load as light as possible.
- Distribute loads in the trailer so that heavy objects are as near to the axle as possible.
- Objects must be secured to prevent them from sliding about.
- Where possible, operate the trailer with the maximum permitted draw bar weight.


Speed

Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. If the trailer has a stabiliser, you can drive up to 100 km/h. Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

The stability of the car and trailer is reduced with increasing speed. For this reason it is advisable not to drive at the maximum permissible top speed in unfavourable road, weather or wind conditions. This applies especially on a downhill gradient.

Gradient

When driving down the start of a gradient, the trailer may begin to sway sooner than it would on a level road. Reduce your speed if the trailer starts to sway even slightly. Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating further.


Shift to a lower gear before the gradient in order to take advantage of the engine braking effect
⇒ .

Exterior lighting

Observe all locally applicable laws and regulations on the lighting systems for your trailer/caravan. If necessary, please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Before starting a journey, check all the trailer lights with the trailer hitched up.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the range of the headlight beam.

If the indicator lamp  flashes, the turn signals are on in towing mode. If a turn signal bulb on the trailer or vehicle fails in towing mode, the indicator lamp does **not** flash twice as fast to indicate the bulb failure.

Exterior mirrors

Make sure that you are able to monitor the road behind the trailer with the exterior mirrors. Use additional mirrors if necessary. Adjust the additional mirrors to give sufficient vision to the rear. Please observe the relevant local regulations for attaching additional exterior mirrors.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer or caravan places a heavier load on the engine and cooling system. Please make sure that there is enough coolant in the cooling system.

Coolant temperature

Keep an eye on the coolant temperature gauge
⇒ *page 16*, especially in hot weather and when climbing long hills. Remember to shift to a higher gear in good time.

Tyres

Check the tyre pressures on your car, and adjust for “full load” conditions (refer to the sticker listing the tyre pressures) ⇒ *page 258*. It may also be necessary to adjust the tyre pressures on the trailer according to the recommendations of the trailer manufacturer.

At low outside temperatures, both the towing vehicle and the trailer should be fitted with winter tyres.

Overrun brake

If your trailer has an overrun brake, it must be correctly adjusted and function correctly. When using a trailer with an overrun brake, apply the brakes gently at first and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.



WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat and will considerably reduce the

effectiveness of the brakes. It will increase the braking distance and could cause the brake system to fail.

⚠ CAUTION

Retrofitted parts, in particular attachments fitted to the ball joint of the towing bracket, can cause damage. If any damage occurs, you should have the equipment checked by a qualified workshop.

ℹ Note

- Use wheel chocks when parking on a gradient if the trailer is carrying a load.
- Audi recommends having the car serviced between the normal inspection intervals if it is used frequently for towing a trailer.
- Avoid towing a trailer or caravan while running the vehicle in.

Swivelling towing bracket

Extending / retracting towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

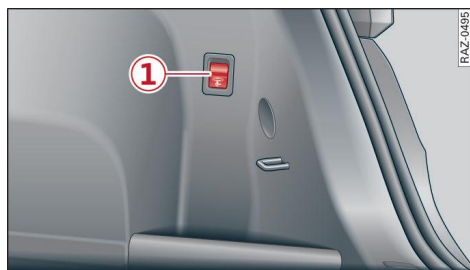


Fig. 90 Luggage compartment: Switch

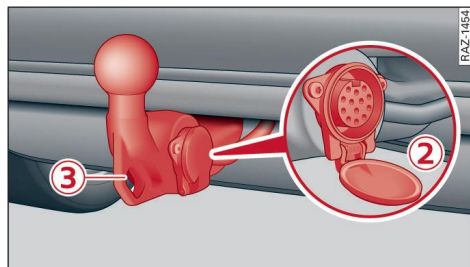


Fig. 91 Rear bumper: Connecting socket and eye for breakaway cable

Extending towing bracket

- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ Briefly pull the switch ① ⇒ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- ▶ Swivel the towing bracket out manually until it engages audibly in the operating position. The LED in switch ① will light up permanently.
- ▶ Hitch up the trailer or the rear carrier system to the towing bracket.
- ▶ Plug the connector of the trailer or rear carrier system into the trailer socket ②. Use an adapter if necessary.
- ▶ When you hitch a trailer up to your vehicle, hook the breakaway cable into the eye ③ on the towing bracket.

When you switch on the ignition make sure that the instrument cluster display does *not* display the indicator lamp 🚦 or the message **Please check towing bracket**.

Retracting towing bracket

- ▶ Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the eye ③.
- ▶ Unplug the electrical connector between the vehicle and the trailer/rear carrier system ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Remove any adapters from the trailer socket ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Unhitch the trailer or the rear carrier system.
- ▶ Briefly pull the switch ① ⇒ ⚠. The towing bracket will be released. The LED will flash.
- ▶ Swivel the towing bracket in manually until it engages audibly in the rest position. The LED in switch ① will light up permanently.

When you switch on the ignition make sure that the instrument cluster display does *not* display the indicator lamp 🚦 or the message **Please check towing bracket**.

Switch ① is not active when the vehicle is in motion or if the boot lid is closed.

Meaning of LED in switch ①

- When the LED is **flashing**, the towing bracket is between the two end positions.
- When the LED is permanently **lit**, the towing bracket is in its final position (operating position or retracted position).

**WARNING**

- Make sure that no people, animals or objects of any kind are in the path of the towing bracket.
- If the towing bracket is not correctly engaged or the LED is flashing, the towing bracket is not in its end position. It must NOT be used – risk of accident and injury!
- Never press the switch ① if a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are mounted on the towing bracket – risk of accident!
- Never attempt to interfere with the movement of the towing bracket, for example with tools, while it is swivelling. This can cause damage, in which case the trailer can no longer be towed safely.
- Only use the towing bracket when it has swivelled out fully and engaged securely.
- You should have the towing bracket checked by a qualified dealership if any faults occur in the electrical system or in the towing bracket itself.

**CAUTION**

- Do NOT hold a high-pressure cleaner directly at the seal of the towing bracket or the trailer socket. This may cause damage to the seal, with the result that moisture can enter and damage the system.
- The swivelling unit, accessories and parts of the vehicle could be damaged if you press switch ① while a trailer is hitched up or if a luggage rack or other accessories are fitted to the towing bracket.
- If you have plugged an adapter into the trailer socket, this could damage the bumper and trailer socket when the towing bracket is retracted. Remove the adapter before retracting the towing bracket.

**Note**

Retract the towing bracket or detach it when there are no trailers, bicycles or similar loads attached to it. This applies especially if the number plate or rear vehicle lighting is masked by the unused towing bracket. Ob-

serve the relevant local regulations for the use of a towing bracket.

**Note**

- The eye ③ on the towing bracket is intended only for securing the breakaway cable of the trailer.
- If you have not used the towing bracket for a relatively long time or have used it constantly without retracting or extending it, the swivelling movement may be stiff or the towing bracket may no longer swivel downwards automatically when the handle is operated. In this case Audi recommends that you extend and retract the towing bracket several times or loosen it by jogging it up and down repeatedly.

Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

Towing bracket

Check that the coupling meets the relevant country-specific regulations and is not worn.

Electronic stabilisation control (ESC)

The ESC – in particular in conjunction with the trailer stabilisation system ⇨ *page 120* – makes it easier to stabilise a trailer if it starts to skid or sway. You should therefore keep the ESC switched on at all times.

Stabiliser

Swaying and pitching can be reduced by attaching an extra stabiliser to the trailer. Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a stabiliser. The stabiliser can be purchased and installed at a qualified workshop.

Clean the ball coupling before using a trailer without a stabiliser and apply multi-purpose grease to it. Repeat this application regularly if you tow a trailer frequently.

Power supply

When you switch off the ignition, the power supply to the trailer is not interrupted as long as the energy management system does not intervene.

Trailer stabilisation system¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket and trailer stabilisation system

The trailer stabilisation system, which is integrated in the electronic stabilisation control (ESC), helps to reduce the risk of the trailer skidding at speeds over approx. 65 km/h. Please refer to the description of the ESC ⇒ *page 113* for information on how the system works. Please also refer to the notes on ⇒ *page 116* and ⇒ *page 119* to ensure that the trailer stabilisation system is functional.

WARNING

- The ESC and trailer stabilisation system cannot defy the laws of physics. Always bear this in mind, especially when the trailer is light.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the trailer stabilisation system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – risk of accident!
- The trailer stabilisation system is not always able to detect if the trailer is swaying and may therefore not intervene. In this case, apply the vehicle's brakes and avoid unnecessary steering input.
- A trailer can still "jack-knife" on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity may even tip over before they start to sway sideways.
- Try to avoid towing a loaded trailer with an unladen vehicle. Should you need to drive with this combination, drive particularly slowly to allow for the unbalanced weight distribution.
- If you are not towing a trailer, but the trailer socket is being used (e.g. for an illuminated bicycle rack), the trailer stabilisation system may be activated automatically in extreme driving conditions.

- If the vehicle is driven with two trailers at once, the trailers may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! The vehicle must not be driven with more than one trailer.
- If the vehicle is driven with a trailer attached off-centre, the trailer may begin to sway in certain situations – risk of accident! Accessories which are designed to attach the trailer off-centre must not be used.

Note

The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.

Rear carrier systems

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

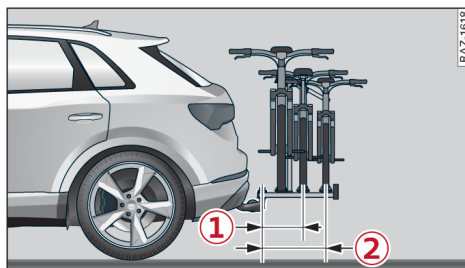


Fig. 92 Rear carrier: Maximum overhang

Rear carrier systems are systems such as bicycle racks which are mounted on the towing bracket.

Please make sure that the rear carrier system is approved for use on your vehicle.

Degrease and clean the ball joint before using a rear carrier system.

Note the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the rear carrier system.

Rear carrier system load

The carrying load consists of the rear carrier system and the load transported on it. The maximum recommended carrying load may differ from the vehicle's maximum draw bar weight. ►

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

The maximum draw bar weight and the maximum axle weight must not be exceeded.

The greater the distance from the towing bracket, the smaller the carrying load. For this reason, you should secure heavy objects as near as possible to the towing bracket.

Determining the maximum carrying load

Look up the draw bar weight for your vehicle in the technical data. You can then find the carrying load in the table below. In accordance with Regulation UN-R 55, Audi recommends that you adhere to the maximum number of bicycles on the rear carrier system as follows:

Maximum draw bar weight (kg)	Maximum carrying load (kg)	Number of bicycles
50 – 74	50	2
75 upwards	75	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

The maximum overhang depends on the maximum carrying load and is as follows:

Maximum carrying load (kg)	Maximum overhang (mm)
50 – 74	500
75	700

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang measured from the centre of the ball coupling to the centre of the rail of the last bicycle carrier is 500 mm ①. For bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles, the maximum is 700 mm ②.



WARNING

The use of an unsuitable rear carrier system could cause severe damage to the towing bracket. The towing bracket could then break and cause an accident.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with swivelling towing bracket

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please check towing bracket

A malfunction has occurred. If the message appears while the vehicle is moving, stop at the next opportunity. Swivel the towing bracket in and out again. If the message remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon.

Installation dimensions and retrofitting

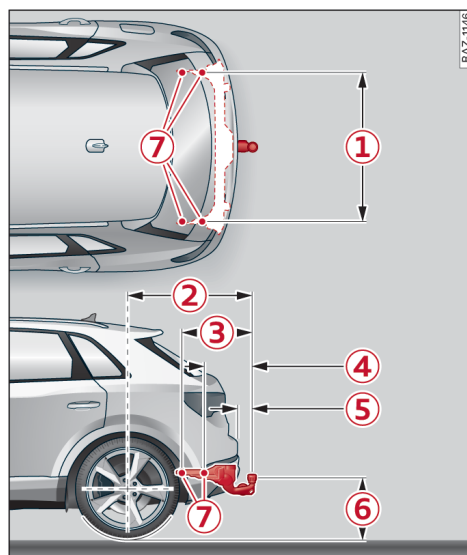


Fig. 93 Towing bracket: Installation dimensions and points

The towing bracket is bolted to the body at the securing points ⑦.

Applies to: Q3

Installation dimensions (mm)	
① 1047	④ 366
② 1004 – 1009	⑤ 65 (min.)
③ 613	⑥ 350 – 420

Towing a trailer

Applies to: Q3 Sportback


Installation dimensions (mm)	
① 1047	④ 366
② 1005 – 1009	⑤ 65 (min.)
③ 613	⑥ 350 – 420

The values given for the distance between the centre of the wheel on the rear axle and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ② are nominal values of the base vehicle. The dimensions may vary depending on the type of suspension in conjunction with the vehicle's equipment and the load the vehicle is carrying.


The distance between the road surface and the centre of the ball on the towing bracket ⑥ applies to the loading condition in the type approval according to UN-R55 (ECE). This dimension must not be smaller or larger than the value specified. The dimension may vary on vehicles categorised as M1G in the type approval.

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Qualified workshops are familiar with the method of installation and any modifications which may be required for the cooling system.

**WARNING**

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

**CAUTION**

- If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

ents without a suitable cooling system.
there is a risk of damaging the engine.

Towing bracket with square tube


Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

Use only a towing bracket with removable ball coupling bracket and ball coupling. The towing bracket must be officially approved for use with the vehicle and trailer and for the maximum gross weight of the trailer being towed. It must be securely attached to the chassis of the vehicle.

Never attach a towing bracket to the bumper. When fitted, the towing bracket must not impair the effect of the bumper in any way. Never make modifications to the exhaust or brake systems.

Check regularly that the towing bracket is secure. Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

**WARNING**

Never install a weight distribution or load-balancing towing bracket/hitch on the vehicle. The vehicle is not designed for these kinds of towing brackets. The towing bracket could fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle – risk of accident!

Using the towing bracket

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

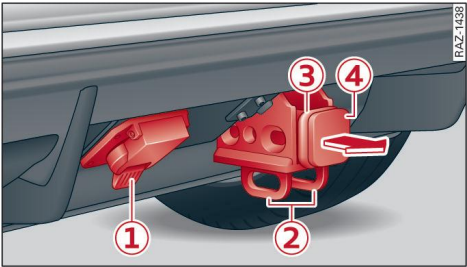


Fig. 94 Rear bumper: Towing bracket

The towing bracket on your vehicle comprises the tube ③, the trailer socket¹⁾ ① or trailer socket holder, two loops ② for the safety chains and the tube cover ④.

The tube ③ is suitable for attaching a removable ball coupling bracket with ball coupling, e.g. for towing a trailer ⇒ ⚠.

- ▶ To use the towing bracket, pull the cover ④ off the tube ③ in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ Check that the tube ③ is free of dirt and clean if necessary.
- ▶ Connect the trailer to the socket¹⁾ ① and use the loops ② to attach the safety chains.
- ▶ To protect the tube ③ from dirt after use, seal it with the cover ④.



WARNING

- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the ball coupling bracket.
- A ball coupling bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk. The ball coupling bracket must be properly secured in the tube ③. This same applies to any other attachments secured in the tube.
- Use only ball coupling brackets/ball couplings which are approved for use with your vehicle and trailer.
- To prevent the risk of injury, always remove the ball coupling bracket when a trailer is not attached.
- It is essential to remove any dirt from the towing bracket, as it may otherwise be impossible to attach the ball coupling bracket securely in the tube – risk of accident!



Note

- A ball coupling/ball coupling bracket is not supplied with the towing bracket. These are available from specialist retailers.
- The loops on the towing bracket are intended only for securing the safety chains of the trailer.

Driving with a trailer or caravan

Applies to: vehicles with towing bracket with square tube

Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Safety chains

Ensure that the safety chains are correctly attached before towing a trailer. There should be sufficient slack in the chains to allow the trailer to be towed around corners, but the chains must not touch the road.



WARNING

If the trailer is equipped with electric brakes, these brakes cannot be controlled by the vehicle's onboard monitoring system – risk of accident!

Retrofitting

Please contact a qualified workshop to find out whether your vehicle can be retrofitted with a towing bracket.

Your qualified workshop will be experienced in retrofitting towing brackets and will be familiar with the corresponding technical requirements.



WARNING

- If a towing bracket is retrofitted, the installation should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- A towing bracket that is not fitted properly constitutes an accident risk.
- For your own safety, please observe the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the towing bracket.

¹⁾ Depending on country



CAUTION

- If the connector socket is not fitted correctly, this could cause damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Particularly in high outside temperatures, it is not possible to drive up long steep gradients without a suitable cooling system. there is a risk of damaging the engine.

Driver assist systems

General information

Safety precautions

Please note the safety precautions for the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.



WARNING

- The driver always has full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. The assist systems cannot replace the full concentration of the driver. Always devote your full attention to the road and the traffic situation, and be prepared to intervene at any time.
- Only use the assist systems in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- The assist systems are only able to react as intended when the sensors and cameras function without restrictions. Please observe the notes on the sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 126*.



Note

- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations, particularly with regard to the driver's responsibilities, as well as the permitted driving speeds, parking positions, position of the wheels, distance between vehicles, forming a lane for emergency vehicles, etc. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- You can cancel the steering/braking input from the system by firmly applying the brakes yourself, pressing the accelerator firmly, turning the steering wheel or deactivating the assistance system in question.
- Always check the current settings of the assist systems before setting off. The settings

might have been changed by switching off the ignition or altered by someone else.

System limits

Please note the system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ ⚠.



WARNING

- The assist systems cannot overcome the laws of physics; in some situations it may not be possible to prevent a collision.
- It is possible that the warnings, notifications or warning lamps may not be displayed or activated in time/at the appropriate time, e.g. if a vehicle is approaching very quickly.
- The corrective steering/braking input from the assist systems may not be sufficient in some cases, or there may be no input from the systems at all. Be prepared to assume control at all times.



Note

- The technology which enables the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings is subject to certain limitations; as a result, the systems may not warn the driver or intervene in time/at the appropriate time. In addition, it is possible that the assist systems may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and give a warning or intervene unexpectedly.
- Non-standard road conditions, such off-road terrain, unpaved or gravelly roads, or roads with heavy cambers or deep ruts, may prevent the system from functioning as expected.
- The systems may not function as expected in unpredictable traffic situations such as in turning lanes, at blind exits, in roadwork areas, in case of restricted vision at steep hill crests or valleys, at intersections, at roundabouts, at toll gates or in city traffic.
- The ability of the systems to detect the vehicle's surroundings can be affected, for example, by vehicles travelling in front, rain, snow, heavy road spray or adverse light.
- In towing mode, some assist systems may be restricted or unavailable, or may not

react as usual. Please refer to the notes on towing a trailer ⇒ *page 116*.

- The function that detects the driver's hands on the steering wheel may be limited if you are wearing gloves. The steering assist systems may prompt you to take over the steering more frequently as a result.
- Equipment or accessories fitted on the steering wheel may restrict the function of the steering assist systems. In addition, the frequency with which the steering assist systems prompt you to take over the steering may differ.

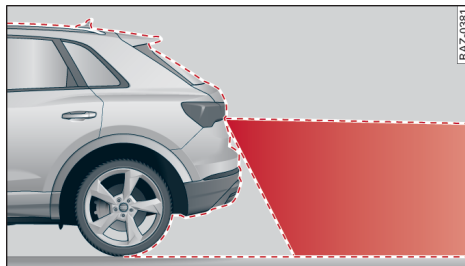


Fig. 96 Area covered by reversing camera

Sensors for detecting the vehicle's surroundings

Areas covered by sensors and cameras

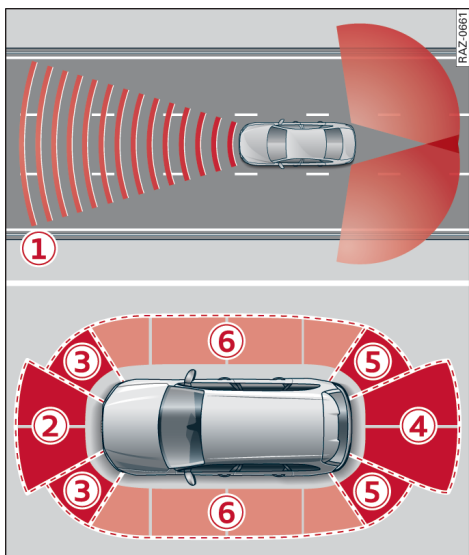


Fig. 95 Areas covered by sensors

The assist systems evaluate the data from different sensors and cameras installed in the vehicle. Do not use the assist systems if the area around the sensors and cameras or the underbody has been damaged. This can impair the function of the sensors and cameras or cause malfunctions. Have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.

Radar sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the area in front of and behind the vehicle can be detected ⇒ *Fig. 95* ①.

The radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle.

Ultrasonic sensors

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, ultrasonic sensors may be used to depict various areas on the MMI ⇒ *Fig. 95*.

The range of the areas displayed depends on the position of the ultrasonic sensors:


- ② Approx. 1.20 metres
- ③ Approx. 0.90 metres
- ④ Approx. 1.60 metres
- ⑤ Approx. 0.90 metres
- ⑥ Approx. 0.90 metres

The side area ⑥ is detected and analysed as the vehicle is moving past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this ►

case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.

Cameras

Only use the camera image on the display to assist you if the picture is clear and discernible. Please also note that the view on the display is enlarged and distorted. Under certain circumstances, objects may appear different on the display, or may be depicted inaccurately.

The reversing camera is only able to detect the area shown in red ⇒ *Fig. 96*. Only this area is shown on the centre display ⇒ .



WARNING

- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.
- Sensors may be subject to physical system limits. External sources of interference, such as from other vehicles, may impair the function of the sensors. As a result, the assist systems may be restricted or may not function as expected.



CAUTION

- Some objects may disappear from the sensors' field of vision as the vehicle approaches, even if they were originally detected by the system.
- In some cases, the sensors and cameras may only have a limited capacity to detect or display certain objects:
 - Objects positioned above the area covered by the sensors and cameras, such as the bumpers of parked cars, partially opened garage doors or suspended objects
 - Low obstacles
 - Narrow objects, such as chains, trees, posts or fences
 - Protruding objects, such as trailer draw bars

- Objects with certain surfaces and structures, such as fabrics



Note

- Exterior mirrors with surround view cameras must always be fully folded out to work properly. Make sure that the mirrors are fully folded out while you are driving.
- The sensors and cameras and their surrounding area must never be covered or painted as this can impair the function of the systems that depend on them. Please ensure that the sensors and cameras are clean and kept free of snow, ice and any other deposits. Accessories, stickers, decals, paint etc. must not be applied to the sensors and must be kept completely outside the sensors' and cameras' range of vision.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.
- Poor light or visibility (for instance when entering a tunnel), or glare from reflecting objects, etc. may restrict the function of the sensors and cameras.
- External ultrasonic sources, such as from other vehicles, may interfere with the sensors.
- The areas covered by the sensors ⇒ *Fig. 95* and cameras ⇒ *Fig. 96* are examples and do not represent the range to scale.

Positions of sensors and cameras

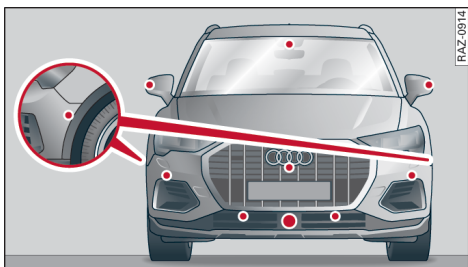


Fig. 97 Front area: Sensors and cameras

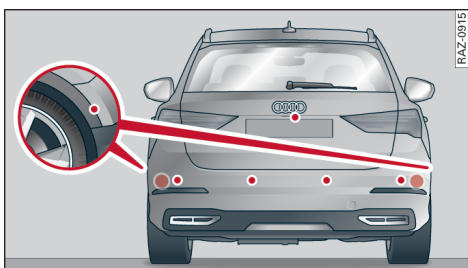


Fig. 98 Rear area: Sensors and cameras

Front area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

- Camera behind the windscreen
- Surround view cameras on the exterior mirrors
- Surround view camera at the front in the radiator grille
- Ultrasonic sensors at the front and sides of the vehicle
- Radar sensor at the front in the centre of the radiator grille

Rear area

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following sensors and cameras may be fitted:

- Reversing camera in the boot lid
- Radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle
- Ultrasonic sensors at the rear and sides of the vehicle

Note

- The positions of some sensors may differ slightly depending on the vehicle's equipment.

- Some of the sensors are installed underneath parts of the vehicle and cannot be seen from outside.

Driver assist menu

You can switch various assist functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Driver assist** menu.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Driver assist**.

Press \odot/\odot to switch the desired systems on/off or press \square to adjust the individual settings.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras \Rightarrow page 125 to \Rightarrow page 128.

Parking aid menu




Fig. 99 Centre console: Button for parking aid

You can switch various parking functions on/off and adjust the individual settings via the **Parking aid** menu.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Parking aid**, or
- Press the button \Rightarrow Fig. 99 in the centre console and press \square on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

Press \odot/\odot to switch the desired systems on/off or adjust the individual settings.

Available settings

The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle. Some of the settings can only be called up via  and only under certain conditions.

- **Rear volume** ⇒ *page 160*
- **Automatic activation** ⇒ *page 161*
- **Front/rear volume** ⇒ *page 162*
- **Entertainment fader** ⇒ *page 162*
- **Trailer view** ⇒ *page 164*
- **View** ⇒ *page 165*
- **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇒ *page 167*



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Driver information

Speed warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The speed warning function helps you to keep the vehicle below a pre-set maximum speed. To do this, a warning threshold can be set on the MMI.

As soon as the speed goes slightly above the set value, the speed warning function indicates this with a message in the instrument cluster and a warning tone. The message disappears as soon as the speed drops back below the stored maximum speed.

You are recommended to store this speed limit warning if you wish to be reminded of a particular speed limit. This could be when driving in countries with general speed limits, or if you need to keep below a particular speed when winter tyres are fitted, for example.

Note

- Please bear in mind that, even with the speed warning function, it is still important to keep a check on the car's speed with the speedometer and to observe the relevant country-specific speed limit regulations.
- On vehicles for some markets, the speed warning function also warns you when you reach a factory-set warning threshold. This warning threshold cannot be changed or switched off.

Setting speed limit warning

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

You can set the warning threshold individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Speed warning – To set the speed warning threshold.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning function

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Manually set speed limit (XX) exceeded

The set speed has been exceeded.

Camera-based traffic sign recognition

Description

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

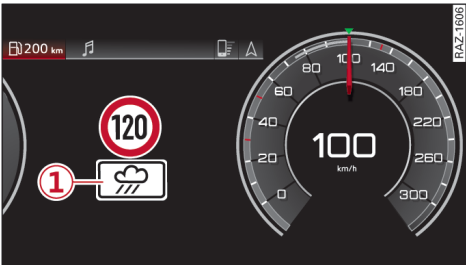




Fig. 100 Instrument cluster: Traffic sign recognition

The traffic sign recognition system displays traffic signs detected by the front camera in the instrument cluster. Data from the navigation system are also factored into the information displayed. By interpreting the data, the system is able to display the speed limit even on roads without speed limit signs. Up to three traffic signs can be displayed simultaneously. The current speed limit is always shown on the left and additionally in the status line.

In cases where the system is able to detect particular types of restrictions ①, these are displayed under the following conditions:

	A temporary speed limit for wet weather is detected while the windscreen wipers are operating.
	A speed limit for fog is detected while the vehicle's rear fog light or all-weather lights are switched on.

	A speed limit applying at certain times of day has been detected and corresponds to the time displayed in the instrument cluster.
...	A speed limit applying in the event of snow or ice has been detected and a cold temperature is displayed in the instrument cluster.
	The vehicle is towing a trailer and the Automatic trailer recognition option is activated on the centre display. In this case, traffic signs applying to vehicles towing trailers are displayed ^{a)} .

^{a)} Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

Restrictions

The traffic sign recognition system is not available in all countries. It is also subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If visibility is impaired by snow, rain, fog or heavy road spray.
- In dazzling light, e.g. from the sun or oncoming traffic.
- At high vehicle speeds.
- If the camera's range of vision ⇒ *page 126* is impaired, e.g. by dirt or stickers. Notes on cleaning ⇒ *page 263*
- If the traffic signs are partially or completely obscured, e.g. by trees, snow, mud or other vehicles.
- If traffic signs deviate from their standard appearance.
- If traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- If matrix traffic signs are mounted on overhead gantries.
- If traffic signs or routes have changed and the navigation data are out of date.
- If the system detects a speed sticker on a slow-moving vehicle (such as a heavy goods vehicle).



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

- Under adverse conditions, the traffic sign recognition system may misinterpret or fail to detect traffic signs. It is therefore possible that the speed limit display may occasionally be unavailable or even incorrect.



Note

- The traffic sign recognition system only informs and warns you of speed limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, additional driver assist systems may adjust the vehicle's speed.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if **50** is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

Calling up the traffic sign recognition


- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Setting the traffic sign-based speed warning

You can set the speed warning individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.


Available settings:

Traffic sign-based speed warning

You can switch the visual and acoustic speed warnings on/off. Depending on the country, speed warnings are either reset to the default setting or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted. If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button accordingly, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Traffic sign-based warning threshold – You can set a warning threshold. During any period in which you exceed the warning threshold, the speed limit currently detected will be shown on the display with an exclamation mark and will

flash continuously. A warning tone also sounds briefly. Depending on the country, the value set is either stored after a restart or reset to the default setting if a warning threshold of 0 km/h, 5 km/h or 10 km/h was previously selected.

Warning tone if a speed is exceeded – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic warning which is issued when a specific speed is exceeded. If you have configured the programmable steering wheel button accordingly, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Depending on the country, the setting is either reset to the default or the last setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Tone when speed limit changes – You can activate/deactivate the acoustic tone which is issued when a speed limit changes. The most recent setting is used when the vehicle is restarted.

Settings related to towing a trailer ¹⁾

You can set the speed warning individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Speed warning – You can adjust the following settings in the **Trailer** menu:

Displaying signs for trailers

Important: The automatic trailer recognition must be activated.

You can display speed limits which apply specifically to vehicles towing a trailer.

Setting the maximum speed for a trailer

You can set the maximum speed permitted for your type of trailer. If you do not enter a value or enter a value greater than the legal speed limit, the system will show the maximum national speed limit for vehicles towing a trailer.


Note

The setting for the maximum towing speed for your type of trailer remains stored (re-

gardless of the profile) and may need to be changed if you replace your trailer.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with camera-based traffic sign recognition

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the camera-based traffic sign recognition are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the front camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the front camera ⇒ *page 128* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Traffic sign recognition: currently restricted. **See owner's manual**

This driver message appears if the navigation system lacks data, for example on newly-built roads. The limited functionality may temporarily cause fewer speed limits to be displayed (which increases the possibility of an error).

No traffic sign recognised

No relevant navigation data are available in the area, and no speed limit has been detected.

¹⁾ Applies to factory-fitted towing brackets only

Traffic light information

Description

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

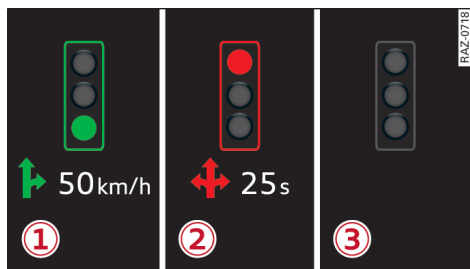


Fig. 101 Instrument cluster: Traffic light information display

The traffic light information function tells you the speed at which you need to travel to reach the next traffic light on green ①, or how long you will be waiting at the next light if it is still red ②. The traffic light information is shown in the instrument cluster as soon as traffic light data are available. A grey traffic light symbol ③ may be displayed if the vehicle is in an area with traffic light information but no traffic light signal is being received.

General information

The traffic light information function is subject to certain inherent restrictions and may be partially or completely unavailable in the following situations:

- If the maximum speed limit is exceeded
- If the speed falls below a certain threshold
- If the next traffic light is less than 30 metres away
- If the anticipated waiting time at a red light is less than four seconds
- If no traffic light data are available
- If emergency or public transport vehicles override the regular traffic light cycle
- If traffic lights are under construction or are being serviced
- In the event of warnings from the camera-based traffic sign recognition*
- If the camera-based traffic sign recognition* malfunctions or is unavailable
- If the data connection is interrupted

- If the transmission of data is deactivated in the privacy settings
- If the licence has expired

In these cases, it may not be possible to select the menu item and it may be greyed out



WARNING

- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings and the distance to other vehicles, even when you are using the traffic light information. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- It is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. Never allow the information displayed to lead you to disregard traffic regulations or take risks.
- Whether or not you use the traffic light information, it is vital to check the road speed with the speedometer and to stay within the maximum speed limit.
- The traffic light information system does not adjust the speed of your vehicle to the recommended speed in the display.
- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.



Note

- At the time of publication, the traffic light information function is available only in a small number of selected towns and cities.
- The availability of the traffic light information is limited.
- The functions depend on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, the data in the display may be implausible or incorrect, or the data may not be shown at all.
- Some traffic lights can react to different traffic situations. In this case, the traffic

light information display may change abruptly.

- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The measurement units and language settings shown in the display are based on the MMI system settings ⇒ *page 228*.

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

Switching the traffic light information on/off

You can switch the traffic light information on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*.

Calling up the traffic light information

- On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab > **Traffic signs**.

Note

If a different tab or function is selected in the instrument cluster, the traffic light information is displayed in the instrument cluster status line.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with traffic light information

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Fault. See owner's manual

The system configuration may be missing due to a network fault. Restart the system by switching the ignition off and locking the vehicle. Wait a few minutes until the vehicle has shut down completely and then switch the ignition on again.

Function currently unavailable. See owner's manual

The system is currently out of operation. Check whether any of the following items apply and rectify the cause as necessary:

- The traffic light information is deactivated.

- Data transmission is deactivated.
- The vehicle does not have traffic sign recognition.
- There is no valid licence.
- No traffic light data are available at the current location.

Fatigue warning

Description

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

Within the system limits, the fatigue warning informs the driver whether they need to take a break.

Once the vehicle is moving, the fatigue warning analyses the driving behaviour in order to estimate whether the driver is fatigued. The result is compared continuously with the current driving behaviour.

If the comparison suggests that the driver is fatigued, the system will recommend a break via a display in the instrument cluster at speeds of 65 km/h and above. If severe fatigue is detected, a tone will also sound.

System limits

The system may misinterpret the driving behaviour in certain driving situations, such as the following:

- At speeds of below approx. 60 km/h
- At speeds of above approx. 130 km/h
- On twisty roads
- On poor road surfaces
- When driving through roadworks
- In poor weather
- During performance driving
- When your attention is distracted
- If the vehicle is towing a heavy or long trailer
- When lane guidance* is activated
- If you are falling asleep or into a microsleep

Resetting the system

The system is automatically reset in the following situations:

- When you switch off the ignition

- When you release the driver's seat belt and open the driver's door
- When the vehicle has been stationary for a certain length of time



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- Never drive when you are tired – risk of accident! On long journeys, make sure to take adequate breaks at regular intervals. As the driver, you are always responsible for ensuring that you are fit to drive.



Note

In certain situations, the system may misinterpret driving manoeuvres and inappropriately recommend a break.

Operation¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

Switching the fatigue warning on/off

You can switch the fatigue warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*. A message is shown in the instrument cluster when the fatigue warning is switched off. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.


Available settings:

Sensitivity – You can adjust the sensitivity of the fatigue warning to **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

If you switch the system off, it will be switched on again the next time you switch on the ignition.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with fatigue warning

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the fatigue warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. Try switching the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:



Fatigue warning: please take a break!

The system has identified a severe level of fatigue. Take a break.



Fatigue warning: rest recommended

The system has identified a low level of fatigue. Take a break when possible.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Driver assistance

Speed regulation systems

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

The speed regulation systems consist of the cruise control system and the speed limiter.

The **cruise control system** helps you to maintain a speed of approx. 20 km/h and above. The system regulates to the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

The **speed limiter** helps you to avoid exceeding a speed of approx. 30 km/h and above. The system limits the speed even if the accelerator is pressed.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The speed regulation systems are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking as well as to controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- When you take a turn-off, drive along a motorway exit lane or pass through roadwork sections, please temporarily switch off the speed regulation systems. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.

CAUTION


Before driving down a long, steep gradient, it is advisable to reduce speed and select a lower gear. In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.


Display overview


Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Warning/indicator lamps on the speedometer and driver messages indicate the driving situation and settings. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Indicator lamps

 – The cruise control system is switched on and is actively controlling the set speed.

 – The speed limiter is switched on and is actively limiting the road speed to the threshold set.

 (flashing) – The set cruising speed has been exceeded; the driver is temporarily overriding the limit.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.



Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems



Fig. 102 Control lever: Switching the system on

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Pull the control lever towards you to position  to switch the system on.
- To switch between the cruise control system/adaptive cruise assist* and the speed limiter, press button  on the control lever.

**WARNING**

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The speed regulation systems may be switched off automatically if a fault occurs in the brake system (e.g. if the brakes overheat) while they are activated.

**Note**

The preset cruising speed remains stored when you switch between the systems.

Activating the preset speed/selecting it in advance

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can select the preset speed in advance while the vehicle is stationary or activate it when the vehicle is moving.

Important: The system must be switched on.

- ▶ To select the preset speed in advance when the vehicle is stationary, press the control lever towards ⇒ *page 136, Fig. 102*.
- ▶ To activate the preset speed, pull the control lever towards you to position while the vehicle is moving.
- ▶ To use the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling as the preset speed, press button on the control lever.

Changing the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

Important: The system must be switched on.

- ▶ Briefly push the lever towards ⇒ *page 136, Fig. 102* to increase or reduce the preset speed in small steps.
- ▶ Hold the lever at to increase or reduce the preset speed continuously.

Overriding/deactivating the preset speed

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

You can override or deactivate the preset speed. If you deactivate the system, the preset speed remains stored and you can use it again later.

Important: The system must be switched on and the stored preset speed must be activated.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- ▶ To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator.
- ▶ To revert to the preset speed, take your foot off the accelerator.

The cruise control system will be deactivated if you exceed the preset speed for a long time.

Overriding

Applies to: vehicles with speed limiter

- ▶ To override the preset speed temporarily, press the accelerator past the point of resistance (kick-down feature).

The stored preset speed is reactivated as soon as your speed drops below the preset speed.

Deactivating

- ▶ To deactivate the preset speed, push the control lever to position (click stop not engaged) ⇒ *page 136, Fig. 102*, or:
- ▶ Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Press the brake pedal.

**WARNING**

- Applies to vehicles with cruise control system: Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.
- Only accelerate quickly or use the kick-down feature when the visibility and weather conditions are suitable, and when the road and traffic conditions allow you do so safely.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems



You can switch off the cruise control systems if you will not be using them for a longer period of time.

- Press the control lever to position ③ (click stop engaged) to switch the system off ⇨ *page 136*, *Fig. 102*.

The indicator lamp will disappear and the set speed will be deleted.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed regulation systems

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the corresponding cruise control systems are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 128* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Efficiency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency assist

The efficiency assist can help you to anticipate the driving route and adopt an economical driving style. Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, the system can access data from the navigation system, from the camera behind the windscreen and from the vehicle's sensors.

When you take your foot off the accelerator, the efficiency assist controls the overrun mode with recuperation and coasting phases, depending on the situation.

The efficiency assist can anticipate the following events:

- Speed limit
- Bend or exit (only if route guidance* is active)
- Intersection

- Roundabout
- Gradient
- Vehicle ahead



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125* to ⇨ *page 128*.



Note

- Some impending events can only be anticipated in the **efficiency*** mode of Audi drive select.
- The function depends on how up-to-date the navigation data* and traffic sign recognition* data are.

Economy tips

Applies to: vehicles with economy tips

Economy tips are shown briefly on the instrument cluster display in certain situations where fuel economy is affected. By following these economy tips, you can save fuel.

Important: **efficiency** mode must be selected in Audi drive select.

Hiding economy tips

- Press the left thumbwheel on the multi-function steering wheel. Economy tips that have been cleared from the display will not appear again until the next time you switch on the ignition.

Switching economy tips on/off

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Efficiency assist > Economy tips**.



Note

The economy tips are not always displayed in every conceivable situation, but are deliberately spaced out over time.

Adaptive cruise assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the adaptive cruise assist may perform the following functions:

The **adaptive cruise control** assists you by controlling the road speed and maintaining a set distance to the vehicle in front within certain limits imposed by the system. When it detects a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise control can accelerate and brake within certain system limits. When there is no traffic in front, the adaptive cruise assist works just like a normal cruise control system. The set speed will be maintained. When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise control matches your speed to that vehicle by automatically applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). As soon as it detects no more vehicles in front, the adaptive cruise control accelerates back up to the cruising speed.

Within certain system limits, the additional **lane guidance** function helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane. You can select whether the adaptive cruise assist provides assistance in lane guidance ⇒ *page 143, Switching lane guidance on/off*.

In **congested traffic and traffic jams**, the system can brake down to a standstill (on vehicles with automatic gearbox) and move off again automatically under certain conditions.

Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The **predictive control** system can adjust the speed in response to events ⇒ *page 144*.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125 to ⇒ page 128*.

Restrictions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

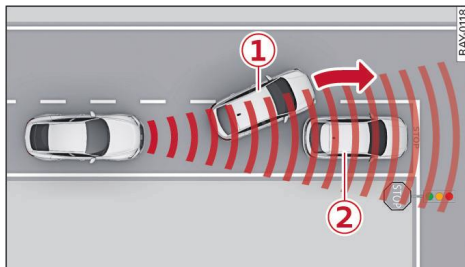


Fig. 103 Example: Vehicle changing lane and vehicle stationary

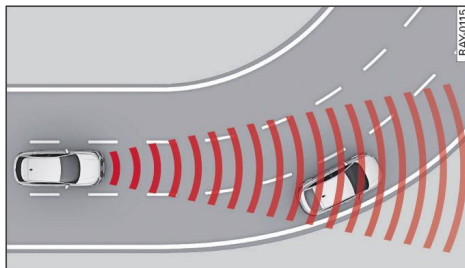


Fig. 104 Example: Driving into a bend

In some driving situations, the adaptive cruise assist functions are restricted and you may need to intervene by, for example, braking the vehicle yourself:

- If a vehicle ①, which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist, turns off or changes lane and another stationary vehicle ② is located in front of that vehicle, the system will not react to the stationary vehicle.
- When driving into a bend ⇒ *Fig. 104* and driving out of a bend, the system may react to a vehicle travelling in the next lane and therefore brake the vehicle. You can override this by accelerating briefly.
- The system operates on the basis of information gathered from various sensors and cameras. Vehicles cannot be detected until they are within range and inside the sensors' field of vision ⇒ *page 126*.
- In tight bends, a vehicle driving ahead which has already been detected by the adaptive cruise assist may no longer be recognised, and ►

the system may accelerate unexpectedly as a result.

- The system will not react to stationary vehicles in the same lane if the system assumes that you can easily steer to avoid the stationary vehicle.
- The system cannot react to stationary obstacles, such as the end of a traffic jam, particularly at high speeds.
- The ability of the system to detect vehicles in front is limited when they are too close, travelling out of line, or moving into your lane.
- Vehicles that are not clearly discernible, e.g. a motorcycle or cyclist travelling in front of you and vehicles with high ground clearance or a protruding load, are often identified late or are not detected at all.
- The system does not react to pedestrians, animals or crossing or oncoming traffic.

⚠ WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Display overview

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

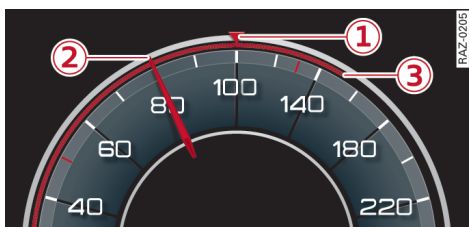


Fig. 105 Instrument cluster: Display on speedometer

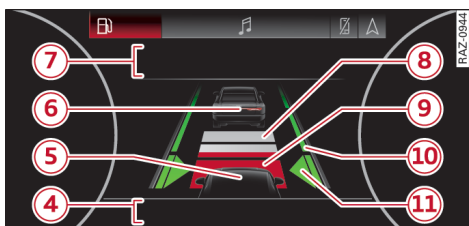


Fig. 106 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

The driving situation and the settings are displayed in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Fig. 105*. More detailed system information is shown on the **Driver assist** ⇒ *Fig. 106* display. The displays depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

Display on speedometer


- ① Marker for set speed
- ② Current speed
- ③ Available speed range of the adaptive cruise assist (example)


Driver assist display

The display in the **Driver assist** screen appears only if it was called up on the on-board computer ⇒ *page 18*.


- ④ Driver messages and settings
- ⑤ Own vehicle
- ⑥ Vehicle detected in front
- ⑦ Driver messages and settings
- ⑧ Specified distance set
- ⑨ The distance bars are coloured in red from the bottom up as soon as the actual distance is shorter than the set distance.
- ⑩ Availability of lane departure warning
- ⑪ Availability of lane guidance of adaptive cruise assist

Warning and indicator lamps


 – The speed/distance regulating function is active. No vehicle has been detected in front. The set speed will be maintained.


 – The speed/distance regulating function is active. A vehicle in front has been detected. The system is regulating the speed to maintain a constant distance to the vehicle in front, and will accelerate and brake the vehicle automatically.

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox


 – The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. A vehicle in front has been detected. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.


Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox



 – The speed/distance regulating function is active but the vehicle is not **ready to drive off**. No vehicle has been detected in front. Your vehicle is stationary and will not be set in motion again automatically.

 – You must intervene. The system alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently ⇒ *page 144, Take over braking prompt* or the safe start monitor is issuing a warning ⇒ *page 148*.

 – Lane guidance is active.

 – Actively take over the steering immediately. The system limits have been reached ⇒ *page 144, Take over steering prompt*.

 – Lane guidance is switched on but not active ⇒ *page 143, Lane guidance limitations*.

 /  – Actively take over the steering immediately. No steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits ⇒ *page 144, Take over steering prompt*.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125 to ⇒ page 128*.

Operating the adaptive cruise assist

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

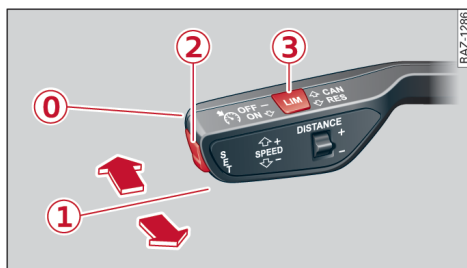


Fig. 107 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

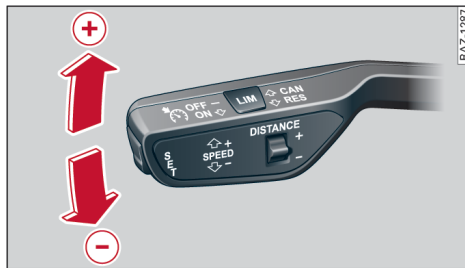



Fig. 108 Control lever: Setting a new speed

Switching on

- To switch the adaptive cruise assist on, pull the lever towards you to position ① until it engages.

Setting the speed and activating the regulating function

When you switch on the system, you can set your current speed as the cruising speed and activate the cruise control:

- Press the **SET** button ②. The set speed will be indicated by a marking on the speedometer ① ⇒ *page 140, Fig. 105* and displayed in the instrument cluster ⇒ .
- Automatic gearbox: You should also keep the brake pedal depressed to store the speed if the vehicle is stationary.

You can set any speed between 20 km/h and the maximum of the available speed range ③¹⁾ ⇒ *page 140, Fig. 105*.

Interrupting the regulating function temporarily

The regulating function can be interrupted at any time.

- While driving or when stationary: Push the lever away from you in the direction of the arrow, or
- While driving: Press the brake pedal.

The indicator lamp  will go out. ►






¹⁾ Depends on country and engine type

Resuming the regulating function

Once a speed has been set, it can be called up again after the regulating function has been paused.



- ▶ To resume the regulating function while you are driving, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.
- ▶ **Automatic gearbox:** To reactivate the regulating function when the vehicle is stationary, press the brake pedal and pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Setting a new speed

- ▶ Briefly push the lever towards / to increase or reduce the set speed in small steps.
- ▶ To increase or reduce the set speed continuously, hold the lever towards / until the marking on the speedometer  ⇒ [page 140](#), [Fig. 105](#) reaches the desired cruising speed.


Applies to vehicles with predictive control: The predictive control system can adjust the set speed automatically in response to events ⇒ [page 144](#).

Pre-selecting a speed

You can pre-select the speed, even when the adaptive cruise assist is inactive, by moving the lever in the appropriate direction /. To activate the pre-selected speed, pull the lever towards you in the direction of the arrow.

Switching off

You can switch off the adaptive cruise assist if you will not be using it for a longer period of time.

- ▶ Push the lever away from you to position  until it engages.

The indicator lamp and the set speed will disappear.

Vehicles with manual gearbox

The regulating function is available in second gear or higher (when driven in the normal engine speed range).

When the regulating function is switched on, you must press the clutch pedal in the normal way in


order to change gear. The regulating function will remain activated when you change gear or press the clutch pedal.

You do **not** need to press the accelerator after selecting a gear and releasing the clutch. The system accelerates the vehicle automatically as appropriate.

The regulating function may be switched off automatically if you keep the clutch pedal depressed for too long or if you change gears incorrectly or use the clutch pedal improperly.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 125](#) to ⇒ [page 128](#).
- The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering, driving off and controlling the vehicle's speed and distance to other vehicles.
- Only switch on the adaptive cruise assist in situations where it is safe to do so. Always adjust your driving style to suit the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- When you take a turn-off or drive along a motorway exit lane, please temporarily switch off the adaptive cruise assist. This is to ensure that the vehicle does not accelerate to the cruising speed in such situations.
- If you press the **SET** button  at a speed of less than 20 km/h, the vehicle will automatically apply the minimum speed setting. If no vehicles have been detected in front, the vehicle will automatically accelerate up to this speed.



Note

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

- If the speed limiter* is selected after the ignition is switched on, the adaptive cruise assist must have been selected beforehand. Press the **[LIM]*** button ③ to select the adaptive cruise assist.
- The speed setting is deleted for safety reasons when you switch off the ignition or the adaptive cruise assist.
- The ESC and traction control system (ASR) are automatically activated when the adaptive cruise assist is switched on.
- The system is switched off/cannot be switched on when the maximum possible road gradient for safe operation has been exceeded.
- If a vehicle is detected in the outside lane, the adaptive cruise assist adjusts the speed¹⁾ to prevent you from overtaking on the right/left¹⁾. You can override the speed adjustment by changing the set speed or overriding the regulating function briefly.

Switching lane guidance on/off

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and lane guidance

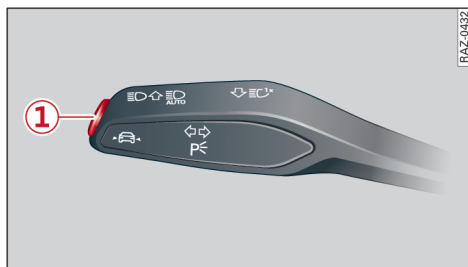


Fig. 109 Turn signal lever: Button for lane guidance and lane departure warning

The lane guidance function can be switched on and off. Within certain system limits, it helps you to keep the vehicle largely in the centre of the lane.

Activating/deactivating lane guidance availability

- To activate/deactivate the lane guidance availability, press the button ① on the turn signal lever briefly.


The arrows ① in the **Driver assist** display

⇒ *page 140, Fig. 106* and indicator lamps

⇒ *page 140* indicate whether the lane guidance is available.

The lane guidance assists you by making steering inputs only if the adaptive cruise assist is controlling the vehicle's speed/distance and the availability is switched on.

Lane guidance limitations

If  lights up in white, lane guidance is switched on but not active. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
- The turn signal was activated.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Note

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- Audi recommends that you use the lane guidance on major roads only.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Prompts to take control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

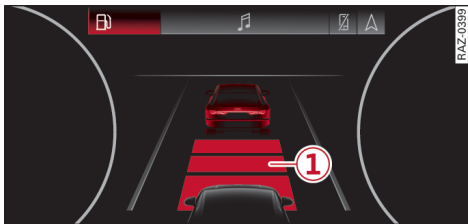




Fig. 110 Instrument cluster: Take over braking prompt


Take over braking prompt



If the warning lamp  lights up and the driver message **Distance!** appears, apply the brake pedal to slow down your vehicle ⇒ .

In such cases, the adaptive cruise assist alone is not able to brake the vehicle sufficiently to maintain a safe distance to the vehicle in front.

The illustration ① is also shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up on the on-board computer ⇒ page 18.

Take over steering prompt

If the warning lamp  lights up, actively take over the steering immediately. The system limits have been reached, for example because the system's steering power is insufficient in tight bends. The system may no longer be active after a short time and may only be available again later.

If the warning/indicator lamp  or  lights up and a corresponding message appears, actively take over the steering immediately. Insufficient steering activity has been detected or the system has reached its limits. Keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. If you do not take over the steering, the adaptive cruise assist will be stopped and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇒ page 157.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sen-

sors and cameras ⇒ page 125 to
⇒ page 128.

- The adaptive cruise assist serves as a driver assist system. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to braking, steering and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Note

- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The prompts to take control may be accompanied by further acoustic and visual signals, depending on the situation.

Predictive control

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist and predictive control

How it works

When the predictive control is active, the efficiency assist function adapts the cruising speed setting ① ⇒ page 140, Fig. 105 for the adaptive cruise assist to recognised speed limits and the road layout ahead. When there are no longer any events ahead detected by the system, the adaptive cruise assist accelerates back up to the cruising speed which you set most recently. When the adaptive cruise assist is switched on initially after the ignition has been switched on, the availability of the predictive control is indicated by a driver message.

Symbols indicate which events the predictive control is reacting to.

Important

- The predictive control must be switched on via **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ page 128.
- The adaptive cruise assist must be actively regulating the vehicle's speed ⇒ page 141.
- The system can only react to speed limits of 20 km/h and higher.

- The map material on the navigation system* must be updated regularly to ensure the system can function without limitations
⇒ *page 201*.







Overriding the regulating function

You can override the predictive control at any time by pressing the accelerator. In addition, the control lever ⇒ *page 141, Fig. 108* can be used to change the speed limit control response.

The predictive control is deactivated if you make a significant change to the speed limit control response. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed to match the manually set value.

Event symbols

The following symbols may appear depending on the equipment fitted. The predictive control displays each symbol to indicate the event to which it is currently reacting. Some of the detailed symbols are only shown in the **Driver assist** display.

Symbol	Description
	Speed limit ahead (example)
	Speed limit ahead
	Speed limit no longer applies
	Corner or Exit ahead
	Intersection ahead
	Roundabout ahead

Setting predictive control


You can switch the predictive control on/off or adjust the individual settings under **Adaptive cruise assist** in the **Driver assist** menu
⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Use speed limit – The regulation of the cruising speed according to speed limits ahead can be switched **On** or **Off**. The optional control setting **With tolerance** can also be applied. In this case,

the actual speed can be above or below the set speed briefly for increased efficiency. This may result in a delay in observing the speed limit.

Adaptation to route ahead – The response of the function for adapting to the route ahead can be configured individually. This setting affects the handling characteristics of the predictive control, e.g. how fast the vehicle will drive through corners.

Driver messages

If  and a driver message with **Predictive control** are displayed in the event of a fault, some or all of the efficiency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 128* and attempt to switch the system on again later.


If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the predictive control. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.
- The system does not give way to priority traffic and does not stop at traffic lights – risk of accident!
- The speed at which the system drives the vehicle through a corner may not correspond to your own driving style or ambient conditions. To avoid a risk of accident, apply the brakes manually as necessary, and reduce the speed setting in **Adaptation to route ahead**.

Note

- When using the predictive control, the actual road speed may be above or below the maximum speed limit. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep within the speed limit.
- The actual traffic signs on your route always take precedence over the information on the display. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- The system only responds to traffic signs specifying a speed limit.
- The speed limit displayed in the instrument cluster is given in the units applicable in a particular country. For example, if 50 is displayed on the instrument cluster, this may signify mph or km/h, depending on the country.
- The marking  ⇒ *page 140* is adjusted to the set speed when a speed limit is detected even when the adaptive cruise assist is not regulating the speed.
- When the vehicle is coasting, the actual road speed may occasionally exceed or fall below the set speed.
- The system's control response depends on the driving program set for the adaptive cruise assist/the Audi drive select* mode selected.
- When you switch on the ignition and subsequently drive onto a motorway with no speed limit, the system initially regulates the speed to 130 km/h¹⁾. After this, the last speed set by the driver is applied.
- The system will only regulate the speed at motorway junctions or on slip roads if these are part of the route set in the route guidance.
- If incorrect values are supplied by the camera-based traffic sign recognition* or if the map material on the navigation system* is out of date, this can cause failures or implausibilities in the control response.

- Certain functions are not available when you leave the road area mapped on the navigation system.
- While route guidance is active on the navigation system, the control uses the navigation route as a reference. Implausibilities in the control response can occur when route guidance is inactive or if you leave the route.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

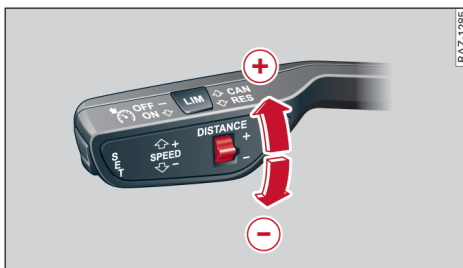




Fig. 111 Control lever: Setting the distance






When you draw closer to a vehicle in front, the adaptive cruise assist matches your speed to that vehicle by applying the brakes, and then maintains a constant distance (which you can adjust in the settings). If the vehicle in front accelerates, the adaptive cruise assist will also accelerate up to the target speed you have specified.

- To display the current distance setting, briefly press the rocker switch.
- To increase or reduce the distance by one level, briefly press the rocker switch again towards .

The newly set distance will be displayed briefly, e.g. indicator lamp .

Setting the distance changes the gap between your vehicle and the one ahead. The higher the speed, the higher the distance. The following distances can be set: ►


¹⁾ Depending on country

Symbol	Time-based distance	Distance at 100 km/h
	approx. 1 second	28 m
	approx. 1.3 seconds	36 m
	approx. 1.8 seconds (generally recommended)	50 m
	approx. 2.4 seconds	67 m
	approx. 3.6 seconds	100 m

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Note

- When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.
- In the **Driver assist** display, a graphic  ⇒ *page 140, Fig. 106* will be shown instead of the warning/indicator lamps. The display provides the same information as the warning/indicator lamps.
- The acceleration style ranges from moderate to dynamic, depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting ⇒ *page 148, Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings*.
- The actual distance maintained by the adaptive cruise control may be longer or shorter, depending on the traffic situation and the driving style of the driver in front.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

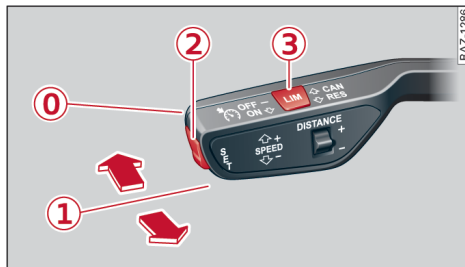


Fig. 112 Control lever: Operating adaptive cruise assist

Important: The regulating function of the adaptive cruise assist must be activated for all additional functions.

Overriding the regulating function

You can override the regulating function completely, e.g. to overtake another vehicle or accelerate faster.

- Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate manually.
- Take your foot off the accelerator pedal to continue using the function.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, the driver message **Overridden** will appear.

Response when turn signals are on (to overtake)

If you operate the turn signal and the adaptive cruise assist concludes that you are intending to perform an overtaking manoeuvre, the system can accelerate before you change lane and reduce the distance to the vehicle ahead. This happens automatically if you are driving behind another vehicle and activate the turn signal to overtake.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- Make sure you do not unintentionally rest your foot on the accelerator, as this could override the regulating function. The system

might not apply the brakes and therefore not regulate the vehicle's speed.

- The functions are designed to assist the driver; however the driver still maintains full responsibility for the operation of the vehicle. This applies in particular to changing lane, braking, controlling the vehicle's speed and maintaining the distance to other vehicles.

Driving in congested traffic

Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox and adaptive cruise assist





Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: Safe start monitor

Stopping with the adaptive cruise assist

In conjunction with an automatic gearbox, the adaptive cruise assist also helps you when driving in congested traffic. If a vehicle in front stops, the adaptive cruise control applies the brakes (within the system limits) and holds the vehicle at a standstill.

Driving off with the adaptive cruise assist



If the message **Ready to drive off** and  are on the display and the vehicle in front drives off, your vehicle will automatically start moving ⇨ .


If the vehicle has been stopped for too long, the message will disappear and the vehicle will no longer move off automatically for safety reasons.

- You can extend or re-activate the period in which the vehicle is ready to drive off automatically for a short time by pulling the lever towards you briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *page 147, Fig. 112.*
- To set the vehicle in motion again manually, tap the accelerator with your foot.

Safe start monitor

Applies to: vehicles with safe start monitor

The vehicle may start moving even if it detects certain obstacles while doing so ⇨ . The warning lamp  draws your attention to the danger if an obstacle is detected.

If you are in the **Driver assist** display, this is also illustrated  ⇨ *Fig. 113* along with the driver message **Warning!**. In addition, a tone will sound. Your vehicle will then set off more slowly. This can happen in certain situations, even if there appears to be no obstacle.

- If necessary, press the brake pedal to slow down.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125* to ⇨ *page 128.*
- If the **Ready to drive off** message appears, your vehicle will start moving even if there is an obstacle between your car and the vehicle in front. Always make sure that there are no obstacles between your vehicle and the vehicle in front – risk of accident!

Note

- For safety reasons, the adaptive cruise assist is activated only if
- the driver's seat belt is fastened,
 - all the doors and the bonnet are closed,
 - the vehicle has not been stopped for too long.

Adjusting adaptive cruise assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

You can adjust the adaptive cruise assist settings individually in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:


Applies to: vehicles without Audi drive select

Driving program – Depending on the selected driving program and the distance setting, the

handling characteristics will range from **dynamic** to **moderate**.



Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The handling characteristics are adjusted according to the active Audi drive select mode
⇒ *page 111*.

Store last distance – The last distance is stored after the ignition is switched off. If the distance is not stored, distance  (time-based distance of approx. 1.8 seconds) is automatically selected as the default setting.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the adaptive cruise assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 128* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

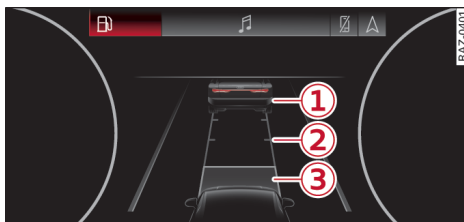
Please take control!

This message appears, for instance, if the vehicle rolls backwards when driving away on a slight gradient, even though the systems are active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling back or colliding with an object behind. The message also appears if, for example, the steering power of the system is insufficient and the adaptive cruise assist has been switched off.

Distance warning

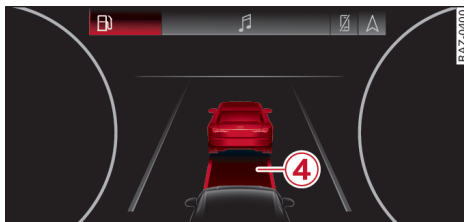
Description

Applies to: vehicles with distance warning



Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist


Fig. 114 Instrument cluster showing the current distance



Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

Fig. 115 Instrument cluster: Distance warning

How it works

This function measures the distance to the vehicle in front in time units at speeds above approx. 65 km/h. The warning lamp  draws your attention to the danger if the vehicle goes continuously below the warning threshold.

Driver assist display

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive cruise assist

The symbols are only shown when the **Driver assist** display is called up in the on-board computer ⇒ *page 18* and the adaptive cruise assist is not controlling the vehicle's speed/distance.

- ① Vehicle detected in front
- ② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 s.
- ③ Warning threshold setting. The display is coloured from the bottom up, depending on the setting.
- ④ The actual distance is shorter than the set distance and your attention is drawn to the danger.



Adjusting distance warning settings

– You can switch the distance warning on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:


– **Warning threshold**

Driver messages


If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the distance warning functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 128* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

**Note**

– As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

– The distance may be below the warning threshold for a short time when overtaking or approaching another vehicle quickly from behind. In this case, no warning will be given. A warning is only given if the distance is below the threshold for an extended period of time.


Lane departure warning

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

The lane departure warning detects lane markings within certain limits imposed by the system. If you approach one of the detected lane markings, the system can warn you that the vehicle might be about to cross one of the markings by correcting the steering. The steering wheel may vibrate as well.

The system works at speeds of approx. 65 km/h¹⁾ and above. It is not available at very high speeds.

**WARNING**

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

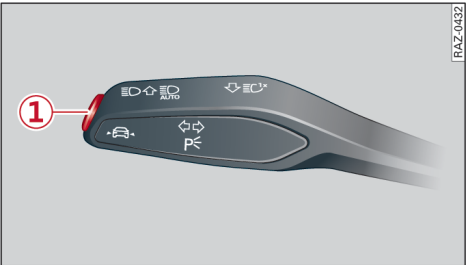


Fig. 116 Turn signal lever: Button for lane departure warning and lane guidance function of adaptive cruise assist*

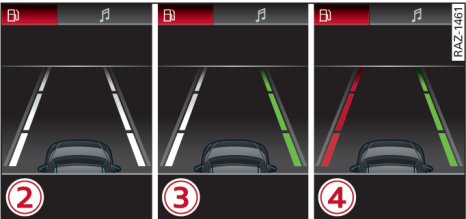



Fig. 117 Instrument cluster: Display showing driver assist system

¹⁾ 55 km/h in certain countries







Switching the lane departure warning on/off



- You can switch the lane departure warning on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*, or
- Press and hold the button  on the turn signal lever until the corresponding signal comes on in the instrument cluster.

If you press the button  on the turn signal lever briefly, this operates the lane guidance ⇒ *page 143*.

Overview of displays and warnings


Indicator lamps indicate whether the system is available and/or ready to give warnings. The lane departure warning system is ready to give warnings when it detects a demarcation on at least one side of the lane in which you are driving.

Driver assist display	Indicator lamps	Meaning
 White line(s)		The lane departure warning system is switched on but not ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
 Green line(s)		The lane departure warning system is switched on and ready to give warnings on the corresponding side.
 Red line		The lane departure warning system warns you by correcting the steering before you cross the lane demarcation on the corresponding side.

Driver assist display	Indicator lamps	Meaning
-		Red lines on both sides: The lane guidance function of the emergency assist* is active ⇒ <i>page 157</i> .
-		The lane departure warning system is switched off ^{a)} . A driver message is also displayed.


a) The exact appearance of the symbol may vary.

If the lane departure warning system has to intervene for a long time, a message will appear asking you to drive in the centre of the lane. The steering wheel may also vibrate to warn you if the detected lane demarcations are crossed. You can switch steering wheel vibration on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

When the indicator lamp  lights up, the lane departure warning system is not ready to give warnings. This may happen if the following system limits or events occur:

- The system cannot detect the necessary lane markings (e.g. in roadworks or due to snow, dirt, rain or glare).
- The lane is too narrow or too wide.
- The bend is too tight.
- The vision at a hill crest/valley is insufficient.
- You have taken your hands off the steering wheel.
- The turn signal was activated.

Take over steering prompt

If the lane departure warning is triggered repeatedly and no steering activity is detected, you will be warned by acoustic and visual signals, e.g. , to take over the steering. Actively take over the steering immediately and keep your hands on the steering wheel so that you are ready to steer at all times. The system may no longer be ready to warn after a short time and may only be available again later.

If you do not take over the steering, the lane departure warning will no longer be ready to give warnings and the emergency assist will be activated on vehicles which have this function ⇒ [page 157](#).

Response when turn signals are on

Applies to vehicles without side assist: The system does not warn you if you operate the turn signal before crossing a lane demarcation. In this case, it assumes that you intend to change lanes.

Applies to vehicles with side assist: If you operate the turn signal while the lane departure warning is active, the steering will be corrected noticeably just before you cross the lane demarcation if the side assist detects vehicles approaching quickly or travelling at about the same speed as your own vehicle and judges the situation to be critical. This intervention is intended to keep the vehicle in the lane.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 125](#) to ⇒ [page 128](#).
- The system initiates a corrective steering input to warn you that the vehicle is about to leave the lane. It is always the driver's responsibility to keep in the lane.
- In certain situations, e.g. during heavy braking, the system may not correct the steering. Be prepared to assume control at all times.



Note

- If the lane departure warning is switched off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition¹⁾.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to steer at all times. As the driver you are always responsible for adhering to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

- The steering will not be corrected and the steering wheel will not vibrate if the system detects a situation where it is clear that an overtaking manoeuvre is intended.
- The display in the **Driver assist** screen appears only if it was called up on the on-board computer ⇒ [page 18](#).

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with lane departure warning

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the lane departure warning function and the lane guidance function of the adaptive cruise assist* are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or the camera may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the camera ⇒ [page 128](#), [Fig. 97](#) and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Audi pre sense

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

The Audi pre sense functions can take action to protect the vehicle occupants and other road users in certain situations within the system limits. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, various Audi pre sense systems may be fitted:

- The **Audi pre sense basic** system can react in unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers), or in the event of emergency/preventative braking.
- The **Audi pre sense front** system can detect an impending frontal collision and can react by giving warnings, applying the brakes and activating protective functions for the safety of the occupants.
- The **Audi pre sense rear** system monitors the traffic travelling behind the vehicle and can react to an impending rear-end collision.

¹⁾ Varies depending on country and model

Audi pre sense protective functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Depending on the vehicle's speed and equipment, the following functions may be activated in certain situations:

- Visual and acoustic warnings.
- Activation of reversible front seat belt tensioners.
- Automatic closing of windows and panoramic glass roof.




WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 125](#) to ⇒ [page 128](#).




Note

- Only some of the protective functions may be activated depending on the hazard situation and the Audi drive select* mode selected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.
- Audi pre sense may also be restricted or unavailable in situations such as the following:
 - If the occupants are not wearing seat belts.
 - After the ignition is switched on while the indicator lamp  is lit.
 - If the vehicle is reversing.
 - If the front passenger's airbag is deactivated.
 - If there is a fault in the airbag control unit.
 - If the ESC is restricted or switched off.

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

Audi pre sense basic is activated automatically at speeds above approx. 30 km/h. In unstable driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle oversteers/understeers) or in the event of emergency/preventative braking, Audi pre sense basic can activate the protective functions of Audi pre sense.

The driver message **Audi pre sense**  draws your attention to danger.



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ [page 125](#) to ⇒ [page 128](#).

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

In certain situations, Audi pre sense front can give a warning if there is a danger of a frontal collision, and can apply the brakes firmly if necessary. The system uses the data from the front radar sensor and is active at speeds above approx. 5 km/h.

Driving situations

The system can react to certain events, depending on how quickly the vehicle is travelling.


The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 85 km/h:

- You approach a stationary vehicle.
- A pedestrian¹⁾ or cyclist¹⁾ crosses the vehicle's path while moving into your lane²⁾.
- A pedestrian¹⁾ or cyclist¹⁾ is moving forwards in your lane in the same direction as you.²⁾

The system can react to the following events up to a speed of approx 250 km/h:

- A vehicle ahead brakes significantly.
- You approach a much slower vehicle from behind.
- You approach a stopped vehicle (the system is only capable of reacting if it previously detected that this vehicle was moving in the same direction as you).

Advance warning

The system can warn the driver of hazards it detects at road speeds of approx. 30 km/h and above. **Audi pre sense**  will appear in the instrument cluster and a warning tone will sound. ►

¹⁾ Not available on vehicles for some markets.

²⁾ The speed range may vary from country to country

Brake jolt


In the event of an impending collision with another vehicle, an acute warning may also be given in the form of a brake jolt. In addition, your attention is drawn to the danger in the instrument cluster display. You may need to take evasive action or brake hard to avoid a collision.

Automatic brake pressure increase

If you do not brake hard enough in the event of an impending collision, the brake pressure may be increased automatically in certain situations.

Automatic braking

If you do not respond to the acute warning, the system can, subject to general system limits, apply the brakes with increasing force in order to reduce the impact of a potential collision.

If the vehicle has been braked to a standstill,  **Please take control!** will appear in the instrument cluster and you must take control of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The protection provided by Audi pre sense front is still subject to the prevailing physical limits. It is a driver assist function and cannot prevent a collision in every situation. The driver must always intervene personally. It is always the driver's responsibility to brake in good time. Do not let the extra safety provided tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.
- Among other things, Audi pre sense front does not react to stationary/stopped, oncoming or diagonally crossing persons/cyclists, groups of people, animals, crossing and oncoming traffic or objects such as poles, fences and railbound vehicles.
- Audi pre sense front may be restricted or unavailable in corners or after dark.

- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- Ensure that all occupants have their seat belts fastened correctly and are seated properly as described in this manual ⇒ *page 61*.
- If the brakes are applied automatically when towing a trailer, the behaviour of the trailer under braking may be different than usual.

Note

Audi pre sense is deactivated if you switch off the ESC.

Audi pre sense rear

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense rear

Audi pre sense rear uses the data from the radar sensors fitted at the rear of the vehicle to calculate the probability of a collision with the vehicle behind, within certain system limits.

The protective functions of the Audi pre sense system may be activated if it detects a collision risk from the vehicle behind.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- Audi pre sense rear does not react to people, animals, intersecting traffic or objects that are not recognised as vehicles.


Note

- The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system are deactivated if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically.
- The functions of the Audi pre sense rear system may be deactivated if a fault develops in the side assist.

Adjusting Audi pre sense settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

You can switch Audi pre sense and the associated systems on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle. The systems can only be switched off/on when the vehicle is stationary.


If you switch Audi pre sense off, the indicator lamp  will light up and a corresponding message will appear.

Note

- If you switch the Audi pre sense system off, it will be automatically activated again the next time you switch on the ignition.
- Switch off Audi pre sense on private roads and if the vehicle is being towed away or loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. This prevents the Audi pre sense system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

If  is displayed in the event of a fault, the functions of the Audi pre sense system are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 128*.

If the message is still displayed when you switch the vehicle back on, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

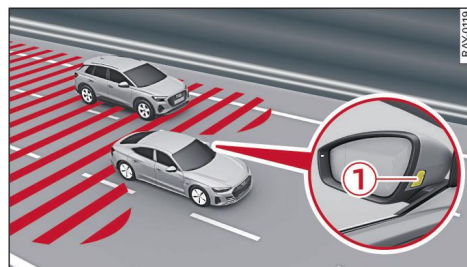



Fig. 118 Driving situation and warning signal on exterior mirror

How it works


The side assist function monitors the blind spot and the traffic behind your vehicle and helps you when changing lane. If the system detects an approaching object which it judges to be critical, the warning signal  lights up on the exterior mirror on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

Driving situations

The side assist function is active at speeds above approx. 15 km/h and can detect situations such as the following:

- Your vehicle is being overtaken by another vehicle. The faster this vehicle approaches from behind, the earlier the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.
- There are vehicles travelling at a similar speed in the next lane. The warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror by the time the detected object is in your blind spot.
- You are overtaking another vehicle slowly. If the speed differential between the two vehicles is not greater than 15 km/h, the warning signal will appear on the exterior mirror.

Information mode

As long as you have not activated a turn signal, the system informs you of objects which it judges to be critical by activating the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror .

The intensity of the warning signal in this information mode is kept relatively low, so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front.

Warning mode

As soon as you activate a turn signal, the system warns you of objects which it judges to be critical by flashing the warning signal on the corresponding exterior mirror.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, if other driver assist systems detect that you are in danger of leaving your lane, the warning signal may flash to warn you of objects which the system judges to be critical, even if you have not activated a turn signal. The system may initiate a corrective steering input as an additional warning ⇨ *page 150, Lane departure warning*.

System limits

The system uses the data from the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle. The sensors are designed for normal lane widths and monitor the lanes immediately to the left and right of your vehicle. In certain situations it is possible that the system may react to vehicles in your own lane or two lanes away, or to objects at the edge of the lane. The warning signal then lights up even though there are no vehicles in the critical area. Such situations may include:

- When driving at the edge of your own lane
- When driving in narrow lanes
- When driving through a corner
- If there are high barriers next to the lane
- When driving through roadworks



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125 to ⇨ page 128*.
- The warning signal may not light up in time if other vehicles are approaching very quickly, or if you are overtaking other vehicles quickly.



Note

- The warning signals on the exterior mirrors may not be properly visible if tinted foil is affixed to the side windows on the driver's or passenger's side.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇨ *Fig. 118* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.
- The system is not available in towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the system may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.

Adjusting the side assist settings

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

You can switch the side assist on/off or adjust the individual settings in the **Driver assist** menu ⇨ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Available settings:

Brightness – Always adjust the brightness with the side assist function switched on so that you can monitor the selected setting in the warning signals on the exterior mirrors. Adjust the brightness of the warning signal so that it does not distract you while you are looking at the road in front. Because the display brightness is automatically adjusted in accordance with the ambient light level, it is possible that the display may already have been automatically adjusted to the lowest or highest setting.





Note

If the system is switched on, the warning signals on the exterior mirrors light up briefly every time the ignition is switched on.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with side assist

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the side assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇨ *page 128*, *Fig. 98* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Emergency assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with emergency assist

How it works

The emergency assist can detect if the driver is inactive within certain system limits. The system issues a warning in such cases and, if necessary, takes over operation of the vehicle to bring it automatically to a standstill in the same lane.

Availability of the emergency assist

- The emergency assist is available automatically, irrespective of speed, when the adaptive cruise assist with lane guidance* is active.
- If the adaptive cruise assist has been switched on but is not activated, the system is only active if the vehicle is travelling at more than approx. 65 km/h and the lane departure warning is switched on and ready to give warnings.
- The emergency assist is not available when the adaptive cruise assist is switched off.
- If any of the requirements for the adaptive cruise assist or lane departure warning are no longer met, the functionality of the system may be restricted or it may be deactivated automatically.


Functions of the emergency assist

Phased measures can be taken. The vehicle can intervene within the limits of the system. The measures which can be taken depend on the haz-

ard situation and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

- Visual and acoustic warnings
- Vehicle guidance
- Gradual reduction in vehicle speed
- Brake jolt
- The hazard warning lights will be activated¹⁾.
- The brakes are applied and the vehicle is brought to a standstill
- As soon as the vehicle is stationary, the parking brake will be applied.

Display

If  is displayed, for instance, the emergency assist's lane guidance is active.



Overriding the emergency assist

You can override the emergency assist as follows

⇨ :

- Move the steering wheel, or
- Press the brake pedal, or
- Press the accelerator firmly, or
- Switch off the adaptive cruise assist and the lane departure warning.

Driver messages

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the emergency assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 128* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125* to ⇨ *page 128*.

¹⁾ This function is not available on all models or in all countries.

- The emergency assist is a system which is designed to help (in an emergency only) by taking control of the vehicle and bringing it to a stop.



Note

Only some of the measures may be activated depending on the hazard situation detected. Some functions may be modified or skipped.

Parking and manoeuvring

Introduction

Depending on the equipment fitted on your vehicle, you may be provided with assistance by various parking aids when you are parking and manoeuvring the vehicle.

Parking aids

When you are parking, the **rear parking aid** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected behind the vehicle ⇒ *page 159*.

When you are parking, the **parking aid plus** warns you acoustically and visually about obstacles detected in front of, behind and beside* the vehicle ⇒ *page 161*.

The **reversing camera** uses the centre display to show a picture of the area behind the vehicle captured by the camera. Orientation lines in the image from the reversing camera assist you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ *page 163*.


The **surround view cameras** are an extension of the reversing camera; they provide various views of the area around the vehicle to help you when parking and manoeuvring ⇒ *page 163*.

The **rear cross-traffic assist** can warn you about traffic approaching from either side while you are reversing or leaving a parking space ⇒ *page 167*.

Assisted parking

The **park assist** helps you to find suitable parking spaces and to manoeuvre the vehicle into and out of them. The park assist takes over the steering when parking in empty parking spaces. The driver must still accelerate, brake and change gears as necessary. The driver must always keep an eye on the area around the vehicle and monitor the parking/unparking manoeuvre ⇒ *page 170*.

Available settings

You can set the parking aid functions individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇒ *page 128*. Some of the settings can only be called up via  and only under certain conditions.

– **Rear volume** ⇒ *page 160*

– **Automatic activation** ⇒ *page 161*

– **Front/rear volume** ⇒ *page 162*

– **Entertainment fader** ⇒ *page 162*

– **Trailer view** ⇒ *page 164*

– **View** ⇒ *page 165*

– **Rear cross-traffic assist** ⇒ *page 167*



WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.



Note

To familiarise yourself with the systems, Audi recommends that you practise parking in a quiet location or a car park. The weather and light conditions should be good.

Rear parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with rear parking aid

How it works

The rear parking aid will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the sensors in the vehicle's rear bumper ⇒ *page 126*, *Fig. 95*, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

Activating/deactivating

The system is activated automatically when the power unit is active and reverse gear is selected.

The system is deactivated automatically when you change transmission positions.

In some countries, the system cannot be deactivated when reverse gear is selected.

Visual warnings


The visual warnings on the centre display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.


Red segments ① ⇒ *page 161*, *Fig. 120* represent objects detected in the direction in which you are travelling. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the ►

penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Do not continue reversing!

White segments ③ indicate detected objects not located in the direction in which you are travelling (e.g. if a transmission position is no longer selected).

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. Stop reversing immediately ⇒ .

► To switch off the acoustic signals for the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press  in the centre display. In some countries, the acoustic signals are reactivated after the transmission position is changed or the next time the parking aid is activated.

Adjusting the volume


You can adjust the volume individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.



Available settings:

Rear volume – Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

Fault warnings

If  appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 128* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- Sensors have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.



CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.



Note

- The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.
- A distance warning will NOT be given if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Parking aid plus

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus




Fig. 119 Centre console: Button for parking aid

How it works

The parking aid plus will help you when parking and manoeuvring the vehicle by providing warnings about any obstacles detected. If an obstacle is detected by the ultrasonic sensors on the vehicle ⇒ *page 126, Fig. 95*, you are informed of this by acoustic and visual warnings.

Activating/deactivating

Important: The vehicle must be travelling at under approx. 10 km/h.

- ▶ Press the  button in the centre console. When you activate the system, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up.

Automatic activation

- ▶ The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected.

The parking aid is activated automatically if the vehicle approaches an obstacle when driving forwards at under approximately 10 km/h and **Automatic activation** is switched on in the **Parking aid** menu ⇒ *page 128*. The acoustic signals are not emitted until the obstacle is well within range of the sensors.

Automatic deactivation

The distance indicator for the parking aid plus is deactivated automatically when you drive forwards at over approx. 10 km/h.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

CAUTION

Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.

Note

- If the parking aid is deactivated, it is only re-activated automatically if one of the following conditions has been met:
 - The vehicle is driven faster than 10 km/h.
 - The ignition is switched off and on again.
 - The parking brake is applied and released again.
 - **Automatic gearbox:** Transmission position P is selected, followed by a different position.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with parking aid plus

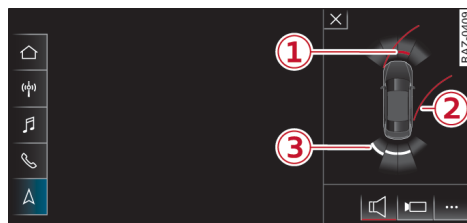


Fig. 120 Centre display: Distance indicator

When the sensors detect an obstacle, you will be alerted by acoustic signals (beeps) and a visual display.


Visual warnings


The visual warnings on the centre display help you to see the critical area around the vehicle and to estimate the distance to an obstacle.

Red segments ① represent objects detected within the path of travel. The red lines ② indicate the anticipated path of travel, depending on the steering wheel angle. A white segment ③

indicates an obstacle that has been detected outside the path of travel. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the closer the segments move towards the vehicle in the graphic. At the latest when the penultimate segment is highlighted the vehicle has reached the danger (collision) zone. Obstacles within the danger (collision) zone are shown in red, even if they are beyond the path of travel. Stop moving immediately.

Acoustic warnings

The acoustic signals sound with increasing frequency as you approach an obstacle which has been detected in the vehicle's path. A warning tone will sound continuously when the front or rear of the vehicle is less than approx. 0.30 m away from the obstacle. A continuous warning tone will also sound if there is an obstacle less than approx. 0.20 m from the side* of the vehicle; in this case, you should not drive forward or reverse any further ⇨ .

- To switch off the acoustic signals for the parking/unparking manoeuvre, press  in the centre display. The acoustic signals will be reactivated automatically the next time the parking aid is activated.

Adjusting the volume

You can adjust the volume individually in the **Parking aid** menu ⇨ *page 128*. The settings depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.



Available settings:



Front volume – Volume for the front and side* zones.

Rear volume – Volume for the rear zone.

Entertainment fader – The volume of the current audio or video source is reduced when the parking aid is activated.

Fault warnings

If  appears, the sensor in the corresponding area or the loudspeaker is faulty. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified. The LED in the  button may flash in addition when the system is activated.

If  or  is displayed in the event of a fault, the parking aid functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 128* and attempt to switch the systems on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125* to ⇨ *page 128*.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.



CAUTION

- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Applies to vehicles with park assist: In short parking spaces, the parking aid warning tone will sound continuously when the vehicle is less than approx. 0.20 m away from the obstacle. Stop moving immediately!



Note

- The segments in the side zone* are detected and evaluated as the vehicle moves past. When you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or after the vehicle has been stationary for a while, the ambient surroundings may have changed. In this case, that area will be displayed in black until the area has been scanned and evaluated.
- The volume of the warning signals will be reduced after a few seconds until it is muted ►

if the vehicle remains at a constant distance from a detected obstacle (but not if the obstacle is within the range where a continuous tone sounds). If the tone is muted and the obstacle is closer than before, the tone will sound again. If the tone is muted and the obstacle is further away than before, no tone will sound. Please watch the area surrounding the vehicle when driving off.

- There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

Reversing camera/surround view cameras

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

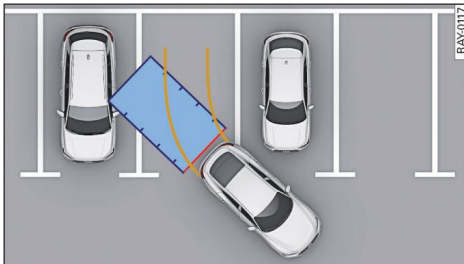


Fig. 121 Display showing orientation lines for parking

Depending on the equipment fitted on the vehicle, a reversing camera or multiple surround view cameras may be available.

The **reversing camera** assists you by displaying orientation lines when you are parking or manoeuvring the vehicle.

The **surround view cameras** additionally provide a wide range of views showing the area around the vehicle; these can be selected as preferred.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125* to ⇨ *page 128*.

Activating/deactivating

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras



Fig. 122 Centre console: Button for parking aid

Activating/deactivating

- Press the **P** button in the centre console. When you activate the system, you will hear a brief acknowledgement tone and the LED in the button will light up, or:
- Press **⏏** on the centre display when the distance indicator ⇨ *page 161*, Fig. 120 is displayed.

The system can be activated at low speeds, for example when manoeuvring.

Automatic activation

The system is activated automatically when the engine is running and reverse gear is selected. You will hear a brief acknowledgement tone.

Automatic deactivation

The system is deactivated automatically as soon as the vehicle exceeds a certain speed when driving forwards.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇨ *page 125* to ⇨ *page 128*.

Warnings

Applies to: vehicles with reversing camera/surround view cameras

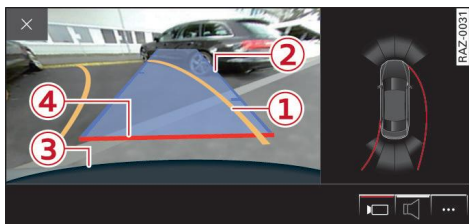
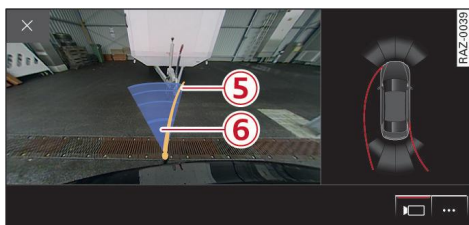


Fig. 123 Centre display: Approaching a parking space



Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

Fig. 124 Centre display: Trailer view

When using the reversing camera/surround view cameras to help you park, the acoustic and visual warnings from the parking aid will provide you with further guidance.

Visual orientation lines

- ① The orange orientation lines represent the path of the vehicle ⇒ ①. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines are pointing towards the parking space.
- ② You can estimate the distance to an obstacle by referring to the horizontal blue markings. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 1 metre. The blue area is an extension of the vehicle outline to the rear of the vehicle.
- ③ You can see the rear bumper at the bottom of the display.
- ④ You should stop reversing, at the latest, when the red orientation line is bordering on an obstacle.

Trailer view

Applies to: vehicles with trailer view

Important: The reversing camera or surround view cameras must be activated.

- Applies to vehicles with surround view cameras:
Switch to the **Rear view** ⇒ page 165, Fig. 125.
- Select > **Trailer view** on the centre display with the parking aid activated.

The trailer view ⇒ Fig. 124 makes it easier to position your vehicle in front of a trailer. The orange orientation line ⑤ ⇒ Fig. 124 indicates the anticipated path of the tow-bar. You can use the blue markings ⑥ to estimate the distance to the trailer hitch. Each marking is equivalent to approx. 0.3 m. The width of the blue area represents the maximum angle to which the steering wheel can be turned.

Symbols

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

If is displayed and the corresponding display area is not available, the camera will not be available on the corresponding side. The exterior mirrors may have been retracted electrically or one of the doors or the boot lid may be open.

If appears, a system fault has occurred and the corresponding display area is not available. The camera in this area has malfunctioned.

If a symbol remains displayed, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 125 to ⇒ page 128.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

! CAUTION

- The orange orientation lines ① show the path of the rear end of the vehicle if you were to reverse using the current steering angle. Please note that the front end of the vehicle swings out further than the rear. Please make sure you keep a sufficient distance between the vehicle and any obstacles to make sure that the exterior mirror or edge of the vehicle do not collide with the obstacles.
- Remember to maintain sufficient clearance from the kerb to avoid damaging the wheel rims.
- Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is com-

pletely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.

i Note

There is no rear or side* distance warning if the system detects that a trailer is being towed. However, the system will still give a warning when obstacles are detected while driving forwards. The proximity graphic will switch over to towing mode. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be deactivated automatically.

How to use the surround view cameras

Applies to: vehicles with surround view cameras

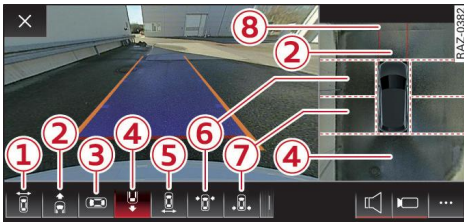


Fig. 125 Centre display: Surround view cameras

- To select a view, press ① – ⑦ or tap on an area on either side of the vehicle²⁾.

Settings for the side of the display

The overhead view is shown on the side of the display. You can change the view in the **Parking aid** menu → *page 128*. You can switch between **graphic** and **camera**.

On vehicles with surround view cameras, you can choose from a selection of different views.

Selecting views

- To display the whole selection bar, tap on the current view ① or swipe the edge of the selection bar from left to right¹⁾.

¹⁾ In some countries the gesture is made in the opposite direction. The order of the views may differ. However, the symbols used to identify the views are the same.

²⁾ Important: The area around the vehicle (**camera**) must be selected and visible in the side **view**.

	Symbol/designation	Description
①	Corner view (front) or Display selection bar	This view makes it easier to leave narrow parking spaces and to drive out of exits and intersections where your view is restricted. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area in front of the vehicle.
②	Front view	This view helps you make the most of the space in front of the vehicle when manoeuvring.
③	Overhead view	This view helps you to manoeuvre and position the vehicle precisely. The overhead view is composed from the camera pictures. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system ⇒ ⚠.
④	Rear view	This view helps you make the most of the space behind the vehicle when manoeuvring. The image from the reversing camera is displayed.
⑤	Corner view (rear)	This view can be helpful when driving out of narrow parking spaces or out of an exit onto an obscured road. It displays an almost 180° panoramic view of the area behind the vehicle.
⑥	Front tyres	This view helps you monitor the steering angle and the distance from the front tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
⑦	Rear tyres	This view helps you monitor the distance from the rear tyres to the kerb while you are parking the vehicle.
⑧	Steering wheel angle	The red lines show the anticipated path of the vehicle using the current steering angle ⇒ ⚠.



WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The **overhead view** display is generated using the individual camera images. A graphical image of the vehicle is superimposed on the display by the system. Objects and obstacles above the camera are not displayed.

temporarily stop switching between views automatically.

- **Corner view (front)** is displayed the first time you activate the system while in a forward gear.



CAUTION

Only use the views from the camera at the rear of the vehicle when the boot lid is completely closed. Please make sure that there are no objects mounted to the rear end of the vehicle which could block the view of the reversing camera.



Note

- Depending on the gear selected, the system will switch automatically between the suitable views (**Front view** or **Rear view**). If you change the view manually, the system will

Rear cross-traffic assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

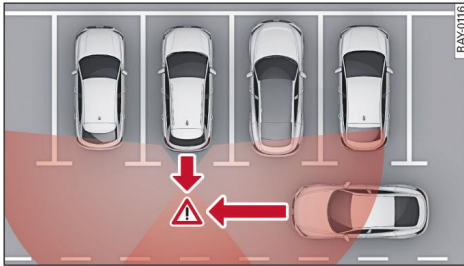


Fig. 126 Areas covered by sensors for rear cross-traffic assist

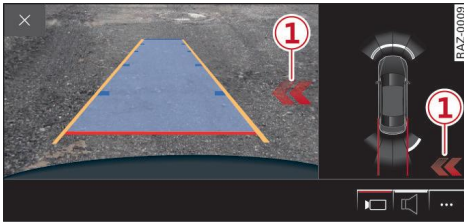


Fig. 127 Centre display: Rear cross-traffic assist display

How it works

The rear cross-traffic assist uses the radar sensors at the rear corners of the vehicle to monitor the area behind and to the side of the vehicle. The system can detect moving objects, such as cars, as they approach the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 126*. When driving out of a parking space, you are assisted by the centre display ① and various warnings.

Requirements for the use of the rear cross-traffic assist:

- The parking aid must be activated ⇒ *page 161*.
- The vehicle must not be reversing faster than approx. 10 km/h.

Displays, warnings and braking

- **Display:** The arrows ① only appear when the parking aid is activated. On vehicles with surround view cameras, the arrows only appear for camera views **Rear view** and **Corner view (rear)**. The arrows indicate the direction from which the intersecting traffic is approaching.

- **Acoustic warnings:** A tone may sound continuously as an additional acoustic signal when you are reversing.
- **Automatic brake jolt:** If the driver does not react to a warning, a short sharp application of the brakes may also warn against a potential collision with an approaching object.

The warning tone and the automatic brake jolt only occur while you are reversing.

Switching the rear cross-traffic assist on/off

- You can switch the rear cross-traffic assist on/off in the **Parking aid** menu ⇒ *page 128*.

Driver messages

If or is displayed in the event of a fault, the rear cross-traffic assist functions are unavailable or restricted.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the sensors on the rear corners of the vehicle ⇒ *page 128*, *Fig. 98* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react to people and cannot warn you of all approaching objects, such as bicycles. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone.
- The system may not react in time or may not react at all if other objects are approaching very quickly.
- The rear cross-traffic assist does not react if the vehicle is parked at an angle or parallel to the roadside or is so far into a parking space that it is hidden by the surrounding vehicles.

Note

- After an automatic brake jolt, no further automatic brake jolt will occur for the next few seconds.
- The system's functions may not be available if the ESC is restricted or deactivated or if a fault has occurred.
- If the rear cross-traffic assist gives an acoustic warning signal, the parking aid may no longer be able to warn you audibly of obstacles it has detected.
- The system is not available if towing mode is detected. If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted the functions may not be switched off automatically. The functions must not be used when towing a trailer.
- The area covered by the sensors ⇒ *Fig. 126* is an example and does not represent the range of the sensors to scale.

Assisted parking

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If your vehicle is equipped with the park assist, the system will help you to find suitable parking spaces. To do this, parking spaces are measured using ultrasonic sensors fitted on the sides of the vehicle.

Once a parking space has been found, the system provides assistance with parking while you monitor the area around the vehicle with the help of the parking aids and cameras*.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Options for driving into or out of a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

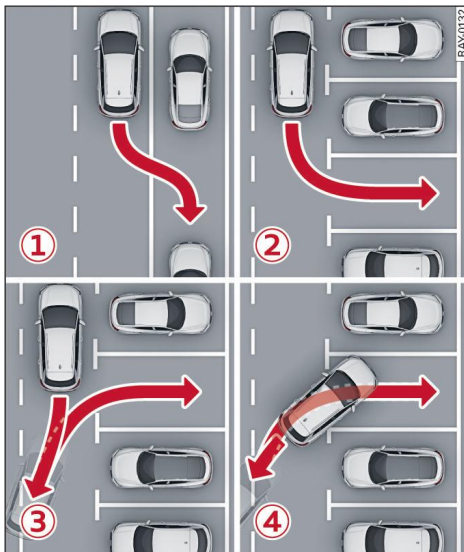


Fig. 128 Overview of parking options

The following parking options may be available to you depending on the equipment fitted in your vehicle and when the system is activated:

- After using the parking space search function **① – ③** ⇒ *page 169, Finding a parking space*.
- After attempting to park the vehicle when you have started driving into the parking space yourself **④**. The front of the vehicle should already be far enough inside the parking space so that the sensors can determine the size of the space.

Options for driving into a parking space

- ① Reversing into parallel parking spaces.
- ② Reversing into perpendicular parking spaces.
- ③ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already driven past them.
- ④ Driving forwards into perpendicular parking spaces.

Options for driving out of a parking space

- ① Driving out of parallel parking spaces.

Finding a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 129 Centre console: Button for park assist



Fig. 130 Centre display: Parking space search activated

- ① Display showing options for parking
- ② Arrows and symbols indicate the driver response required while searching for a parking space (e.g. continue driving forwards or apply brakes)
- ③ Parking spaces detected and selected by the system

Activating the parking space search function

- To activate the parking space search function, press the **P** button in the centre console ⇒ Fig. 129, or:
- To activate the parking space search function while the parking aid is switched on, press **P** on the centre display.

The centre display will show the vehicle looking for a parking space ⇒ Fig. 130.

Looking for a parking space

- Drive slowly forwards past the line of parked cars. For the best parking result, you should maintain a distance of approx. 1 metre to the row of parked cars.
- The vehicle first looks for a parking space on the same side of the road. To look for a space

on the other side of the road, activate the turn signal for that side or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the centre display.

Selecting a parking space

When the system finds a parking space which might be long/wide enough for your vehicle, this space is displayed. The system automatically suggests an option for driving into the space ①.

If there are different options for driving into the space, you can choose one of them manually. Press on one of the suggested options ① on the centre display.

Starting the parking manoeuvre

Follow the visual instructions on the centre display ② to reach the correct starting position. A **P** will appear in the intended parking space ③ as soon as the vehicle reaches the correct position.

- Position the vehicle as parallel as possible to the line of parked cars or to the kerb.
- Check that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle ⇒ !.
- Start the assisted parking manoeuvre ⇒ page 171.

Manoeuvring area

The vehicle may swing out during the parking manoeuvre ⇒ ⚠. A driver message may appear if there are obstacles within the manoeuvring area which may impede the parking manoeuvre or constitute a risk (e.g. on the other side of the road). Try driving further forwards and closer to the row of parked cars, as appropriate.



WARNING


- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ page 125 to ⇒ page 128.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited

extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Even parking spaces which the system has identified as being suitable may not have been detected correctly. It is the driver's responsibility to decide whether a parking space shown in the display is suitable for the vehicle.
- Certain objects (e.g. trees and pillars/posts) or surfaces (e.g. gravel, snow and ice) in and around the parking space can cause unexpected results when parking – risk of collision.
- The assisted parking systems must not be used when the vehicle is towing a trailer or a rear carrier system is fitted.

Note

- You can activate the system after you have already driven past a parking space (as long as you were driving slowly enough). To do so, press **P** on the centre display.
- The electronic stabilisation control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking manoeuvre. If the ESC intervenes, the parking manoeuvre is interrupted.
- You can approach a perpendicular parking space forwards and then activate the system. However, for this purpose the front of the vehicle must already be in the space  ⇒ *page 168, Fig. 128* so that the sensors can measure the space.
- The system is not available when certain other assist systems are switched on.
- If there are suitable parking spaces on both sides of the road (for instance on a one-way street), you can change the direction of the turn signals or press on the corresponding side on the centre display to park on the other side of the road, even if you have already activated the park assist.

- Assisted parking cannot be used in combination with the parking systems to park the vehicle on steep inclines or tight bends.

Park assist

How it works

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Once a parking space has been found, the park assist helps you to drive the vehicle into and out of the space. The park assist steers the vehicle while you operate the accelerator and brake pedal and monitor the area around the vehicle. The park assist can be stopped at any time.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The driver is always responsible for safety during parking and all other manoeuvres.
- Do not use the function if the vehicle cannot move freely (e.g. if it is on the jack).
- The sensors and cameras have certain areas in which they cannot detect the surroundings. Objects, animals and persons in these areas may be detected only to a limited extent or not at all. Always monitor the road and the area around the vehicle; do not rely on the sensors alone, and do not allow yourself to become distracted.

CAUTION

- Do not use the park assist if you are transporting objects which project beyond the vehicle, if snow chains are fitted or if the parking space is on a slope.
- In certain situations, the park assist will guide the vehicle onto or across the kerb, for instance if other vehicles are parked on the kerb. You should always be ready to take over the steering wheel in order to prevent damage to the tyres and/or wheel rims; alternatively, you can abort the manoeuvre.
- When parking the vehicle in a space where there is no kerb, maintain a distance of at

least 50 cm to walls and buildings to avoid any damage to the vehicle.


Note


Always observe the relevant country-specific regulations when using the park assist.

Using the park assist to park the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Important: A suitable parking space must have been found and selected ⇒ *page 169*. The vehicle must be stationary to begin with.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle  ⇒ *page 169, Fig. 130* on the centre display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ▶ After you have been stationary for a moment, check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist.
- ▶ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully ⇒ . The maximum manoeuvring speed is approx. 7 km/h.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the centre display and the warning tones until the parking manoeuvre is complete.

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* ⇒ *page 128*.
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injuries may occur if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.


Note




You can cancel the direction of travel given by the system before parking by shifting between forwards and reverse gear. The system will then calculate the further path and steering directions for the manoeuvre based on the position of the vehicle.

Using the park assist to leave a parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the vehicle is parked parallel to the roadside, you can use the park assist to drive out of the parking space.

Arrows and symbols on the roof of the vehicle  ⇒ *page 169, Fig. 130* on the centre display indicate the action required, e.g. braking or change of direction. The park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver operates the pedals.

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Press the  button in the centre console ⇒ *page 169, Fig. 129*.
- ▶ Wait until a message appears on the centre display requesting you to specify the direction in which you wish to leave the space; this is needed to start the manoeuvre.
- ▶ Activate the corresponding turn signal or press on the corresponding side next to the vehicle on the centre display.
- ▶ Check that the direction of travel of your vehicle matches the direction given by the park assist.
- ▶ Take your hands off the steering wheel.
- ▶ Watch the road. When the road is clear, press the accelerator carefully ⇒ . The maximum manoeuvring speed is 5 km/h.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the centre display and the acoustic warning tones until the manoeuvre is complete.
- ▶ The procedure is complete when no more manoeuvring is necessary and the specified steering angle is sufficient to drive out of the space. Actively take over the steering immediately ⇒ .

WARNING

- Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.
- The park assist serves as a driver assist function. However, the driver still maintains full responsibility for monitoring the area around the vehicle and preventing collisions.
- The steering wheel turns rapidly on its own when parking the vehicle and leaving the space. Injuries may occur if a person reaches between the spokes on the steering wheel when it is turning.

CAUTION

Take over the steering as soon as you are requested to do so after the system has completed the last manoeuvre to ensure the steering wheel remains at the specified angle and does not return to the central position.

Stopping the park assist

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The park assist stops automatically in the following situations:

- If you switch off the system.
- If you intervene in the steering.
- If the speed becomes too high.
- If the time limit is exceeded.
- If an obstacle is detected.
- If the ESC intervenes.

Take full control of the vehicle and stop the park assist manually, or

- In some situations you can resume the parking manoeuvre. Press the **P** button in the centre console.
- To continue unparking with the park assist, switch the engine off/on. Press the **P** button in the centre console.

WARNING

Please note the safety precautions and system limits of the supporting systems, sensors and cameras ⇒ *page 125* to ⇒ *page 128*.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

If the indicator lamp **P**, **P** or **P** lights up, the park assist is unavailable or has been stopped.

A driver message indicating the cause and possible remedy may appear for some of the displays. The weather conditions may not be good enough, or a sensor may be obstructed. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇒ *page 128* and attempt to switch the system on again later.

If a fault persists, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have it rectified.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can use a wide range of telephone functions in your vehicle conveniently via the MMI.

The following options may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth
- Using two telephones
- Using the Audi phone box



WARNING

- According to health organisations, mobile phones may interfere with the function of pacemakers. A minimum distance of 20 cm between the mobile phone aerial and the pacemaker should therefore be maintained.
- Do not carry a mobile phone in your breast pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
- If you suspect interference, switch the mobile phone off immediately.
- The speech dialogue system* ⇒ *page 27* must not be used in cases of emergency, since the voice changes in stressful situations. This could result in a failed or delayed telephone connection. Always dial emergency numbers manually!
- Switch off your mobile phones in all areas where there may be a risk of explosion. Remember that these areas may not always be adequately marked. Such places are filling stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles and other places where fumes, chemicals (e.g. from leaking propane or fuel vapours in vehicles or buildings) or large quantities of dust particles (e.g. from flour, wood or metal) could accumulate in the air. This warning also applies to all other places where you would normally switch off the drive system.
- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ *page 21, Notes on traffic safety.*



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ *in General information on page 184.*



Note

- The maximum range of the Bluetooth connection is limited to the interior of the vehicle.
- You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Setting up

Connecting a mobile phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to more than one mobile phone.

- Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇒ *page 228* and the mobile phone.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.
- Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- To update the list, press ↺.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

- Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.
- Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

After connecting successfully

The contacts on the mobile phone are automatically loaded into the MMI. This may take several minutes, depending on how many contacts are stored on the mobile phone.

Depending on the mobile phone and the type of connection, you can use the following functions:

Using the handsfree system

Important: Your mobile phone must be connected to the MMI via the Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (HFP).

The handsfree system is available for use. Your phone calls will be made via the aerial of your mobile phone.

Sending and receiving text messages

Refer to ⇒ *page 181*.

Note

- Please note any system queries on your mobile phone or the MMI, e.g. whether the phone should connect automatically in the future. On some mobile phones, you may need to confirm the download of your contacts and allow access to your messages separately.
- You can also search for the MMI system via the Bluetooth device search function on your mobile phone.
- Bluetooth devices only have to be paired once. Any devices that have already been paired with the MMI system are connected automatically when the Bluetooth function is switched on, the devices are within range of the car and the ignition is on. The mobile phone last connected is given priority.
- You can adjust further settings for connected mobile phones in the Connected devices menu ⇒ *page 229*.
- The Bluetooth connection between the system and the mobile phone is automatically terminated when you leave the car. Depending on the mobile phone, telephone calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone so that you can continue talking.

Using two telephones



Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can connect two mobile phones simultaneously via Bluetooth HFP to the MMI system (e.g. your business and personal mobiles). You can then be reached inside the vehicle on both mobile phones.

Applies to mobile phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile: You can send and receive messages with both mobile phones ⇒ *page 181*.

Connecting a second mobile phone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI. The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile phone during the connection procedure. The mobile phone you would like to connect must not be connected actively to any other Bluetooth device.

- ▶ Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on both the MMI system ⇒ *page 228* and the mobile phone.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > , or
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS** > **Connected devices** > **Telephone 1/Telephone 2** > **New connection**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- ▶ Press on the desired mobile phone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▶ To update the list, press .

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.


- ▶ Confirm the PIN on your mobile phone.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.
- ▶ Please note any system queries on the MMI and your mobile phone.

After connecting successfully


Refer to ⇒ *page 174*, *After connecting successfully*.

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI. ►

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > .

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *General information* on page 184.

Disconnecting a mobile phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Use the Connected devices menu to disconnect a connected Bluetooth device ⇒ page 229.

Using the Audi phone box

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

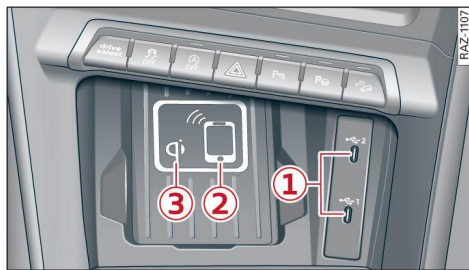


Fig. 131 Front centre console: Audi phone box with connections

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, you can use the following functions with the Audi phone box:

- Making and receiving calls using the vehicle's external aerial
- Charging your mobile phone via USB input
- Wireless mobile phone charging
- Reminder signal

Restrictions

In some situations, the functions of the Audi phone box may be restricted or temporarily unavailable. This can happen in the following cases, for instance:

- More than one mobile phone is placed in the Audi phone box.

- The mobile phone is in a bag or a protective case.
- There are objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile phone.
- The mobile phone is not in the centre of the Audi phone box.

WARNING


- Loose objects can be flung around in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of accident! Stow objects away safely while the vehicle is moving.
- Do not let visual/acoustic signals from a mobile device distract your attention from the road – risk of accident! Operate the mobile device via the MMI only.

Making and receiving calls using the external aerial

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

With the Audi phone box, you can use the vehicle's external aerial to make calls. Using the external aerial reduces radiation in the vehicle and also ensures better reception quality.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- To make a phone call on your mobile phone via the vehicle's external aerial, place the mobile phone on the phone symbol  ⇒ page 175, Fig. 131 in the centre of the Audi phone box with the display facing upwards.

Charging the mobile phone via the USB input

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged in the Audi phone box using special USB adapters ⇒ page 216.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- To charge your mobile phone via USB, connect it to the USB input  ⇒ page 175, Fig. 131.

Note

- USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers.



- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has tested these products for suitability, reliability and safety.

Charging a mobile phone wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

Your mobile phone can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.

Important: The ignition must be switched on and your mobile phone must be Qi compatible.

- Make sure that the wireless charging function is switched on:
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Reminder signal and mobile phone charging**.
- Activate the **Wireless mobile phone charging** function.
- To charge your mobile phone wirelessly, place it on the  symbol  ⇒ *page 175, Fig. 131* in the centre of the Audi phone box with the display facing upwards.



WARNING

- The mobile phone may become hot while charging wirelessly. Consider the temperature of your mobile phone when removing it. Take the mobile phone out of the Audi phone box carefully.
- An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Always keep a minimum of 6 cm away from the charging plate of the Audi phone box. The limits for long-term exposure according to ICNIRP 1998 are kept to at this distance. Side effects such as irritation to sensory organs or functional issues with active implants (e.g. pacemakers, infusion pumps, neurostimulators) or passive implants (e.g. artificial joints) are therefore very unlikely. If you have implants, please consult a doctor if you have any questions. Alternatively, you can switch the Audi phone box's wireless charging function on/off. You will still be able to charge your mobile phone using a cable.



Note

- The maximum charging capacity is 5 W.
- The charging time and temperature vary depending on the mobile phone being used.

Reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box/Audi phone box light

When the reminder signal function is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile phone is still in the Audi phone box when you are leaving the vehicle.

Important: A Qi compatible mobile phone must be in the Audi phone box, or your mobile phone must be connected to the USB port with charging function via a USB adapter with the smartphone interface active, or your iPhone must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth and be charging with a USB adapter via the USB port with charging function.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Reminder signal and mobile phone charging**.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the following settings are available:

- **Sound**
- **Off**

Spoken

This setting is activated at the factory.

Notes on mobile phone: Reminder, charge level

If this function is switched on, notifications on the charging status of your mobile phone will be displayed. You will also be reminded not to forget your mobile phone when you leave the vehicle.

Using the telephone

Accessing telephone functions

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

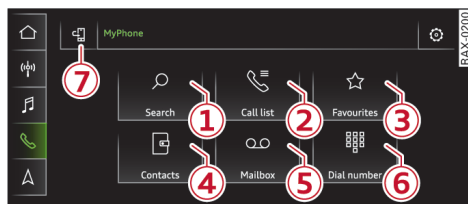


Fig. 132 Centre display: Selection menu

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE**.

Possible telephone functions:

- | | |
|-----------------|-----|
| ① Search | |
| ② Call list | 177 |
| ③ Favourites | 177 |
| ④ Contacts | 178 |
| ⑤ Mailbox | 178 |
| ⑥ Dial number | 179 |
| ⑦ Switch phones | 180 |

Managing the call list

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 133 Centre display: Call list

Calling up the call list via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Call list**.

Calling up the call list via the multi-function steering wheel

- On the instrument cluster, select the telephone tab > button > **Call list**.

Possible symbols in the call list:

- | | |
|---|-----|
| ① Missed calls | |
| ② Numbers dialled | |
| ③ Received calls | |
| ④ Edit telephone numbers | |
| ⑤ Display business card | 178 |
| ⑥ Number of interactions with a contact | |

If there has been more than one interaction with a contact or a number, the most recent action is displayed in the form of an arrow ①, ② or ③.

Call list options

Press and hold a contact or phone number from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

- **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 177*.
- **Send text message** ⇨ *page 181*
- **Send e-mail** ⇨ *page 182*

Edit number

You can edit a phone number before making a call.

Show history

Important: You must have had more than one interaction with a contact.

All interactions with a contact/number will be displayed.

Managing favourites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can store contacts for all connected mobile phones in the favourites list for quick access.


Calling up favourites

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Favourites**.

Storing favourites

- Press ⇨ *page 178* in the business card, or
- Press **Store as favourite** ⇨ *page 177* in the options menu.

Deleting favourites

- ▶ Press **★** ⇒ *page 178* in the business card, or
- ▶ Select: **Favourites** >  > *one or more favourites* or **Select all** > **Delete** > **(Done)**.



Note

The favourites can only be edited on the MMI.

Managing directories

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can manage up to four directories on the MMI.

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.


Calling up the directory

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Contacts**.

The contacts will be displayed. You can change the sort order ⇒ *page 181*, **Sort order**.

Deleting imported contacts

Important: You must have imported a contact ⇒ *page 181*.

- ▶ Select: **Contacts** >  > *one or more contacts* > **Delete** > **(Done)**. The imported contacts will be deleted.

Directory options

- ▶ Press and hold a contact from the directory until the **Options** menu appears.

Depending on your vehicle equipment and your mobile phone, the following options may be available:

- **Store as favourite** ⇒ *page 177*.
- **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇒ *page 181*.
- **Send text message** ⇒ *page 181*
- **Send e-mail** ⇒ *page 182*



Note



- Please pay attention to any synchronisation requests on your mobile phone when downloading contacts.

- In certain cases, contacts from a mobile phone may not be transmitted in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with certain initial letters may not be displayed on the MMI system.
- Please note that only contacts from the mobile phone with an active connection are displayed.
- The contacts in the local MMI memory are visible at all times and are not protected against access by other users.
- When you switch the ignition on again after switching it off and leaving the car, the MMI system will update the mobile phone's directory if the phone is within range and Bluetooth is activated both on the phone and on the MMI system.
- You can only delete the contacts in the local MMI memory.


Calling up a business card

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The business card shows you a contact's details.

- ▶ To open the business card, press on a contact in the directory, or
- ▶ In the call list, press   ⇒ *page 177*, *Fig. 133*.

Possible options in the business card:

- ▶ **To make a call**: Press on a phone number.
- ▶ **To store a favourite**: Press **☆**.
- ▶ **To delete a favourite**: Press **★**.
- ▶ **To send a text message**: Press .
- ▶ **To start navigation**: Press on an address.
- ▶ **To send an e-mail**: Press on an e-mail address.
- ▶ **Send contact**: You can select **Text message** or **E-mail** ⇒ *page 181*.

Listening to voicemail messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Calling up the mailbox

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE** > **Mailbox**.

Entering the mailbox number

Important: No mailbox number must have been stored yet.



- Enter the desired number.
- Press **OK**.

Selecting the mailbox number

Important: A mailbox number must already have been stored.

- Press **Mailbox**. The call will be started immediately.



Note

This service must be set up and activated by your mobile network service provider.

Dialling a number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, you may be able to dial a number in the following ways:

- Entering text via the MMI ⇒ *page 25*.
- Using the voice control function ⇒ *page 27*.

Call options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- To answer/end a call, press the button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Depending on your mobile phone, the following options may be available for an incoming call on the MMI:

- **Answer**
- **Ignore**
- **Message**

The Bluetooth connection is severed if you leave the vehicle during a phone call. Depending on the mobile phone, active calls may be transferred automatically from the MMI to your mobile phone.



Note

Media playback or the radio is muted automatically during a call.

During a telephone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

The following options may be available during a call depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

- **End call**
- **Mute**

Sending a tone sequence

Press **Numbers**. You can enter DTMF tones ("touch-tones"), which are then sent to the person you are speaking to.

Hold

To place the current call on hold. Press **Resume** to take the call again.

Answering an incoming call

Depending on your mobile network service provider, one of the following options may be available:

- **Answer**: The current call will be placed on hold. You will then receive the incoming call.
- **Replace**: The current call will be replaced by the incoming call.

Declining an incoming call

If you select **Ignore**, the incoming call will be declined.

Conference

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

Up to five callers and one caller on hold can take part in a conference (depending on the mobile network service provider).

Switching between calls

Important: There must be two callers on the line.

You can switch between two phone calls.

Further call options

Press **More**.

The following options may be available depending on your mobile phone and the type of connection:

Transfer call to mobile phone

To transfer the current call to your mobile phone/Bluetooth headset*.

Retrieve call

To transfer the current call from your mobile phone back to the MMI.

Add call

You can start a new call. The current call will be placed on hold.

Remove conference participants

If a conference is in progress, you can remove participants individually.

Microph. input level

You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

Note

The option Call waiting must be activated on your mobile phone for you to be made aware of incoming calls during a conversation.

Dialling the emergency number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE > Dial number > the emergency number for the specific country (e.g. 112) > Dial**.

WARNING

- Since your telephone operates via radio waves, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely solely on your telephone when vital communication is required (e.g. in a medical emergency).
- Always follow the directions of the emergency operators when making an emergency call and do not end the call before you are requested to do so.

Settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE > ⚙️**.

The following settings are available, depending on your mobile phone:

- **Ignore with text message***
- **Edit mailbox number**

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch phones: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

Ring tone and volume settings

- **Ring tone and message volume:** You can adjust the volume by moving the slider.
- **Ring tone:** Select a ring tone from the list.
- **Microphone input level:** You can adjust the microphone input level by moving the slider.

Serial number (IMEI) of data module

Applies to: vehicles with data module

The serial number (IMEI) will be displayed.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **TELEPHONE > Contacts > ⚙️**.

Switching between two mobile phones

Important: Telephone 1 and telephone 2 must be connected to the MMI.

Switch phones: The device name of the available mobile phone will be displayed. Press the button to switch the phone.

The directory of the selected telephone will be displayed. ►

Hide greyed out contacts

If this function is switched on, contacts for which no number has been stored are hidden.

Sort order

You can sort contacts by **surname** or **first name**.

Download contacts

Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI.

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can download the contacts from your mobile phone manually. Depending on the mobile phone you are using, the Bluetooth connection may have to be disconnected and re-established before you can update the contacts.

Import/export contacts

Important: A USB mass storage device must be connected to the USB port with charging function
⇒ *page 216*.

You can import or export contacts in the vCard format (.vcf) into or from the MMI.

- **To import contacts from a storage device:** Important: The USB mass storage device must contain contacts in vCard format. These must not be stored in subfolders. Select: **Import contacts > Search for import data > USB device 1/USB device 2 > desired contacts** or **Select all > Start import**.
- **To export contacts to a storage device:** Important: You must already have imported a contact. Select: **Export contacts > Find export medium > USB device 1/USB device 2 > desired contacts** or **Select all > Start export**.

Note

- The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the MMI system.
- There should be no files or directories on the storage medium other than the contacts you wish to import.
- It is not possible to export contacts which have been downloaded from a mobile phone.


- Apple devices or MTP devices (e.g. smartphones) are not recognised as USB storage devices.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

- **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **MESSAGES >  > Text message (telephone 1)/Text message (telephone 2)**.

The following functions are available:

- **New text message***
- **Inbox**
- **Sent**
- **Outbox***
- **Drafts***
- **Deleted**

User-defined*

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

Message options

Press on a text message.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

- **Read**
- **Reply**
- **Forward**
- **More**

To switch between messages, press < or >.


Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

- **Call**
- **Forward**
- **Navigate to**
- **Extract numbers**
- **Resend**

Settings

Press .

Notification for new text messages

When a new text message is received, an envelope symbol  is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.


Note

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

E-mail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone and e-mail

Important: A mobile phone with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) must be connected to the MMI.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MESSAGES** >  > **E-mail (telephone 1)/E-mail (telephone 2)**.

The following functions are available:

- New e-mail
- Inbox
- Sent
- Outbox
- Drafts*
- Deleted*

User-defined*

User-defined folders can be taken from your mobile phone.

Message options

Press on an e-mail.

The following options may be available depending on your country:

- Read

- Reply
- Reply to all
- Forward
- More

To switch between messages, press < or >.


Press **More**. Depending on your mobile phone and the selected mailbox, the following options may be available:

- Call
- Forward
- Extract e-mails
- Navigate to
- Extract numbers
- Display receiver
- Resend


Settings

Press .

Notification for new e-mails

When a new e-mail is received, an envelope symbol  is displayed in the status bar of the MMI if this function is activated.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ➔  in *General information on page 184*.

Note

Depending on your mobile phone, it is possible that only newly received messages are shown.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment. ►

Subject	Advice
Connecting the mobile phone to the MMI fails.	Check if the requirements for connecting a mobile phone have been met ⇒ <i>page 173</i> , or Check if you have accidentally declined the PIN for setting up the connection on your mobile phone. If necessary, repeat the connection procedure ⇒ <i>page 173</i> .
After the mobile phone was connected not all/none of the contacts were loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your mobile phone. Pay attention to any requests on your mobile phone when connecting via Bluetooth.
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available.	The telephone functions will depend on the mobile network service provider and the mobile phone used.
Some telephone functions are greyed out/not available, even though the mobile phone supports them.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your mobile phone are restricted or if individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case if the mobile phone belongs to a business organisation.
The MESSAGES menu is not available.	Check whether your mobile phone has the option Show messages and make sure that this option is activated.
Your mobile phone cannot be charged wirelessly or the charging procedure is interrupted.	Check that the Audi phone box's wireless charging function is switched on. Check that your mobile phone is Qi compatible. Check that your mobile phone is in the correct position in the Audi phone box ⇒ <i>page 175</i> and that there are no other objects in the Audi phone box.

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

- Audi connect infotainment
- Audi connect vehicle control services

WARNING

- Only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot when the traffic conditions allow you to do so safely – risk of accident! Please see ⇒ *page 21, Notes on traffic safety.*
- Mobile devices, tablet and laptop computers and devices of a similar weight can only be operated safely when the vehicle is stationary. Like any loose object, they can be catapulted through the vehicle in an accident and cause serious injuries. Always make sure that such devices are securely stowed while you are driving. Please also observe the safety warnings in the chapter on ⇒ *page 69.*

CAUTION

- Applies when using the embedded SIM card: With a small number of exceptions, the data connection costs for Audi connect infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect infotainment during the licence period. Please note that costs can be incurred if certain services are used. This applies, for example, to online radio/podcasts, additional online data or internet connections and services which use the Wi-Fi hotspot. These internet connections and services require additional paid data plans, depending on the country you are in ⇒ *page 188.* For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.
- Applies when using your own mobile phone's SIM card via Wi-Fi: If you use your own SIM card, all data connections for all Audi connect infotainment services will use it. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if

you are using the system abroad. We strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For more information, contact your service provider.

- In certain cases, the data connection for the Wi-Fi hotspot is established via the SIM card of your Wi-Fi device as a substitute. This depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. Depending on your network provider, you may be charged for this service, especially if you are using the system abroad. We strongly recommend that you use an unlimited data plan. For further information, contact your mobile network service provider or refer to the operating instructions for your Wi-Fi device.
- Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used, for example, to connect to the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.

Note

- The availability of the services depends on the licence period.
- Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
- The latest mobile phone standards are not available for use in all countries. For further information, please consult an Audi dealer or your mobile network service provider.
- The availability, scope, provider and price of the services offered can vary, as can the way in which the services are displayed on the screen. These variations depend on your country, model, model year, device and mobile phone contract.
- All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.

– In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Audi connect infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi connect infotainment services allow online information to be directly transmitted into the vehicle.

An internet connection is required in order to use Audi connect infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, an internet connection can be established via the embedded SIM card (eSIM) or via your own mobile phone's SIM card using Wi-Fi.



WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ in *General information on page 184*.



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ in *General information on page 184*.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and embedded SIM card

The data connection for the Audi connect infotainment services is established via an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) fitted in the vehicle. You can use Audi connect infotainment services right away.



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ in *General information on page 184*.

Using your own mobile phone's SIM card via Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and Wi-Fi

Depending on the country and your vehicle's equipment, it may be possible for the MMI to use

your mobile phone's SIM card to establish an internet connection via Wi-Fi ⇨ *page 185*.



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ in *General information on page 184*.

Establishing a Wi-Fi connection

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

The vehicle can connect to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ If necessary, activate the "Wi-Fi hotspot (tethering)" or "personal hotspot" function on your mobile phone.
- ▶ **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi**.
- ▶ Switch the Wi-Fi function on.
- ▶ Press on the desired Wi-Fi hotspot in the list of available networks.
- ▶ Follow the instructions given by the system.

The vehicle is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.



WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨ in *General information on page 184*.



CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨ in *General information on page 184*.

Using the Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot


You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the internet ⇨ *page 185*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's internet connection.

Important: The ignition must be switched on. In some countries a data plan must be available ⇨ *page 188*.


- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi hotspot**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Wi-Fi hotspot**. The access codes for the Wi-Fi hotspot will be displayed.
- Switch your mobile device's Wi-Fi function on and connect it to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot using the access data displayed.
- Please note any system queries on your Wi-Fi device.

Your device should now have been successfully connected to the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.

Audi connect infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Before you use certain Audi connect infotainment services for the first time, it is necessary to configure them via your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com.

Note


- A myAudi user must be logged in to use some of the Audi connect infotainment services.
- Some Audi connect infotainment services must be activated via my.audi.com.
- Depending on the country, you can use an Audi app or my.audi.com.
- Detailed information on configuration can be found online at my.audi.com.

Services


Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

You can use available services directly on the MMI. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.

Audi connect vehicle control services

Services


Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

You can use the Audi connect vehicle control services, for example, to view data on your vehicle or to control vehicle functions remotely.

You can view and use the services available for your vehicle at my.audi.com or in the myAudi app.

Information on the services and the corresponding app were correct at the time of publication. The scope of the services depends on the country and the vehicle equipment. There may be changes during the service life of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.
- Driver messages, notifications and warning and indicator lamps that are lit up in the vehicle take precedent over the information from Audi connect services. Do not let the information from Audi connect services tempt you into taking any risks when driving. This could lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

Note

- Whether you are able to call up certain types of data or operate functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle's battery. These functions are therefore only available to a limited extent after the ignition has been switched off.
- The internet connection for the Audi connect vehicle control services is established via an eSIM card. The costs for this are included in the price of the Audi connect vehicle control services. The mobile network, for example, must be available to use the services.

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect vehicle control services

Create a myAudi account by registering in the myAudi app or at my.audi.com, depending on the country you are in.

- Specify the key user ⇒ *page 32*.
- Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access data.

Note

Certain services require you to enter the 4-digit PIN which you specified on registration.

Settings

Wi-Fi

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi

Important: The ignition must be switched on.


- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:


Wi-Fi

When this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi is active and the MMI can be connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.

CAUTION

Please always observe the information ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.

Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings**.

The following functions may be available depending on your country and the vehicle's equipment:

Wi-Fi hotspot

If this function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is activated and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Wi-Fi hotspot settings


The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following values as required:


- **Access point (SSID):** Name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- **Password:** A random initial password is set on the MMI at the factory. Audi recommends you to change the initial password. Follow general guidelines on password security and ensure your password is secure. Follow the instructions given by the system.


Allow data connection via Wi-Fi


When this function is activated, mobile devices can use the internet connection on the Wi-Fi hotspot. In some countries, a data plan is required for this.

WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.

 **CAUTION**


Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184.*

 **Note**

The name of the *Wi-Fi hotspot* and the *Blue-tooth name* are automatically matched if changes are made.

Data plans¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Data plans must be purchased for certain services ⇨  in *General information on page 184.*


You can purchase data plans via my.audi.com.


Troubleshooting


Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment


Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle's equipment.


Subject	Advice
Audi connect infotainment services: Some Audi connect infotainment services are greyed out/not available.	Before you first use some Audi connect infotainment services, it is necessary to activate/configure them via your personal myAudi account. Detailed information can be found online at my.audi.com .
Wi-Fi hotspot: No Wi-Fi connection is possible.	Check whether Wi-Fi hotspot is activated on the MMI ⇨ <i>page 187</i> . Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.
Wi-Fi hotspot: Interference on Wi-Fi hotspot.	Remove any metal objects from the storage compartment at the end of the rear centre console.

 **WARNING**

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184.*

 **CAUTION**

Please always observe the information ⇨  in *General information on page 184.*

 **Note**

- Depending on the country, you can use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
- When selling your vehicle, you should delete the vehicle in the network provider's customer portal to prevent any further purchases at your expense.

¹⁾ Not available in all markets.

Emergency call

Overview

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

Description of the in-vehicle emergency call system.

An emergency call is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the relevant emergency switchboards using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, the following functions are available:

The **emergency call** function allows you to organise assistance as quickly as possible in dangerous situations. Use this function whenever you need help ⇒ *page 189*.

- Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call). This eCall system uses third-party emergency switchboards, which may include public emergency switchboards.
- Statutory European emergency call (EU eCall)¹⁾. This eCall system is based on the 112 SOS number and uses public emergency switchboards.

The **online roadside assistance call** function allows you to request assistance in the event of a breakdown or a minor accident ⇒ *page 191*.



WARNING

- In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the area covered by your mobile network service provider, some functions/services may not be able to send/receive data and may be restricted or unavailable.
- Applies to EU eCall: Not all public emergency switchboards can receive data transmitted by the vehicle.
- When an emergency call is active, all sources of noise (i.e. warning signals such as

those given by the parking aid) may be muted.

Emergency call

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

The services are provided via a SIM card installed in the vehicle. Provision of these services requires that the mobile network of the SIM card be functioning and ready for use.

The EU eCall emergency call is only available within the mobile network coverage that is required by law.

The TPS emergency call is only available within the mobile network area covered by the network provider selected by Audi.



Note

- The emergency call function cannot be deactivated via the settings on the infotainment system.
- EU eCall is a public service of general interest and is provided free of charge.
- The availability of the TPS emergency call is time-limited.
- The cost of TPS voice calls and data connections is included in the price of the services.

Functions

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

In the event of a serious accident, an eCall system is automatically activated via onboard sensors ⇒ *page 190, Automatic emergency call*. If the vehicle is equipped with the EU eCall and TPS emergency call system, but the TPS emergency call is not available, the EU eCall is triggered automatically.

The EU eCall can also be triggered manually if needed. For instructions on how to activate the



¹⁾ "EU eCall" in the following description refers also to emergency call systems required by law in non-EU countries, where the technical implementation corresponds to EU eCall.

system manually, please refer to ⇒ *page 190, Manual emergency call*.

The TPS emergency call can be placed manually or automatically ⇒ *page 190*.

When a TPS emergency call is placed automatically, information required to alert the emergency services may also be transferred to a public switchboard or police station to enable assistance to be provided as quickly as possible.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

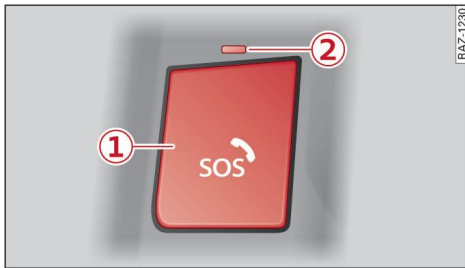


Fig. 134 Front headliner: Cover for emergency call button

Manual emergency call

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ Lightly press the cover ① to open it.
- ▶ Press the emergency call button until the LED ② flashes. The emergency call will be placed.
- ▶ If you press the emergency call button accidentally, press it again immediately until the LED lights up permanently. The emergency call will be cancelled.

Automatic emergency call

In some circumstances, the vehicle's electronics will make an emergency call automatically if, for example, an airbag has been triggered. The LED in the emergency call button ② will flash. The emergency call will be placed. The emergency call cannot be cancelled.

Meaning of LEDs

- **Green** – The emergency call function is available.

- **Red** – A fault has occurred in the emergency call function. Please contact a qualified workshop. Please note the driver messages regarding the availability of the emergency call function ⇒ *page 190*.
- **Off** – The emergency call function is temporarily unavailable, e.g. if there is no network.

Warnings

In the event of a critical emergency call system failure, the vehicle occupants receive a warning; refer to ⇒ *page 190, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇒ *page 190, Driver messages*.

Applies to EU eCall: In the event of a critical system failure which would cause the onboard emergency call system to be out of action, the vehicle occupants receive the following warning ⇒ *page 190, Meaning of LEDs* and ⇒ *page 190, Driver messages*.

Note

If the emergency call is cut off due to a poor connection, the system will re-connect automatically.

Driver messages

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function

SOS **Emergency call function: fault. Function partially available. Please contact workshop**

You can make an emergency call if the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, but not all of the functions may be available. For example, you may not be able to make a voice call to the emergency call centre. However, it may be possible for the system to transfer data. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

SOS **Emergency call function: fault. Function unavailable. Please contact workshop**

If the indicator lamp lights up and the message appears, you cannot make an emergency call. Drive to a qualified workshop as soon as possible and have the fault rectified.

Online roadside assistance call

Description

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

A call to the online roadside assistance service¹⁾ is a combination of a voice call and a data transfer. Important information such as details about the vehicle and its position are transferred to the Audi call centre using the vehicle's data transfer function.

Making an online roadside assistance call

Applies to: vehicles with online roadside assistance call

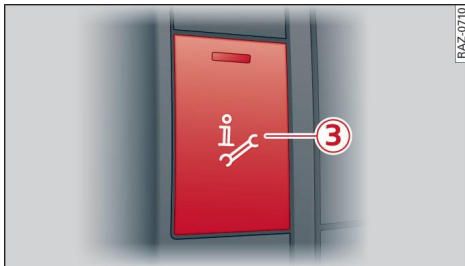


Fig. 135 Front headliner: Online roadside assistance call button

Making an online roadside assistance call

- Press button ③. The red LED in the button will light up. The online roadside assistance call will be placed.
- If you press button ③ accidentally, simply press it again.

Audi incident assistance

The vehicle electronics detect if a minor accident has occurred. You can then choose between an online roadside assistance call or an emergency call.

Note

If the roadside assistance call is interrupted due to a poor connection, the call must be started again.

Information on data processing

EU eCall

Applies to: vehicles with emergency call function (EU eCall)

Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and Council and, in particular, must be necessary in order to protect the vital interests of the person affected as set out in Article 6 Paragraph 1 Sub-paragraph d of Regulation (EU) 2016/679.

The processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling eCall emergency calls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Data types and their recipients

The EU eCall system may only collect and process the following data: vehicle identification number, vehicle type (passenger car or light goods vehicle), type of vehicle power (petrol/diesel/CNG/electric/hydrogen), the last three locations of the vehicle and direction of travel, log file of automatic system activation and its time stamp. Further data: version and ID of log file, number of vehicle occupants, location plausibility.

The recipients of data processed in association with the EU eCall are the relevant Public Safety Answering Points (PSAP) designated by the corresponding national authorities, under whose sovereignty they are situated, to answer and process eCalls made to the standard European SOS number 112.

Form of data processing

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data stored in the system memory are not accessible outside the system before an emergency call is placed. ►

¹⁾ The availability of the services offered depends on your country and is time-limited.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

The EU eCall system is designed to ensure that the data are automatically and continuously erased from the internal system memory.

The vehicle location data are continuously overwritten in the internal system memory to ensure that not more than three current locations, which are required for normal system operation, are available.

The activity log of the EU eCall system is stored only for as long as is necessary to fulfil the purpose of handling the eCall emergency call and, in any case, not more than 13 hours after the time at which the eCall emergency call was placed.

Modalities for exercising data subject's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Regulation (EU) 2016/679. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Regulation, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Contact address for queries about access rights:

AUDI AG

DSGVO-Anfrage
Auto-Union-Straße 1
85057 Ingolstadt
GERMANY

Information on third-party services and other services with added benefit

TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance

Applies to: vehicles with EU eCall in conjunction with Audi connect emergency call (TPS emergency call) or online roadside assistance

For a description, please refer to ⇒ *page 189* for operation, ⇒ *page 189* for functions and ⇒ *page 191* for online roadside assistance.

Any processing of personal data through the TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance systems must comply with the personal data protection rules contained in Regulation (EU) 2016/679 (1) and Directive 2002/58/EC (2).

The fulfilment of the contract for TPS emergency call and online roadside assistance forms the legal basis for the use of the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance and for the processing of data by the system/services.

The TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems may process personal data only by express consent of the data subject (the vehicle keeper).

The TPS emergency call system is designed to ensure that it is not traceable and is not tracked continuously during normal operation.

For information on modalities for data processing through the TPS emergency call and/or online roadside assistance systems, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data, refer to:

– Modalities ⇒ *page 192*

– Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site, which can be reached via www.audi.com/en/privacy-audi-connect.html, or on the MMI by selecting the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.**

Navigation

Calling up the navigation menu

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

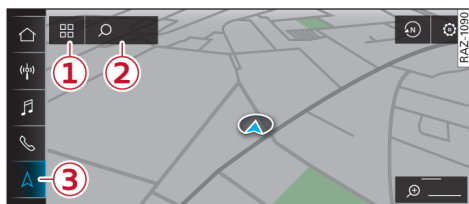


Fig. 136 Route guidance not started

The navigation system guides you directly to your destination, avoiding traffic obstructions and using alternative routes if desired.

Calling up the navigation menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.

The map is displayed after the navigation system is called up for the first time.

Calling up the navigation menu via the multi-function steering wheel

- Select the navigation tab in the instrument cluster.
- To display the navigation menu when route guidance has been started, select the following in the instrument cluster: button > **Map**.

The following functions are available on the MMI:

- ① Select a destination ⇒ *page 195*.
- ② Search for navigation destinations ⇒ *page 194*.
- ③ **To switch between the map and menu:** Press repeatedly until the desired function is shown.

For further information on the map please refer to ⇒ *page 198, How to use the map*.

WARNING

- Driving on the road requires the full attention of the driver. Please always note the information in the chapter ⇒ *page 21, Notes on traffic safety*.

- The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation. Always adhere to the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations. If the recommended route is in contradiction with the locally applicable traffic laws and regulations, these always take precedence – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ in *General information on page 184*.



Note

- Snow or other obstructions on the GPS aerial or trees or large buildings could affect the reception of the satellite signals and make positioning difficult. GPS reception can also be adversely affected by deactivation or a malfunction of several satellites.
- Road names can change; therefore the names stored on the MMI may be different from the actual names in exceptional cases.
- Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.
- Applies to vehicles with Audi connect information: Further services may be available depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment.

myAudi navigation

Applies to: vehicles with myAudi navigation

The MMI's navigation system works seamlessly together with the myAudi app.

Your destinations (favourites, last destinations) are synchronised via your myAudi account. All the important destinations can be displayed in the vehicle and the myAudi app.

So that the destinations are loaded automatically in the vehicle, Audi recommends logging on in the vehicle with a myAudi account ⇒ *page 31*. ►

myAudi navigation functions:

- You can send destinations and tours to the vehicle from the myAudi app ⇨ *page 196*.
- Active route guidance in the myAudi app can be continued on the MMI.
- Depending on the situation, it may be possible to continue an active MMI route guidance procedure in the myAudi app to navigate you to the destination after you leave the vehicle.

Note

- All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
- In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Entering a destination

Searching for navigation destinations


Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Various search options may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

You can use the results from a search engine provider to find a navigation destination with the internet search.

You can use the hybrid search function to enter navigation destination details in any order (e.g. Forest Road 20 London). You can search for special destinations or contacts in the same way to help you navigate to the desired destination.






Calling up the menu

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .

Internet search¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and internet search

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 184, Audi connect*.


- ▶ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field.
- ▶ The search engine provider displays suggestions  to narrow the search.
- ▶ Press on any suitable suggestions until the desired destination is shown in the results list. If necessary, swipe upwards/downwards with one finger until the suggestions  or destinations  appear.
- ▶ Press on the desired destination . Route guidance will be started.
- ▶ Press  to call up the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 196*.

Hybrid search



When the **G** symbol is shown on the MMI, the hybrid search function is switched off.

- ▶ To switch the hybrid search function on, press and hold the coloured **G** symbol.

Important: The hybrid search function must be switched on.

- ▶ Enter one or more search terms in the entry field ⇨ *page 25, Text entry*.
- ▶ Press the desired destination in the results list. Route guidance will be started.
- ▶ Press  to call up the **Details** menu ⇨ *page 196*.



Online points of interest


- ▶ **To find a special destination:** Enter the name of the special destination.
- ▶ Select: *the symbol for a special destination category* (e.g.  > *a special destination*, or
- ▶ To display all categories and search for a special destination, select:  > *a category* (e.g. Restaurant) > *a special destination*.

¹⁾ Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

Changing the search area

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .
- To change the search area, press  repeatedly until the desired search area is selected.

 **Note**

- The terms suggested by the MMI depend on the destinations to which you have recently driven.
- The navigation system always searches for the fastest route. You may be able to have alternative routes displayed ⇒ *page 200*.
- If the destination cannot be found, it may not be stored in the navigation database. Check the spelling of the term you searched for or check the search area ⇒ *page 195*.
- Whether the level of congestion is taken into account when the route is being calculated depends on your traffic avoidance settings ⇒ *page 205*.
- The distances to special destinations are shown as the crow flies from your current location. The actual driving distance between your current position and the special destination is updated automatically. However, the list of special destinations is not sorted again.

Selecting a destination


Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 137 Menu: Selecting a destination

Calling up the menu

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.

- When the map is displayed, press  ①
⇒ *page 193, Fig. 136*.


The following functions are available:

①	Last destinations	195
②	Favourites	196
③	Contacts	196
④	Received destinations and tours	196

Loading the last destination



Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

The destinations and tours you have most recently used can be loaded as the new navigation destination.



As soon as you start route guidance, the destination is automatically stored in your most recent destinations. The destinations you have recently used are indicated by the  symbol.


If you are using myAudi navigation, your recent destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇒ *page 193*.

Calling up the last destination

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Last destinations** > *a destination* > **Start**.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab >  button > **Last destinations** > *a destination*.

Deleting recent destinations

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Last destinations** >  > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > **(Done)**.

 **Note**

The last tour will be deleted automatically from the list of recent destinations if you start route guidance to a new destination after cancelling the tour.

Using a favourite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations and your home/business address in your favourites.

Important: At least one favourite must have already been stored ⇒ *page 200*.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (📍) > **Favourites** > *a destination*.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > (📍) button > **Favourites** > *a destination*.

Selecting a contact as a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can navigate to your contacts.

Important: An address must be available for a contact.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (📍) > **Contacts** > *a contact*.
- Press on an address belonging to the contact.
- Press on a suggested address. The **Details** menu will be displayed.

Note

- If a directory contact is greyed out, an address has not been added for the contact.
- Navigation to geographical coordinates for a contact is not possible.

Loading received destinations and tours


Applies to: vehicles with myAudi navigation

You can search for destinations or tours in the myAudi app and send them to the vehicle.

Important: The MMI and your mobile device must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device.

- Send a destination/a tour to the vehicle from the myAudi app.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > (📍) > **Received destinations and tours**.

- Make sure that you are logged in to the vehicle and the myAudi app with the same myAudi account. The received destinations and tours will be loaded automatically.

- **To navigate to a destination:** Press a destination.
- **To delete destinations:** Select  > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > **(Done)**.

Note

- All services/apps may be changed, activated/deactivated, renamed or extended without further notice.
- In some countries a different app than the myAudi app may be available for your vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Destination details

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

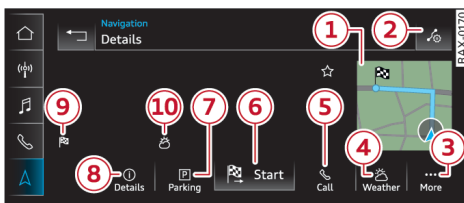


Fig. 138 Details

The functions available depend on the vehicle's equipment and the destination selected.

- ① **Map preview:** To enlarge the map preview, press on the map.
- ② **Route criteria:** Refer to ⇒ *page 205*.
- ③ **More:** Additional functions.
- ④ **Weather:** Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. Also refer to ⇒ *page 186*.
- ⑤ **Call:** Important: A mobile phone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ *page 173*. The call is made to the phone number which is stored for the destination.
- ⑥ **Start:** To start navigating to the destination shown. The map will be displayed ⇒ *page 198*.

- ⑦ **Park:** Press **Park** to search for a car park at the destination. You can use the car park as the destination or stopover.
- ⑧ **Details:** Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*.
- ⑨ **Display showing distance/driving time to destination**
- ⑩ **Weather at destination:** Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*.

Setting a destination from the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

A location on the map can be set as a destination.

Calling up the map

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press **△** to show the map (if necessary).

Setting a convenient map scale

- Select: **⊕/⊖** > *a scale*.

Marking a destination

- Press on a location on the map and hold it until a marking or the address of the selected destination is shown.

Using map content (e.g. special destination) as a destination

Important: Map content must be displayed ⇒ *page 204*.

- Press on a location on the map (e.g. **⏏**).

Setting the destination

- Select: **📍** > **Start**.

Stopovers and tour plan

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can enter further destinations while route guidance is active.

Entering a stopover

Important: The route guidance function must be active.

- Enter a destination ⇒ *page 194*.

Displaying stopovers/tour plan

All destinations are listed in the tour plan.

- On the map legend menu, press **📍** ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.

Editing stopovers

- On the map legend menu, press **📍** ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.
- **To add a stopover:** Select **Add destination** > *a destination* > **Add**.
- **To move a stopover:** Press **✎**. Touch the **◆** symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.
- **To delete a stopover:** Select **✎** > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > **(Done)**.

Stopping route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Important: The route guidance function must be active and the map must be displayed.

- Applies to MMI: Press **📍** ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.
- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab > **📍** button > **Stop route guidance**.

Map

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 139 Active route guidance

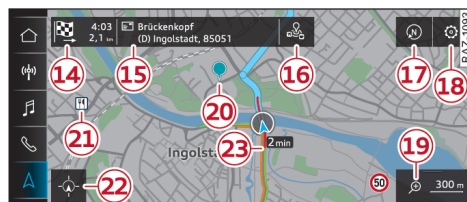





Fig. 140 Marked object on map

Calling up the map





- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press  to show the map (if necessary).

The following list gives an overview of the information displayed on the map. Press on a function (e.g. Alternative routes) to display further options.


- ① Select a destination ⇒ *page 195*
- ② Enter a destination ⇒ *page 194*
- ③ Stop route guidance ⇒ *page 197*
- ④ Current route
- ⑤ Request spoken cue
- ⑥ Alternative routes ⇒ *page 200*
- ⑦ Display active destinations/stopovers/tour plan ⇒ *page 197*. The distance to the next destination in the tour plan is displayed along with the estimated time of arrival.
- ⑧ Online traffic information ⇒ *page 202*
- ⑨ Altitude
- ⑩ Display of the maximum speed limit¹⁾ in towns, on motorways, dual carriageways and other major roads
- ⑪ Current vehicle position
- ⑫ Route information ⇒ *page 205*
- ⑬ Name of the street you are on
- ⑭ Start route guidance for a marked object on the map ⇒ *page 197, Setting a destination from the map*
- ⑮ Display details for the destination ⇒ *page 196*
- ⑯ Search in immediate vicinity ⇒ *page 194*
- ⑰ Set map orientation. Also refer to ⇒ *page 204*.
- ⑱ Settings ⇒ *page 204*
- ⑲ Set map scale. Press on the magnifying glass displayed on the map to activate/deactivate the automatic zoom ⇒ *page 204*. The  symbol appears when the function is activated.
- ⑳ Marked destination ⇒ *page 197, Setting a destination from the map*

- ㉑ Map content (special destinations, favourites). If several different types of map content are located close to each other, their symbols are stacked on the map. To display a list of individual symbols, press on  ⇒ *Fig. 140*. Press on a special destination from the list.
- ㉒ Centre map to current vehicle position
- ㉓ Traffic information and estimated delay on the route
 - **Green**: no obstructions
 - **Orange**: slow-moving traffic
 - **Red**: traffic jams/obstructions

Further possible symbols on the map

Symbol	Description
	Home address ⇒ <i>page 200, Favourites</i>
	Business address ⇒ <i>page 200, Favourites</i>
	Favourites ⇒ <i>page 200</i>
	Shows the current destination

Traffic information

- **Coloured warning symbols**: There is an upcoming traffic obstruction or hazard alert on your route.
- **Greyed out warning symbols**: Traffic obstructions that are not relevant for your route.
- All traffic jams or other obstructions are marked with a coloured warning symbol on the map when route guidance is not active.
- **Warning symbols with arrow**: Traffic obstructions that you have avoided, e.g. .

How to use the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can use the gestures described below to operate the map ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.

Moving the map

- Swipe in the desired direction with one finger. ►

¹⁾ This function is not available in all countries and is only available for vehicles without camera-based traffic sign recognition.

Moving the map quickly

- Swipe in the desired direction with one finger and release the map while doing so.

Zooming in on the map

- Move two fingers apart on the map, or
- Double tap the map with your finger.

Zooming out on the map

- Move two fingers together on the map, or
- Double tap the map with two fingers.

Turning the map

- Turn the map with two fingers.

Tilting the map

- Swipe up/down with two fingers.

Note

Some of these methods may not be available on every touch display or in every menu.

Navigation view when route guidance is started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit

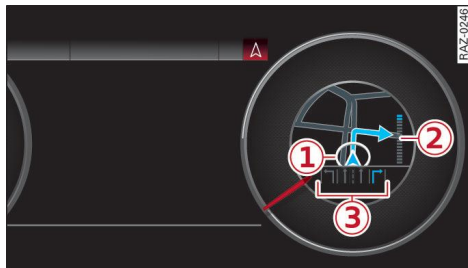


Fig. 141 Standard view in instrument cluster: Turn-off with route guidance started

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇒ *page 194*.

The following information is displayed in the driver information system (if available):

- ① Current vehicle position
- ② A bar graph appears when you approach a turn-off. The fewer bars are displayed, the shorter the distance to the turn-off point. If no turn-off is imminent, the right-hand

speedometer shows the remaining distance to the destination/stopover, the estimated arrival time and a direction arrow for the upcoming manoeuvre. If there is no upcoming manoeuvre, the distance to the next manoeuvre is displayed.

- ③ Lane recommendation

Predictive route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and predictive route guidance

Your MMI system can memorise routes that you frequently follow and suggest them based on your vehicle's current location (e.g. the daily route to your workplace and back).

When this function is activated, the MMI records routes you have driven (even if you do not use the navigation system).

Even if route guidance is not started, your MMI system can check the traffic situation and show possible traffic disruptions along the route you will probably take.

Calling up personal routes

Important: The predictive route guidance function must be switched on ⇒ *page 206*. Route guidance is not active. A notification will be displayed.

- The MMI will suggest up to three routes. Select one of the suggestions. Route guidance will be started.


Optimised routes


A notification is displayed on the MMI if there are any larger traffic disruptions, irrespective of which menu is selected. If the MMI has calculated an optimised route, you can use this.


- Press on the notification.

Your personal routes are no longer recorded as soon as you switch off the predictive route guidance function. Routes which have already been recorded remain stored.

Deleting personal routes

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Predictive route guidance** > **Delete recordings from the last 24 hours** or **Delete all personal routes and destinations**.


Note

If the predictive route guidance function is switched off and you press , the settings for the predictive route guidance function will be displayed ⇒ *page 206*.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

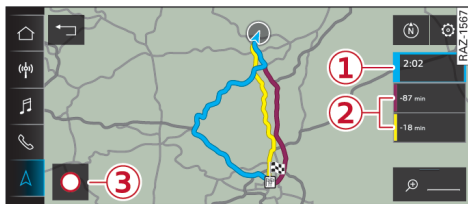



Fig. 142 Alternative routes in the overview map

Calling up alternative routes

Important: The route guidance function must have been started ⇒ *page 194* and the map must be displayed ⇒ *page 198*.

- On the map legend menu, press  ⇒ *page 197*, *Fig. 139*.

① Current route

The distance to the destination and the estimated time of arrival are displayed for the current route.


② Alternative route

The difference in time compared with the currently selected route is displayed.

③ Exclude route

You can exclude an upcoming section of the current route for a specific distance to avoid, for example, an upcoming road or tunnel closure. The navigation system will automatically calculate an alternative route and the length of the excluded section. The route you entered will only be excluded in the current route guidance; if required,

you will need to re-enter the route you wish to avoid. If you exclude a route section, this section will be hatched in red and white on the map.

- **To exclude a route:** Press ③ ⇒ *Fig. 142*.
- **To cancel the route exclusion:** Press .

Displaying an alternative route in the foreground

- Press on ① in the corresponding information window, or
- Press and hold the information window for the corresponding alternative route (e.g. ②) ⇒ *Fig. 142*.

Selecting a route

- Press on the information window for the corresponding route (e.g. ②).


Further functions

Favourites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can call up frequently required destinations and your home/business address in your favourites.

Calling up favourites

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Favourites**.

If you are using myAudi navigation, your favourites will be synchronised with your myAudi account ⇒ *page 193*.

Storing favourites

- Press ☆ in the **Details** menu ⇒ *page 196*, *Fig. 138*.

Storing home/business address

- Press **Home address/Business address**. When you call this menu up for the first time, you will be asked to set the corresponding address.
- Select: **Create now** > *enter a destination* > **OK**.

Editing home/business address

Important: The favourites list must be displayed. Your home address or business address must have already been stored.

- Press **Home address/Business address** until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- Select: **Change address** > *enter a destination* > (**Set as destination**) or (*complete the address*) > **OK**.

Editing favourites

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- **To use a favourite as the destination:** Press a favourite.
- **To delete a favourite:** In the **Details** menu, press ★ ⇒ *page 196, Fig. 138* or select the following: ✎ > *one or more entries* or **Select all** > **Delete** > (**Done**).
- **To move a favourite:** Press ✎. Touch the ◆ symbol and move the entry to the desired position. Press **Done**.



Note

- If you delete the home/business address, only the address is deleted. The entry in the favourites is still displayed.
- When moving favourites, please note that positions 1 and 2 are reserved for the home and business addresses.

On-street parking

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and on-street parking

You can have roadside parking spaces displayed in locations which support this feature.

Important: **Parking** must be activated in the notifications ⇒ *page 24, Notification centre*. The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. Route guidance is active, you are almost at your destination and a notification is displayed, or a point on the map is marked.

- Press on the notification, or
- Press on ⓘ on the map.
- To navigate to a parking space, press on a colour marking on the map.
- Select: ⓘ > **Start**.

Colour markings on the map indicate the probability of finding a space, depending on availability.

Colour	Description
green	high probability
orange	average probability
red	low probability

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and satellite map

You can have the navigation map shown with satellite images.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*.

- **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > ⚙ > **Map settings** > **Satellite map**¹⁾.

For this map display, the system uses data packets received online in the form of satellite pictures and combines these pictures with the road network from the standard map display ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.



Note

- The satellite map¹⁾ is updated at regular intervals when it is called up. This can take a few seconds.
- Depending on the internet connection, the standard map may also be displayed when the satellite map¹⁾ is activated.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can update the map material on your navigation system. The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle. ►

¹⁾ Audi only enables you to access third-party services. We cannot guarantee that these services will be available at all times; this is the responsibility of the third-party service provider.

- Map update via **online map update**
⇒ *page 202*.
- Importing a map update to your MMI via **USB connection** ⇒ *page 202*.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with online map update

With the online map update function you can update the map material of your navigation system in the vehicle.

The MMI uses the vehicle's position to determine regions and uses this information to provide you with updates for these regions.

Starting the update

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: To allow automatic online map updates, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > System maintenance > Automatic online map update**. The MMI will start the map update automatically in the background as soon as new map material is available.

You can check the status of the download process and the installation in the notification centre ⇒ *page 24*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ ① in *General information on page 184*.

Map update via USB connection

Applies to: vehicles with map update via USB connection

You can update the map material of your navigation system using the map update function.

Important: You must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have added your vehicle to the myAudi account.

Downloading the update

- ▶ Download the map update at my.audi.com and save it on a USB stick. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

Installing the update

- ▶ Connect the USB stick to the USB interface with charging function ⇒ *page 216*.
- ▶ Call up the notification in the notification centre ⇒ *page 24* and press on the notification.
- ▶ Press **Next**. The status of the installation will be shown on the display.

Traffic information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

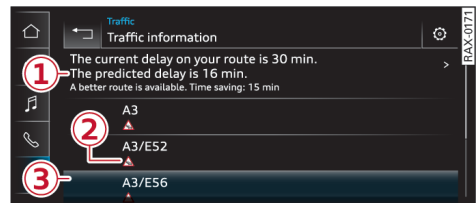


Fig. 143 Overview of traffic information

Calling up traffic information

Important: The map must be displayed
⇒ *page 198*.

- ▶ Press on the traffic jam sign in the map legend menu ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.

Displaying traffic message details

- ▶ Press on the traffic message ②.
- ▶ Press ← or → to display the previous/next traffic message.

The following information can be displayed:

- ① If your MMI has calculated a better route for the current route guidance, a corresponding message is shown. The estimated delay takes into account future changes to the traffic situation on the route. Press on the entry in the list ① and select the better route. Further information can be found on ⇒ *page 200*.

- ② A traffic message is displayed. The distance to the hazard location is calculated based on the current vehicle position.
- ③ Traffic messages are only displayed when route guidance is active. Press on the corresponding line to have details displayed.

Note

- Urgent traffic information, such as a car travelling in the wrong direction on the motorway, is displayed automatically as a notification.
- Traffic information is not available in certain countries.

Traffic avoidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

By receiving traffic information, your MMI calculates a better route (if one is available) and any possible time saving compared to the current route guidance.

The following options are available:

Automatic traffic avoidance

- Set traffic avoidance to **automatic** ⇒ *page 205* and start route guidance.


If a better route is available, this is set automatically. The MMI does not inform you of a better route if the calculated time needed to avoid the traffic jam exceeds the estimated time lost in the traffic jam.

Manual traffic avoidance

- Set traffic avoidance to **manual** ⇒ *page 205* and start route guidance.

The MMI informs you if a better route is available via a notification or a message in the traffic information ① ⇒ *page 202, Fig. 143*. You can then choose which route you would like to use.

To select a better route, you have the following options:

- **Notifications:** Press . The better route will be used for route guidance. Alternatively, press on the notification. Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇒ *page 200, Fig. 142*).

- **Message in the traffic information:** Press on the entry in the list ① ⇒ *page 202, Fig. 143*. Press on the information window for the better route (e.g. ② ⇒ *page 200, Fig. 142*).

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and online traffic information

The MMI system can receive real-time information from the internet regarding traffic congestion, accidents, roadworks and other incidents.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. The MMI traffic information must be switched on ⇒ *page 204*.

Traffic information is displayed on the standard map ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.

Depending on the equipment in your vehicle, online traffic information may also be displayed on the satellite map ⇒ *page 201*.

Note

- Every vehicle with active **online traffic information** contributes to specifying and predicting the traffic situation as precisely as possible. For this purpose, information on the position of your vehicle is encrypted and transmitted anonymously to the traffic data providers at regular intervals. You can switch off the data transmission at any time ⇒ *page 289*.
- The **online traffic information** network is not available in all countries or areas.

Hazard alerts

General information

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

The hazard alerts function allows information on hazards such as accidents, breakdowns, skidding risks or poor visibility to be detected by vehicles ahead of you and forwarded to your vehicle online.

This function is subject to certain general system limits and may be unavailable if the vehicles ahead of you do not detect a hazard, e.g.: ►

- If the ASR or ABS was not triggered on a slippery road ⇒ *page 113*
- If the hazard warning lights of a broken-down vehicle were not switched on
- If the rear fog light was not switched on in poor visibility conditions
- If a vehicle's airbag was not triggered in an accident

WARNING

Always direct your full attention to the road and surroundings, even when you are using the hazard alerts function. It is always the driver's responsibility to assess the traffic situation and take appropriate care.

Note


- Not all vehicles of other road users can transmit hazard information.
- Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content or availability of the services.
- Depending on the vehicle speed, the type of road and the hazard, only the most important information may be displayed.

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

Important: The requirements for Audi connect infotainment must be met ⇒ *page 185*.

Switching hazard alerts on/off on the map

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** >  > **Map settings** > **Traffic** > **Traffic information**.

Switching hazard alerts on/off on the instrument cluster


You can switch the hazard alerts on/off in the **Driver assist** menu ⇒ *page 128*.

Operation


Applies to: vehicles with hazard alerts

Instrument cluster display

A hazard alert is displayed on the instrument cluster for a few seconds when it is received.

- To hide the hazard alerts, press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel.

Displaying hazard alerts on the map

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, press **NAVIGATION**.
- Press  to show the map (if necessary).

Important: **Traffic information** must be switched on ⇒ *page 204*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed on the map ⇒ *page 197, Fig. 139*.

Displaying in the route information

Important: **Traffic information** and **Route information** must be switched on ⇒ *page 204*.

Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be shown in the route information ⇒ *page 205*.

Displaying in the traffic information


Breakdowns, accidents and slippery roads will be displayed in the traffic messages ⇒ *page 202, Fig. 143*.

Settings


Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can adjust the navigation system to suit your individual needs in the instrument cluster and on the MMI display. The settings depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Calling up the settings

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **NAVIGATION** > .

Calling up the settings via the multi-function steering wheel

- On the instrument cluster, select the navigation tab >  button. ►

Please note that a map setting selected with the multi-function steering wheel only applies to the instrument cluster map.

Map settings

Satellite map: Refer to ⇨ *page 201*.

Traffic: You can have current traffic information displayed on the map.

- **No traffic jams/obstructions**
- **Traffic jams/obstructions**
- **Traffic information**

Map colours

- **automatic:** The colour of the map changes to match the current light conditions (e.g. from day to night when driving through tunnels).
- **day/night**

Map orientation

- **2D driving position/2D north:** The map depicts the vehicle's current position. The map is set to face the direction of travel or north.
- **3D driving position:** The current vehicle position is displayed on a three-dimensional map, and the map is set to face the direction of travel.
- **overview:** The entire route from the vehicle position to the final destination or next stopover is displayed on the map. The map is set to face north.
- **Prayer compass:** Refer to ⇨ *page 206*.

Automatic zoom

- **On:** The map scale is adjusted automatically according to the category of the road you are on (motorway, major road, other road) to ensure that you always have the best possible overview of the route ahead. When there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
- **Intersection:** When route guidance is active and there is an upcoming turn-off, the map display will be adjusted automatically so that you have a more detailed view.
- **Off**

MMI map content/Map content: This function controls whether additional information (e.g.

special destinations) is shown on the map on the centre display.

Voice guidance

Voice guidance: With the setting **Traffic**, the MMI will only give spoken cues on traffic jams/obstructions on your route.

Voice guidance during calls

Entertainment fader for navigation system: This option allows the volume of the current audio source to be temporarily reduced while a navigation cue is being played.

Route criteria

You can set which route criteria are permitted for the route calculation and which should be avoided.

Traffic avoidance: Your MMI will receive traffic information which will enable it to calculate a better route ⇨ *page 203, Traffic avoidance*

- **Automatic**
- **Manual**

Motorways

Vignette roads

Toll roads

Ferries

Motorail

Seasonally restricted

- **Automatic:** The MMI determines whether the seasonally restricted road can be included in the route calculation based on the time tables currently stored in the navigation data.
- **Allow:** Roads that are closed seasonally are included in the route calculation.
- **Avoid:** Roads that are closed seasonally (e.g. mountain passes) are excluded from the route calculation.

Route information

When this function is switched on and route guidance is active, route information ⇨ *page 197, Fig. 139* is shown. The next manoeuvre is displayed at the bottom. Special destinations and traffic information are also

displayed. Press on the route information to have a preview of the next manoeuvre displayed on the map. You can switch the following information in the route information on/off:

- **Special destinations along the route**
- **Traffic information along the route**

Use hybrid search as standard

When this option is switched on, the hybrid search is used as the standard function for searching for destinations.

Predictive route guidance


The predictive route guidance function is switched off by default in the factory settings.

When this function is activated, your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI ⇒ *page 199*.

Prayer compass display¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles with prayer compass

Important: The standard map must be displayed ⇒ *page 197*.

- Select:  > **Map settings** > **Map orientation** > **Mecca**. The direction of prayer in relation to the current vehicle position will be displayed.

Presentation mode

In presentation mode, the system “drives” the planned route on the display without moving the vehicle. You can choose your start location manually (**Set start location**) if, for example, you would like to calculate a route starting from a different position than the current position of the vehicle. **To simulate route guidance:** Start route guidance and press Presentation mode.

Note

You can change the volume of a spoken cue while it is being played ⇒ *page 30*.

¹⁾ This function is only available for the markets of the Gulf Cooperation Council (GCC) member states.

Radio

General information

Calling up the radio menu

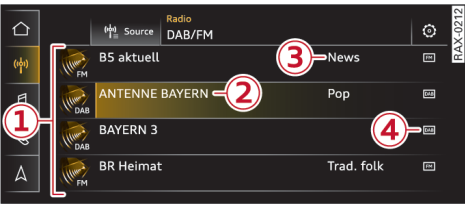


Fig. 144 Centre display: DAB/FM station list

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the radio may support the wavebands FM, AM and DAB (digital radio). You can use the HD Radio receiver* to receive radio stations from the FM/AM wavebands digitally.

Depending on the station list selected, the following information may be displayed:

- 1 **Station list**
Shows the stations that can currently be selected. The station list is updated automatically.
- 2 **Station**
Information such as the station name is displayed if available.
- 3 **Programme type**
The programme type of the station is displayed if available. Depending on the country, it may be necessary to switch on the option to display **Station genres** ⇨ page 212.
- 4 **Waveband**
Shows the current waveband of the station.

In addition to the regular waveband symbols, the following information may be available depending on the equipment in your vehicle:

Symbol	Description
	The station provides information on its alternative internet station in the background. Service following online must be switched on for this ⇨ page 212.
	The station is being received via the internet.
	The system is attempting to receive the station/podcast via the internet.
	The DAB station can no longer be received.

Note

- The DAB* waveband is not available in all countries.
- The DAB* waveband also supports the transmission standard DAB+*, where available.

Controlling the radio via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: To select a waveband, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO > Source > a category**.
- Applies to MMI: To select a station, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO > Source > a category > a station/podcast***.
- To tune to a specific frequency, follow the instructions on ⇨ page 209, *Search function*.

Controlling the radio via the multi-function steering wheel

- Important: Radio mode must have been started.
- On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
 - To switch between radio and media or another source, press the button.
 - To select a station/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.

Note

Applies to multi-function steering wheel: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Radio functions

Overview

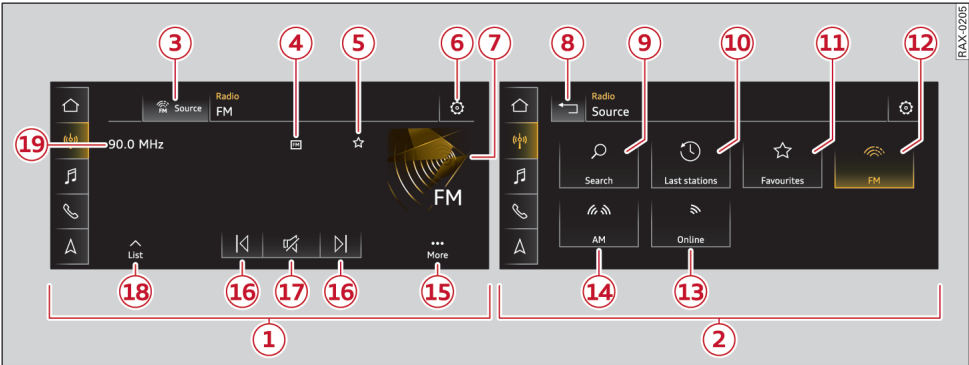


Fig. 145 Centre display: Radio functions, playback view (left-side); sources (right-side)

How to use

- Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source** > *a category* > *a station/podcast**.
- Applies to MMI: To open the sources ②, select the following on the home screen: **RADIO** > **Source**.

Depending on the radio station/podcast* selected and the vehicle's equipment, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description
③	Source	To display sources in the radio menu.
④	Waveband	Shows the current waveband of a station.
⑤	☆/★	Favourites ⇒ <i>page 209</i>
⑥	⚙	Settings ⇒ <i>page 212</i>
⑦	Station logo	Depending on availability, you can switch between various views by pressing the station logo. Swipe to the right/left with one finger to switch between Station logo , Cover art* (album covers) and Slide show* (e.g. studio photos, current photos of artists or album covers, etc.). Also refer to ⇒ <i>page 212</i> , Additional online data .
⑧	↶	To go back one level.
⑨	Search	Refer to ⇒ <i>page 209</i> .
⑩	Last stations	Refer to ⇒ <i>page 209</i> .
⑪	Favourites	Refer to ⇒ <i>page 209</i> .
⑫	FM or DAB/FM	To display stations from the FM waveband or the mixed DAB/FM station list.
⑬	Online	Refer to ⇒ <i>page 210</i> .
⑭	AM	To display stations from the AM waveband.
⑮	More	To call up options on the current station ⇒ <i>page 211</i> .

	Symbol/designation	Description
16	⏮/⏭	To select the previous/next station.
17	🔊/🔇	To mute/unmute the playback.
18	List	To display the station list ⇒ <i>page 207</i> .
19	Information area	If available, the station name and additional information as a supplement to the normal programme may be shown, for example. Also refer to ⇒ <i>page 212, Additional online data</i> .



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ in *General information on page 184*.



Note

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

Search function

You can use the intelligent search function to find station names, frequencies¹⁾, programme types (e.g. **news**), podcasts* or online radio stations*.

Calling up the search function

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO > Source > Search**.

Entering search terms

You can enter several search terms together in any order.

The following information is available:

Symbol	Description
🕒	Result from the Last stations list
☆	Result from the Favourites list
📻	Result from a Station list
e.g. FM	Waveband of the station

Last stations

You can listen to stations from all frequencies that you have previously listened to.

Calling up last stations

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO > Source > Last stations**.

Listening to last stations

- Press on *a station*.

Deleting last stations

- Select: > *one or more stations* or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Favourites

You can store your favourite stations from any waveband in the favourites list.

Calling up favourites via the MMI

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO > Source > Favourites > a favourite**.

Storing favourites

- In the playback view, press ☆ ⇒ *page 208, Fig. 145*.

Important: A list of radio stations must be displayed ⇒ *page 207, Fig. 144*.

- Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.
- Press **Store as favourite**.


Editing favourites

- **To delete a favourite:** Press on ★ in the playback view, or
- In the favourites list, select: > *one or more stations* or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Important: The favourites list must be displayed.

- **To move a favourite:** Press .

¹⁾ This function is not available for DAB* waveband.

- ▶ Touch the  symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
- ▶ Press **Done**.

Radio text

Additional information on the programme (e.g. general text messages, artist, composer, track) is shown in the radio text.

Important: The selected radio station must support the radio text function.

Calling up the radio text

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO** > *a waveband (e.g. FM)* > *a station* > **More** > **Radio text**.

The following functions may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Displaying the most recent radio text entries

- ▶ Swipe down with one finger. Depending on the availability, the most recent radio text entries will be displayed.

Browsing through radio text entries

- ▶ Swipe up/down with one finger.

Calling up RadioText Plus information

If a radio text entry is displayed in colour, the station has provided a telephone number or a navigation destination as RadioText Plus information.

The following options are available:

Setting the destination

- ▶ Select: *a navigation destination marked in colour* > **Set as destination**.

Making a call

- ▶ Select: *a telephone number marked in colour* > **Call**.

Note

A call to a number given in radio text will be started immediately.

Online radio

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

You can use the online radio function to listen to different radio stations/podcasts from the internet.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇒ *page 188*.

Calling up online radio via the MMI

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO** > **Source** > **Online**.

The following functions are available:

Last selected

The list of most recently played stations/podcasts will be displayed.


Top stations

The most popular online radio stations will be displayed.

Filtering the list

- ▶ Select  > (*a category*) > *a station/podcast*.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.

Note

- Depending on the internet connection and network load, online radio playback may be interrupted.
- It may not be possible to receive online radio if your internet connection's speed has been limited.
- Whether online radio can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
- The scope of the online radio services and the way that they are displayed in the

vehicle may differ from the third party service.

- ▶ Please note that some online radio stations may not be available in certain countries.
- ▶ Audi only enables you to access online radio via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

Podcasts

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online radio

Calling up podcasts via the MMI

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO > Source > Online > Podcasts**.

The following functions are available:

Listening to a podcast

- ▶ Select *a podcast > a podcast episode*.

Search

- ▶ Press .

The following functions are available in the podcast playback view:

Displaying podcast episodes

- ▶ Press **List**.

Starting/stopping podcast playback

- ▶ Press **▷/||**.

Previous/next podcast

- ▶ Press **◀/▶**.

Adjusting the play position

- ▶ Move the control slider to the desired position.

Displaying the online radio menu

- ▶ Press .


Switching to radio

- ▶ Press **Source**. The sources in the radio menu will be displayed.

Podcast favourites

You can store podcasts in the podcast favourites.

Important: The playback view for a podcast must be displayed.

- ▶ Press   ⇒ *page 208, Fig. 145*.

Important: A list of podcasts must be displayed.

- ▶ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.
- ▶ Press on **Favourite podcast**.

Listening to a podcast favourite

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

- ▶ Select *a podcast > a podcast episode*.

Browsing podcast favourites

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.



- ▶ Press **<** or **>**.

Displaying all podcast favourites



Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed. At least one podcast favourite must have already been stored.

- ▶ Press **All**.

Editing podcast favourites


- ▶ **To delete a podcast favourite:** Press  in the playback view, or
- ▶ In the podcast favourites, select **All >  > one or more podcasts** or **Select all > Delete > (Done)**.

Important: The podcast favourites must be displayed.

- ▶ **To move a podcast favourite:** Select **All > **.
- ▶ Touch the  symbol and move the entry to the desired position.
- ▶ Press **Done**.

Options and settings

Options

Important: The playback view  must be displayed ⇒ *page 208, Fig. 145*.

- ▶ Press **More** , or


Important: A list of radio stations/podcasts* must be displayed ⇒ *page 207, Fig. 144*.

- ▶ Press and hold an entry from the list until the **Options** menu appears.

The following functions may be available depending on the source selected:

- **Store as favourite** ⇒ *page 209*.
- **Radio text** ⇒ *page 210*.
- **Favourite podcast** ⇒ *page 211*, **Podcast favourites**.

Settings

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **RA-DIO** > .

The following settings may be available depending on the country and on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

HD Radio FM/HD Radio AM

You can switch the reception of HD Radio on or off.

Traffic announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive traffic announcements from different wavebands. If DAB traffic announcements are not available from the station currently set, they will be received from the FM waveband.

DAB announcements

When this function is switched on, you can receive announcements such as news or weather information.

Station genres

You can switch the programme type display on/off (e.g. **News**).

Disaster warning

When this function is activated, alarm announcements are shown in the notification centre ⇒ *page 24*.

Service following between related DAB stations

When this function is switched on, the tuner attempts to find an alternative reception option when the reception quality becomes weaker.



When the function is switched off, the system will not do this. The current station will be maintained, and in some cases may no longer be received.



Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇒ *page 188*.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded, if available.

Service following online

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇒ *page 188*. A station must be providing information on its alternative internet station in the background and must be marked with the symbol  or .


The radio tuner can establish a data connection and switch to an alternative station on the internet (if available) if there is a loss of reception in the FM or DAB waveband. You may be able to receive your local radio stations in all the regions of your country via the internet. This may lead to additional costs ⇒ . The  symbol denotes a station which is currently being received via the internet.


- **Automatic/Off**: Activates/deactivates the function to switch automatically to an alternative station on the internet.
- **With request**: Manual confirmation is required in order to switch to an alternative station on the internet.


Preferred online radio bit rate

Depending on the radio station selected, you can set the bit rate for online radio ⇒ *page 210* and for **Service following online**.

To achieve the best possible playback sound quality, press **High**. To reduce data consumption, press **Low**.

 **CAUTION**

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.

 **Note**

– If the function ⇨ *page 212*, **Traffic announcements** or ⇨ *page 212*, **DAB an-**

nouncements is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the MMI control dial ⇨ *page 30, Fig. 20*.

- There may be delays when the system is switching between regular wavebands and online radio automatically.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle’s equipment.

Subject	Advice
A station is no longer listed in the station list.	Store the station as a favourite in advance and call it up via the favourites list ⇨ <i>page 209</i> .
Online radio: No online radio playback.	Check that a data plan has been purchased for the country in question and that it is available ⇨ <i>page 188</i> .

Media


General information

Various media sources and various options for connecting devices may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle. For example, you can play media files from a USB stick or connect mobile devices to the USB port with charging function and operate them via the MMI.

Media and format limitations: The MMI system (including the connection for the USB mass storage device) has been tested for use with many of the products and media currently available on the market. However, there may be some devices/media and media files that are not supported or cannot be played, or the functionality may be limited under certain circumstances.

Restricted performance: If you experience restricted performance, reset the MMI to the factory settings ⇒ *page 229*.

Digital rights management: Please note that copyright law applies to media files.


DRM-protected files will not be played; these files are marked with the symbol .

Data storage: Never store important data on mobile devices. Audi shall not accept any liability whatsoever for the loss of files and media.

Loading time: The more files/folders/playlists are stored on a device, the longer it will take to load the files. If you want to reduce the time it takes to load the media files, use a storage medium which contains only media files, and create subfolders (e.g. for an artist or album).

Metadata: Metadata stored on audio files (e.g. artists, tracks, album covers) will be displayed automatically when the files are played. If this information is not stored on the relevant medium, the MMI system will use the database of metadata from Gracenote stored locally or online ⇒ *page 221*, **Additional online data**. Nevertheless, some additional information may still not be displayed in some cases.

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.


Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

You can use the Bluetooth audio player to play music from your Bluetooth-enabled mobile device (e.g. smartphone) wirelessly via the MMI.

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection procedure. The Bluetooth function and the discoverability option of the MMI system ⇒ *page 228* and the mobile device must be activated.

Connecting a mobile device

- ▶ **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > Connect external device > New connection**. The available Bluetooth devices will be shown after a few seconds.
- ▶ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- ▶ To update the list, press .

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be created.

- ▶ Confirm the PIN on your mobile device.

After the mobile device has been connected successfully, it will be shown as a Bluetooth audio player in the **Connected devices** menu.

Playing media ⇒ *page 217*

Note

- Pay attention to any connection queries on your Bluetooth device.
- You can pair several Bluetooth audio players with the MMI; however only one external device at a time can be actively connected to the MMI as a Bluetooth audio player ⇒ *page 229*.
- Which media functions (e.g. random playback, list view, categories, search function,

options) are supported depends on the Bluetooth device you are using.

- Please note the volume control on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting the volume of mobile devices to maximum when they are being used as Bluetooth audio players.
- You can find a selection of supported Bluetooth devices in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Online media

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment and online media

You can start and operate various online media services (such as music streaming services) via the MMI.

Important: One of the supported online media services must be available in your country. You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the vehicle. The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇒ *page 188*.

Connecting online media

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > Streaming services**. All the online media services supported in your country will be displayed for the user who is logged in.
- ▶ Press the desired online media service and follow the instructions given by the system.

Once you have registered, the online media service will be available as a media source.

Starting online media

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > an online media source**.



WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇒ in *General information on page 184*.



CAUTION

- Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection

costs ⇒ in *General information on page 184*.

- In order to use online media, you generally have to set up an account with an online media service, which may lead to additional costs, especially if you are using the service abroad.



Note

Depending on the internet connection and network load, playback of the online media services may be interrupted.

Amazon Alexa

Applies to: vehicles with Amazon Alexa integration

You can play back different Amazon Alexa content over the MMI. The speech dialogue system is used for voice control.

Important: Amazon Alexa must be activated ⇒ *page 28*. A data plan must be available ⇒ *page 188*.

- ▶ Start Amazon Alexa via the speech dialogue system.
- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > Alexa**.



WARNING

Please always observe the information ⇒ in *General information on page 184*.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒ in *General information on page 184*.

Multimedia connections

USB adapters

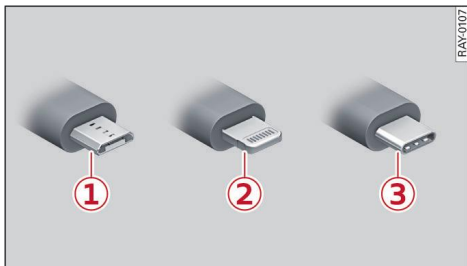


Fig. 146 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapters

You can connect your mobile devices to the MMI and simultaneously charge the battery using USB adapters connected to the USB ports with charging function.

The USB adapters are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers:

- ① USB adapter for devices with micro USB connector
- ② USB adapter for Apple devices with Lightning connector
- ③ USB adapter for devices with USB-C connector

! CAUTION

Please handle the USB adapters with care. Make sure the cable does not become pinched or trapped.

i Note

Apple devices with dock connector can only be charged using a suitable USB adapter but cannot transfer data.

USB ports with charging function

Applies to: vehicles with USB ports with charging function

You can connect your mobile devices via the USB ports in order to charge the battery and operate the devices via the MMI.

The USB ports are located in the front centre console and are marked with the symbol . If several USB devices are connected to the USB ports

(e.g. a smartphone and a USB stick), all of the devices can be used as a playback source.

Connecting/charging a mobile device via USB adapter

- Connect the corresponding USB adapter to the USB port and then connect it to the mobile device (e.g. smartphone).

The battery will be charged automatically.

Mobile devices connected to the USB ports are started and operated via the MMI ⇒ *page 217*.

Disconnecting a mobile device from the USB port

- Unplug the USB adapter from the USB port.

! WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- To avoid damage, please take care when unplugging the connector from the USB port.
- Use a USB extension cable to connect devices with an integrated USB connector (e.g. USB sticks). This will help to avoid damage to your USB device and the USB port.
- Very high or very low temperatures (a common occurrence in a car's interior) can cause damage to mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Please do not leave your mobile devices in the vehicle when the temperature is very high or very low.

i Note

- Please always observe the information ⇒ *page 79*.
- When you switch off the ignition, the USB ports will continue to be supplied with power as long as the energy management system does not intervene.
- Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters when connecting mobile devices which have an integrated cable or

which must be connected via a USB adapter
⇒ *page 216, Fig. 146* to the USB ports; this could cause performance issues.

- It cannot be guaranteed that mobile devices which do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification will function properly.
- USB hubs are not supported.
- Video playback via the USB ports is not supported by Apple devices or by MTP devices (e.g. smartphones).
- iPod touch/iPhone malfunctions also affect operation of the device via the MMI. In this case, please reset your mobile device.
- Audi recommends that you use the most up-to-date iPod touch/iPhone software possible. Please refer to the operating instructions of your mobile device for important information.
- iPod touch/iPhone 5 and later with Lightning connector are supported provided USB adapters are used on the USB ports.
- You can find a selection of supported devices in the database of tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Playing media

Media sources

The following media sources can be selected, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

- **Alexa** ⇒ *page 215*.
- **USB device** ⇒ *page 216*.
- **Connect external device**: You can connect external devices via Bluetooth and use the Bluetooth audio player ⇒ *page 214*. Alternatively, you can connect external devices directly to the USB ports with charging function ⇒ *page 216*.
- **Streaming services** ⇒ *page 215*.

Calling up media

Playing media files via the MMI


- ▶ **Applies to MMI**: On the home screen, select **MEDIA > Source > a source**. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected or the online media service* in use.

The device name may be displayed (e.g. My-Phone).

- ▶ Select a track from the categories in the media centre ⇒ *page 217*.

Playing media files via the multi-function steering wheel

Important: At least one media source must contain media files ⇒ *page 217*.

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the radio/media tab.
- ▶ To switch between radio and media or another source, press the  button.
- ▶ To select a media file/source, scroll and press the left thumbwheel.



Note

- If the function ⇒ *page 212, Traffic announcements* or ⇒ *page 212, DAB announcements* is switched on, playback is interrupted for announcements. You can cancel an announcement while it is being played by briefly pressing the MMI control dial ⇒ *page 30, Fig. 20*.
- For safety reasons, the video* picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound of the video* is played.
- **Applies to multi-function steering wheel**: It may be necessary to use the MMI to operate certain functions.

Media centre

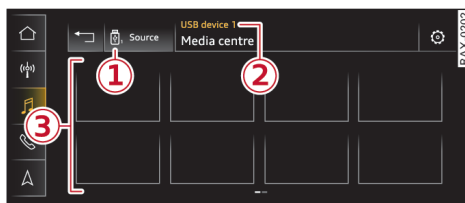


Fig. 147 Centre display: Media centre

Several categories are available in the media centre. You can search for media files across different sources. Music will still be played from the active source while you are searching on the MMI. ▶

Calling up the media centre

► Applies to MMI: Select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category*.

① Source symbol

The symbol for the source you are currently using will be displayed. The symbol for a source may change depending on the device connected or the online media service* in use. A USB stick connected via the USB port with charging function is shown as an example.

② Device name of a source

The device name of the source you are currently using will be displayed.

③ Categories

The categories displayed in the media centre depend on the vehicle equipment, the device connected, the contents of the selected source and the connection type:

- Last tracks played
- Artists
- Compilations
- Composers
- iTunes Radio
- Audiobooks
- Podcasts
- Genres
- Videos
- Tracks
- Albums

Further categories may be available, depending on the service.

Playlists

All playlists and smart playlists from the source will be displayed.

Smart playlists

- Last tracks played
- Most played tracks


Folders

The folder structure or the track/title/chapter list is displayed.



CAUTION

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

- Cloud services and the iTunes Radio category always require an internet connection.
- Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  *in General information on page 184.*



Note

- Only the categories supported by the medium/service used are available.
- For safety reasons, the video* picture is not available while the vehicle is moving. While you are driving, only the sound of the video* is played.
- If you synchronise a mobile device with cloud services, the playlists may not be displayed correctly on the MMI. Use the device's local media library.
- Applies to iPod touch/iPhone: Please also observe the notes on the USB ports with charging function and supported devices ⇒ *page 216.*

Media functions

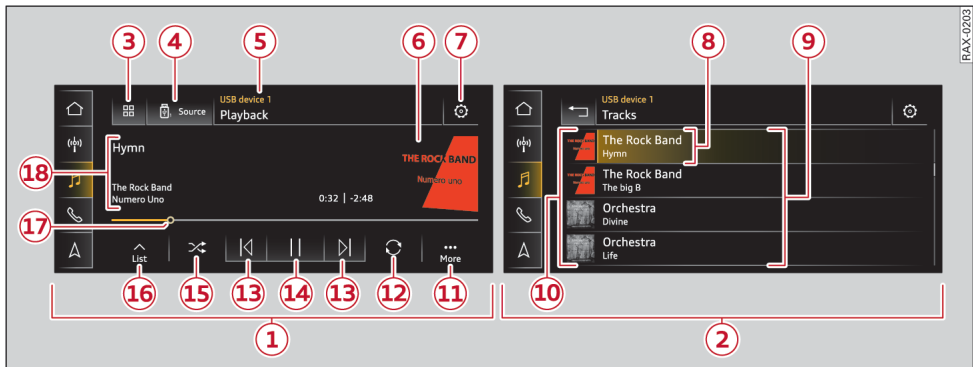


Fig. 148 Centre display: Playback view (left-side); playlist (right-side)

How to use


► Applies to MMI: To open the playback view ①, select the following on the home screen: **MEDIA** > **Source** > *a source* > *a category* (e.g. **Artists** > *an album*) > *a track*.

► To open the playlist ②, select **List** ⑩ in the playback view.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment and the media source selected, the following options may be available:

	Symbol/designation	Description
③	Media categories icon	The media centre categories are displayed (depending on the active source) ⇒ <i>page 217</i> .
④	Source	To display sources in the media menu.
⑤	Source/device name	Device name of the source currently playing.
⑥	Album cover in playback view	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇒ <i>page 221</i> , Additional online data . Displays the current album cover. To display the playlist: Press the cover.
⑦	Settings icon	Settings ⇒ <i>page 221</i>
⑧	Information on the current track	Displays track and artist . The track currently playing is marked in colour.
⑨	List	To scroll in the list: Swipe your finger upwards/downwards.
⑩	Album cover in the playlist	Important: A media source with album covers must be selected or the covers must be available online ⇒ <i>page 221</i> , Additional online data . Displays the current album cover.
⑪	More	Calling up options ⇒ <i>page 220</i> .
⑫	Off	To switch between Off/Playlist/Track: Press ⑫.
	Playlist	The tracks in the current playlist will be repeated continuously.
	Track	The current track will be repeated continuously.

	Symbol/designation	Description
13	⏮/⏭	To select the previous/next track (or station/chapter): Press ⏮ or ⏭. To rewind/fast forward: To rewind/fast forward the current track, press and hold ⏭ or ⏮. To jump to the beginning of the track: After the track has played for 3 seconds, press ⏮.
14	▶/	To start/stop the playback.
15	🔀	When this function is switched on, all the files in the playlist will be played in random order.
16	List	The playlist 2 will be displayed.
17	Play position	The slider indicates the current playback position in the track. To rewind/fast forward: To rewind/fast forward the current track, move the slider to the right/left. To change the playback position: Press on the desired playback position.
18	Information area	Displays track, artist and album.

 **Note**

Please note that not all functions are available in all sources and for all touch displays.

Search function

Applies to: vehicles with search function

You can search for e.g. tracks and artists across all sources.

Calling up the search function

Important: The selected source must support the search function.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **Media > Search**.

Entries containing the search terms entered will be displayed in the list of results. Every result is marked with the symbol of a category from the media centre ⇒ *page 217*.

You can search in the following categories:

- Artists
- Albums
- Tracks
- Genres
- Videos*

Options and settings

Options

Certain functions and settings may be available depending on the vehicle equipment, the selected source, the mobile device connected and the type of connection.

Important: The playback view must be displayed 1 ⇒ *page 219, Fig. 148*.

- ▶ Press **More** 11.

Similar music

The track currently playing is briefly analysed (e.g. by artist, genre, mood, time) so that the system can display a smart playlist with similar tracks.

Picture format


Audi recommends using the **Auto** setting for the picture format. You will be shown a preview of the setting when you press on one of the picture format options. Press **OK** to use the picture format selected.

The following table provides an overview of the picture formats. The possible picture formats depend on the source being played or the video file. ▶

Picture format	Description
Auto	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the picture using the best possible width-to-height ratio.
4:3, 16:9	The picture is set to the relevant format. Select one of these options if the picture shown with Auto selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.
Zoom	The picture is enlarged to fill the entire display.
Original	The picture is displayed using the picture ratio of the source format. Select this option if the picture shown with Auto selected is distorted, partially cut off or not in focus.

Settings

Calling up the settings

► **Applies to MMI:** On the home screen, select **MEDIA** > .

The following settings may be available depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Additional online data

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇒ *page 184, Audi connect*. In addition, a data plan is required in some countries ⇒ *page 188*.

When this function is switched on, additional information (e.g. album cover, artist, track) will be downloaded, if available.

Supported media and file formats

Overview


Depending on the vehicle's equipment, media files with the following attributes are supported

by the connection for the USB mass storage device:

Audio/video files	
Supported media	USB ports with charging function: mobile devices ⇒ <i>page 216</i> (e.g. iPhone, MTP players, USB mass storage devices belonging to "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" compatible with USB 2.0, USB sticks, USB MP3 players (plug-and-play capable), external USB flash memories and external USB hard drives)
File system	USB mass storage devices: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS USB mass storage partitions (primary/logical*): 2 per USB connection
Metadata	Album covers: GIF, JPG, PNG up to 800x800 px. Depending on availability, the album cover will be displayed using the corresponding medium or Gracenote*.
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX
Number of files	USB mass storage devices: max. 50000 files per medium; max. 1000 files per playlist/directory ►

Audio files		
Format	File extension	Up to max. 320 kbit/sec 48 kHz sampling frequency
MPEG-1/-2 Layer 3	.mp3	
Windows Media Audio 9/10	.wma	
MPEG-2/-4	.m4a; .m4b; .aac	
Opus	.opus; .ogg; .oga	
FLAC	.flac	48 kHz sampling frequency
ALAC	.m4a	
Monkey's Audio	.ape	

Video files		
Format	File extension	Up to max. 15 Mbit/sec, 1920x1080 px and 30 fps
MPEG-1/-2	.mpg; .mpeg	
MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	.mp4; .m4v; .mov; .avi	
Windows Media Video 9	.wmv; .asf	
MPEG-H (H.265/HEVC)	.mp4; .mov	
VP8/VP9	.webm	
Flash Video	.flv; .f4v	

 **Note**

- The format Windows Media Audio 9 Voice is not supported by the media sources.
- Audi recommends a compression rate of at least 160 kbit/sec for MP3 files. In the case of audio files with variable bit rate, the display of the remaining playing time may differ from the actual figure.
- The display of country-specific characters (e.g. for ID3 tag information) depends on

the language set on the system; it cannot be ensured that these characters are always displayed correctly.

- The manufacturer will provide you with information on the “USB Device Subclass” of a USB memory device.
- Some functions of MTP players such as video playback and the rating of tracks are not supported.

Troubleshooting

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle’s equipment.

Subject	Advice
USB ports with charging function/Bluetooth audio player: The mobile device is not supported.	Please observe the notes in the chapter ⇒ <i>page 216, Multimedia connections</i> /⇒ <i>page 214, Bluetooth audio player</i> .
USB ports with charging function: The mobile device is not recognised as a source.	On some mobile phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible if the battery charge is very low (less than 5 %). After it has been plugged in, the mobile device will only be recognised as a media source in the MMI again when it has sufficient battery charge.

Subject	Advice
USB ports with charging function: Problems during audio playback via an iPod touch/iPhone.	The Bluetooth audio player function is switched on. Switch the function off ⇒ <i>page 228</i> when you are not using a Bluetooth audio player .
USB ports with charging function: No audio playback possible via a connected mobile device.	Make sure that the USB mode <i>MTP</i> is selected in your mobile device's settings.
Bluetooth audio player: Problems with track display and playback.	Problems can occur if a third party music playback app is open when you are playing audio via the Bluetooth audio player . Audi recommends that you use the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (e.g. smartphone).
Online media: No online media playback.	Check that a data plan has been purchased for the country in question and that it is available ⇒ <i>page 188</i> .

In-car experience

Themes


Applies to: vehicles with themes

This function enables you to use themes to customise the appearance of the infotainment system.

Important: The MMI must be connected to the internet ⇨ *page 184, Audi connect*.

Using the themes preview

You can view a time-limited preview of a theme.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **THEMES** >  > *a theme*.
- Press **Preview**.

Downloading a theme


To use a theme permanently, you must download the theme.

Important: You must have installed the myAudi app on your mobile device. You must have added your vehicle in the myAudi app. You must be logged in with your myAudi user ID in the vehicle.

- Open the myAudi app and download the desired theme.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

Selecting a theme

Important: You must have downloaded a theme.

- Select the desired theme in the myAudi app, or
- Applies to MMI: To activate a theme, select the following on the home screen: **THEMES** > *a theme*.
- To update the list, press .
- Applies to MMI: To restore the factory appearance, select the following on the home screen: **THEMES** > **No theme**.

Using as a screensaver


When shown as a screensaver, the background image is displayed without the menus.

Important: You must have activated a theme.

- Applies to MMI: Swipe to the right until the background image is displayed without the menus.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇨  in *General information on page 184*.

Smartphone interface

Setting up

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone wirelessly* or via a cable to the MMI system via the smartphone interface. Some of the content on your smartphone is displayed in an optimised screen format and can be operated via the MMI.

Connecting a smartphone by cable


Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. Your iPhone 6s or later with Lightning or USB-C connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 8.0 or higher.

- Connect your smartphone to the USB port with charging function ⇒ *page 216, Fig. 146* via a USB adapter ⇒ *page 216*.

Connecting a smartphone wirelessly

Applies to: vehicles with wireless Apple CarPlay/wireless Android Auto

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on. Your iPhone 6s or later with Lightning or USB-C connector must have the latest operating system, or your smartphone with Android Auto app must have operating system Android 11 or higher.

- To connect your smartphone wirelessly, switch on the Bluetooth function and Wi-Fi on your smartphone.
- Applies to Apple CarPlay: Call up the settings for Apple CarPlay on your iPhone.
- Applies to Android Auto: Make sure that wireless Android Auto is allowed in the app settings on your smartphone.
- Switch on the Bluetooth function and discoverability on the MMI ⇒ *page 228*.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connected devices > Smartphone interface > New connection**.
- Using the MMI, press on your smartphone in the list of Bluetooth devices shown.
- To update the list, press .


Establishing a wireless* connection/ connection by cable

- Follow any instructions given by the system.
- Please note any system queries on your smartphone.
- Applies to MMI: If you declined the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto the first time you connected your smartphone, select the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > Connected devices > Smartphone interface > a smartphone**.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

WARNING

Driving on the road always requires your full attention. As the driver, you have full responsibility for the safety of the vehicle and other road users. Never operate mobile devices while the vehicle is moving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.

Note

- The functions you can use depend on a number of factors including:
 - The brand of your smartphone
 - The operating system version of your smartphone
 - The software version of the app in use
 - The USB adapter/cable and the correct connection
 - Your mobile network/service provider
 - The individual settings on your smartphone
- One or several of the factors listed above can result in your smartphone being incompatible with the smartphone interface. We regret that it is not possible to guarantee compatibility for all types of smartphone. For further information and support, please refer to the operating manual of your smartphone or contact its manufacturer.

- Please note that you must connect your smartphone to the USB port with charging function in the front cabin to use the smartphone interface.
 - Wireless Apple CarPlay*/wireless Android Auto* is not available in all countries.
 - Wireless Apple CarPlay*/wireless Android Auto* is possible on vehicles without navigation system/without a vehicle position that can be analysed (GPS data) only if the embedded SIM card in the vehicle is logged in to the mobile network ⇒ *page 185*.
 - If the smartphone you have connected has a voice control feature, you can control your smartphone using the external voice control system ⇒ *page 28*.
- The MMI uses the menu language set on your smartphone.
 - Some of the MMI functions are not available when a smartphone interface connection is active.
 - You cannot use mobile devices via Bluetooth when the smartphone interface is active.
 - Whether the smartphone interface can be used depends on the availability of services provided by third parties.
 - Audi only enables you to access third party services via the MMI and accepts no responsibility for the content of the services.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface

Troubleshooting options are given below. They depend on the vehicle’s equipment.

Subject	Advice
Smartphone interface cannot be called up.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB adapter and use a different one if necessary. Check whether Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in your country.
	Android Auto: Check that the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI fails.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the USB port with charging function ⇒ <i>page 216</i> .
	Apple CarPlay: Check that Apple CarPlay is activated on your iPhone.
	Android Auto: Check in the Android Auto app whether Android Auto allows new cars.

Subject	Advice
Wireless connection between smartphone and MMI fails.	Apple CarPlay: Call up the settings for Bluetooth and Apple CarPlay on your iPhone. Delete your vehicle.
	Android Auto: Call up the settings for Bluetooth on your smartphone. Delete your vehicle. Delete your vehicle in the Android Auto app as well.
	Open the Connected devices menu ⇨ <i>page 229</i> . Delete your smartphone in the menu items Telephone 1 and Smartphone interface. Repeat the connection procedure. Restart the MMI ⇨ <i>page 21</i> . Restart your smartphone. Call up the Wi-Fi settings on your smartphone. Check whether your smartphone has connected to the vehicle's 5 GHz Wi-Fi. Try connecting to the 5 GHz Wi-Fi manually.
Smartphone is not detected automatically.	Check that you are using the correct USB adapter and that the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and to the USB port with charging function ⇨ <i>page 216</i> . Check that the requirements for connecting a smartphone have been met.

Further settings

System settings

Introduction

This chapter describes general settings. Information on specific settings can be found in the relevant chapter. The settings available depend on the equipment fitted in your vehicle.

Date and time

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Date & time**.

Available settings:

- Set date and time automatically
- Date
- Time
- Date format
- Time format
- Automatic time zone
- Time zone

Measurement units

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Measurement units**.

Available settings:

- Speed
- Distance
- Temperature
- Capacity
- Pressure
- Consumption (combustion engine)

Language and keyboard

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Language & keyboard**.

Language

You can change the language of the display, the navigation cues and the speech dialogue system.

Keyboard

Refer to ➞ page 25.

Sound

Important: An audio source must be active.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Sound**.

Available settings:

- Treble
- Bass
- Balance/fader
- Speed-dependent volume control
- Subwoofer
- Surround level
- Focus
- 3D sound

Announcements and sounds

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Announcements & sounds**.

Available settings:

- Volume of spoken cues



WARNING

The audio system volume should be set at a level which enables you to hear external signals (such as the sirens of police and emergency vehicles) clearly – failure to do so could result in an accident.



Note

The volume is automatically adjusted to a pre-set level when you switch on the MMI.

Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connection settings > Bluetooth**.

Bluetooth

You can set whether the MMI system is visible to other Bluetooth devices. To connect a new Bluetooth device, the **Visible** setting must be selected. If **Invisible** is selected, a Bluetooth

connection can only be established to devices which have already been paired. You cannot connect a Bluetooth device if **off** is selected.

Bluetooth audio player

When this function is switched on, the profile will be connected automatically as soon as your Bluetooth audio player is within range.

Bluetooth name

The Bluetooth name of the MMI is displayed and can be changed.

Note

The name of the *Wi-Fi hotspot* and the *Bluetooth name* are automatically matched if changes are made.

Factory settings

Important: The ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > System maintenance > Restore factory settings**.
- Follow the instructions given by the system.

The factory settings will be restored. The system will be restarted. This can take some time.

Note

Please note that not only settings will be deleted when you do this; saved data may also be erased.

Software update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with software update

You can use software updates to keep the software in your vehicle up to date.

The functions depend on the country and the equipment fitted in your vehicle:

- Map material update for the navigation system
⇒ *page 201*.
- Software updates at your Audi dealership. This may lead to additional costs.



WARNING

- Only perform the installation when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- In the event of installation errors, please contact a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Connected devices

Displaying connected devices

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Connected devices**.

Possible menu items:

- Telephone 1
- Telephone 2
- Audio player
- Wi-Fi hotspot
- Headset

Smartphone interface


You can connect your smartphone to the MMI
⇒ *page 225*.

myAudi app

This function is available when the corresponding Audi app is installed and running on your mobile device and the mobile device is connected to the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot.



CAUTION

Please observe the information on Audi connect, particularly with regard to connection costs ⇒  in *General information on page 184*.

Managing connected devices

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇒ *page 229*. ►

Connecting a device

Important: The Bluetooth discoverability option must be activated for the MMI system
⇒ *page 228* and the mobile device.

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ To search for and connect your mobile device, press on **New connection** ⇒ *page 173*.

Selecting a connected device

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ Press on the desired mobile device in the list of connected devices. The connection will be established.

Disconnecting a device

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ Press on the connected mobile device. The selected mobile device will be disconnected from the MMI.

Deleting a device

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▶ Press **Delete**.

If a device is listed more than once, it will be deleted accordingly from all of the menu items.

Note

Audi recommends connecting no more than six devices. You should delete any devices you no longer need at regular intervals.

Further options

Additional options may be available depending on the function selected.

Important: The connected devices menu must be displayed ⇒ *page 229*.

- ▶ Press on a menu item, e.g. **Telephone 1**.
- ▶ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.

Bluetooth profiles

You can switch the profiles on/off individually on the MMI as desired.

Favourite

Activate this function to set a paired mobile phone as the standard phone on the MMI.

The standard phone will be prioritised over other Bluetooth devices and connected as soon as it is within range. This requires that the Bluetooth function of both the mobile phone and the MMI be switched on.

Legal information

General information

Software licence information can be found online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo.

Multi Media Interface

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General**.

Licence periods

Version information

Legal information

Possible options:

- **Software information**
- **About Audi connect**

Smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with smartphone interface


Important: A smartphone must be connected to the MMI ⇒ *page 225*.

- ▶ Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > Connected devices > Smartphone interface**.
- ▶ Press and hold an item until the **Options** menu is displayed.
- ▶ Press **Legal information**.

Instrument cluster

Important: The vehicle must be stationary, and the ignition must be switched on.

- ▶ On the instrument cluster, select the vehicle functions tab ⇒ *page 15*.

- Press the  button on the multi-function steering wheel until the display appears.

Possible options:

- **Engine/motor code**
- **Software information**
- **Version information**

Checking and topping up fluids

Fuel

Identification of fuels¹⁾

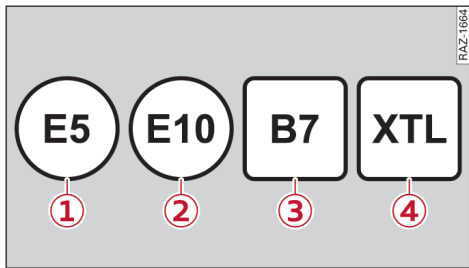


Fig. 149 Fuel tank flap sticker: Identification of fuels (examples)

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The symbols signify different fuels. Depending on the fuel, the individual symbols may be found on the vehicle's fuel tank flap. In some countries, you will also find the information on the fuel pumps. This is intended to help prevent incorrect fuel from being used. Only fill the tank with the fuel types shown on the vehicle's fuel tank flap.

- ① **Petrol** with ethanol: “E” stands for **ethanol**. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, “E5” means that the fuel contains a maximum of 5% ethanol.
- ② **Petrol** with ethanol: “E” stands for **ethanol**. The number refers to the proportion of ethanol in the petrol. For example, “E10” means that the fuel contains a maximum of 10% ethanol.
- ③ **Diesel** with biodiesel: “B” stands for **biodiesel**. The number refers to the proportion of biodiesel in the diesel. For example, “B7” means that the fuel has a maximum of 7% biodiesel content.
- ④ **Diesel**: “XTL” stands for paraffinic diesel.

¹⁾ May vary in different countries.

Petrol

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be run on **unleaded petrol**. Petrol must be **sulphur-free** and must comply with the EN 228 fuel quality standard or equivalent. The petrol grades have different **octane (RON)** or **Anti-Knock Index (AKI)** ratings.

The following headings relate to the sticker on the inside of your vehicle's fuel tank flap (example):

95 RON/ROZ or min. 91 RON/ROZ

The use of premium petrol (95 RON / 91 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, regular petrol (at least 91 RON / 87 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

min. 95 RON/ROZ

Premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) must be used.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible.

98 RON/ROZ or min. 95 RON/ROZ

The use of Super Plus petrol (98 RON / 93 AKI) is recommended. If that type of fuel is not available, premium petrol (at least 95 RON / 91 AKI) can be used with a slight loss of power.

If premium petrol is not available, the engine can be run on regular petrol with 91 RON / 87 AKI as an *emergency measure*. In this case only use moderate engine speeds and a light throttle. Fill up with premium or Super Plus petrol as soon as possible. ►

⚠ CAUTION

- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-ethanol fuel blends (e.g. E30 – E100). This will damage the fuel system.
- Do **NOT** fuel your vehicle with high-methanol fuel blends (e.g. M15 – M100). Damage will occur to the fuel system and the engine.
- Even one tankful of leaded fuel would permanently impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter.
- Audi recommends that you use only additives approved by Audi. Additives that have not been approved by Audi may cause engine damage. Additives with so-called octane boosters or antiknock additives can contain metallic additives that cause significant damage to the engine and the catalytic converter. Do not use such additives.
- Metal-based fuels, which can be identified from the marking on the fuel dispenser, must not be used. LRP fuel (lead replacement petrol) also contains high concentrations of metallic additive. Risk of engine damage!
- High engine speed and full throttle can damage the engine when using petrol with an octane rating lower than the correct grade for the engine.

ℹ Note

- You can use higher octane fuel than your engine requires.
- In countries where sulphur-free fuel is not available, you may use low-sulphur fuel instead.

Diesel

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

The use of **sulphur-free diesel** complying with the EN 590 standard is recommended.

Diesel can thicken at very low temperatures, which can result in problems starting the engine or prevent the engine from running smoothly. For this reason, filling stations in some countries offer winter-grade diesel during the cold months so that you can continue to operate your vehicle reliably. Ask at your filling station whether the diesel available there is suitable for the current conditions and for the temperatures which could potentially occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never use FAME fuels (biodiesel), petrol, heating oil, thinners or any other fuels or additives, as these could cause serious damage to the fuel system and the engine.
- Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the fuel system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.

Paraffinic diesel¹⁾

Applies to: vehicles suitable for paraffinic diesel

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is listed inside the fuel tank flap.

You can use **sulphur-free paraffinic diesel** that complies with the EN 15940 standard if the “XTL” symbol is on the sticker inside your vehicle’s fuel tank flap. You must not use this fuel if the symbol is not on the sticker.


Please also refer to the description of diesel
⇒ *page 233.*

Filling the tank

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Driver messages

If the indicator lamp  lights up and a corresponding message appears, you should add fuel to the vehicle’s tank. ▶

¹⁾ This fuel is available in certain countries only.

Tank system malfunction! Please contact workshop

There is a malfunction in the tank system. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

Vehicle refuelled. Reset km/miles now?

Select **Yes** if you want to reset the trip recorder to zero.

The display of this message depends on the amount of fuel in the tank and the amount of fuel added.

Procedure for filling the tank




Fig. 150 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Opening fuel tank flap



Fig. 151 Fuel tank flap with tank cap attached


The fuel tank flap is unlocked/locked automatically by the central locking system.

- ▶ If necessary, unlock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to open it
⇒ Fig. 150.
- ▶ Unscrew the tank cap anti-clockwise.
- ▶ Hook the cap onto the open flap ⇒ Fig. 151.

- ▶ Insert the filler nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as the stop.
- ▶ Start refuelling. The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full ⇒ .
- ▶ When the fuel filler pump switches itself off, wait for 5 seconds before pulling out the filler nozzle so that any remaining fuel can flow into the tank opening.
- ▶ Screw on the tank cap clockwise until it clicks audibly.
- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is given on a sticker on the inside of the fuel tank flap. Further notes on fuel ⇒ page 232.

The tank capacity of your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇒ page 296.

To prevent fuel and vapours from escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is properly sealed; otherwise the indicator lamp ¹⁾ will light up.

WARNING

Improper refuelling and improper handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Do not smoke. Keep naked flames away from the vehicle.
- The ignition must be switched off when refuelling.
- Mobile phones and radio equipment must always be switched off when refuelling. Electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks which could start a fire.
- The auxiliary heating* must be switched off when refuelling.
- Fuel can escape if you do not insert the filler nozzle all the way into the filler neck. Escaping fuel can ignite and cause a fire.
- Never get into the vehicle while refuelling. If you do have to get into the vehicle in exceptional circumstances, close the door and touch a metal surface before handling the filler nozzle again. This will discharge any static electricity which could generate

¹⁾ Depends on engine and country

sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refuelling.

- The filler nozzle cuts out as soon as the fuel tank is full. Do not try to put in more fuel after the nozzle cuts out, as this will fill the expansion chamber in the fuel tank. Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm, potentially at a later point in time. This can cause explosion, fire and serious or fatal injuries.



WARNING

Audi recommends you NOT to carry a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could escape from the canister and catch fire, particularly in the event of an accident. Fire, explosions and injuries could result.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to carry a spare fuel canister, please observe the following warnings:
 - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground before filling it. Never fill fuel into the spare fuel canister with the canister placed in or on top of the vehicle. Electrostatic electricity can build up while filling the canister and ignite the fuel vapours.
 - When using metal fuel canisters, always keep the filler nozzle in contact with the canister to prevent the build-up of static electricity.
 - Keep the filler nozzle inserted as far as possible into the filler opening while filling the canister.
 - Observe all relevant local regulations on using, storing and transporting spare fuel canisters.



CAUTION

- If fuel overflows onto the vehicle, remove it completely straight away to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- Never run the tank completely dry. If there is an irregular fuel supply, misfiring can oc-

cur. As a result unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and cause damage to the catalytic converter(s).

- **Vehicles with diesel engine:** When filling the fuel tank after having run it completely dry, the ignition must be switched on for at least 30 seconds without starting the engine. When you then start the engine it may take longer than normal (up to one minute) for the engine to start firing. This is because air needs to be bled from the fuel system while starting.



For the sake of the environment

- Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause the fuel to overflow if it becomes warm.
- Never pour fuel down drains or into the ground.



Note

The fuel tank flap is not locked when you lock the vehicle from the inside by pressing the central locking switch.



Note

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine

Diesel vehicles are equipped with an incorrect fuelling protection system¹⁾. This system ensures that the tank can only be fuelled from a diesel filler nozzle.

- If the filler nozzle is old, damaged or too small, it may not be able to open the protection mechanism on the fuel tank. In this case, try turning the filler nozzle before inserting it in the fuel filler neck, use a different filling pump or seek professional assistance.
- The protection mechanism will not open if you try to add fuel from a spare fuel canister. You can get round this simply by adding the diesel slowly.

¹⁾ Depending on country

Having the fuel tank flap released manually

- ▶ If you cannot open the fuel tank flap, seek professional assistance.
- ▶ Then drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

Selective catalytic reduction (AdBlue/DEF)

General information

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

On vehicles with selective catalytic reduction, a urea solution (AdBlue/DEF) is injected into the exhaust system upstream of a NOx catalytic converter in order to reduce nitrogen oxide emissions. The catalytic converter changes nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water with the help of the urea solution AdBlue/DEF. The urea solution is known as AdBlue or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid). The term AdBlue is used below.

The AdBlue is held in a separate tank in the vehicle. AdBlue consumption is normally between 1.0 ltr. – 2.5 ltr./1000 km. In individual cases, the consumption may be different as a result of how the vehicle is driven along with the operating and ambient temperature.

It is not sufficient to simply have AdBlue refilled when the vehicle is serviced because this may be necessary more often than services are due or between service intervals.

As soon as a message appears in the instrument cluster display reminding you to refill AdBlue, you must refill the AdBlue tank or have this done by a qualified workshop ⇒ *page 237*.

Checking range

Applies to: vehicles with range check

The AdBlue consumption depends on the ambient and operating temperature and on how the vehicle is driven. The approximate remaining range and quantity to be added can be checked on the instrument cluster display¹⁾ ⇒ *page 18*.

¹⁾ On some versions, the figures can be checked before the refill message appears.

Legal information

- It is not permitted to make technical changes to the emission control system which have an effect on the exhaust gas treatment using AdBlue.
- Audi has approved this vehicle for use only with AdBlue corresponding to ISO-22241-1, for which the Certificate of Conformity for this type of vehicle has been issued.
- It may be a crime to operate the vehicle without the AdBlue which corresponds to ISO-22241-1.
- If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may worsen.
- The use of AdBlue for the operation of this vehicle is required by law.



Note

- The instrument cluster display will tell you how far you can drive before the tank runs dry ⇒ *page 237, Low AdBlue level*. If the AdBlue tank runs dry, the engine cannot be started again after you switch off the ignition. Never run the AdBlue tank completely dry.
- Restrictions may be encountered when refilling in very cold temperatures, because the freezing point of AdBlue is -11 °C.
- The system is heated when the vehicle is running to ensure that the exhaust gas treatment operates even at very low temperatures.

Instrument cluster display


Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

The display informs you if the AdBlue level is too low or if a system malfunction occurs.


The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle: ►

Low AdBlue level

A series of warnings will inform you if the amount of AdBlue in the tank falls below a certain level. You should always fill up with AdBlue when requested to do so on the instrument cluster display.

 **Please refill x ltr. AdBlue/DEF at next fuel stop. Range x km**

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue.

 **Refill x ltr. of AdBlue/DEF. No restart in x km. See owner's manual**

This message tells you the maximum distance that you can drive with the remaining amount of AdBlue. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car. You can also call up the remaining distance on the on-board computer.

 **Refill x ltr. AdBlue/DEF! No restart. See owner's manual**

This message appears when there is no more AdBlue left in the tank. Refill AdBlue. Otherwise, you will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.


When the AdBlue in the tank reaches the minimum level, you must add AdBlue ⇒ [page 237](#), *Before refilling AdBlue*.

Filling the wrong fluid / system fault


If you fill the AdBlue tank with a fluid other than AdBlue and the system detects that the wrong fluid has been added or there is a system fault, a driver message will appear.

 **Please check AdBlue/DEF. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

 **AdBlue/DEF: fault. No restart in x km. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault and the vehicle can only be driven as far as indicated in the instrument cluster. Drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified. Otherwise, after driving the maximum distance and switching off the engine, you will not be able to restart the car.

 **AdBlue/DEF: fault. Engine cannot be restarted. See owner's manual**

This message appears if the system detects that the tank has been filled with the wrong fluid or with non-standard AdBlue or if there is a system fault. Drive to the nearest qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. You will not be able to restart the car after you switch off the engine.

Before refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

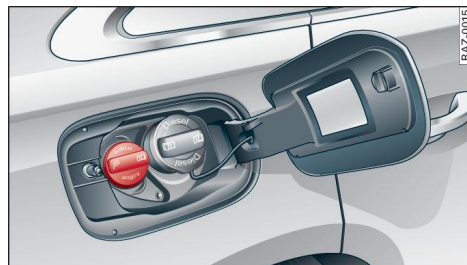


Fig. 152 Vehicle as seen from the rear right: Unscrewing the AdBlue cap

The AdBlue filler neck is located immediately beside the diesel filler neck.

The AdBlue tank capacity on your vehicle is given in the Technical data section ⇒ [page 296](#).

When the instrument cluster displays the request to fill up AdBlue, fill up at least the amount of AdBlue displayed. If you do not refill this amount of fluid, the system may not detect that the tank has been refilled and it may not be possible to restart the engine.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the fuel tank flap ⇒ [page 234](#).

- Unscrew the cap on the filler neck anti-clockwise ⇒ Fig. 152.
- Refill AdBlue from a filler nozzle ⇒ page 238, canister ⇒ page 238 or bottle ⇒ page 239.

WARNING

AdBlue can cause irritation to the skin, eyes, and respiratory organs. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid. Seek medical assistance if necessary.

CAUTION


- Improper handling of AdBlue can cause damage to the vehicle not covered by the warranty.
- Use only AdBlue that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix AdBlue with additives and do not dilute it with water.
- AdBlue must not be added to the diesel tank, and diesel must not be added to the AdBlue tank. Never start the engine if you fill up with the wrong type of fuel, as this could damage the tank system and the engine. Seek professional assistance.
- AdBlue attacks surfaces such as paintwork, plastic veneer and carpets. Remove spilt fluid as soon as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of water. If the AdBlue has already solidified, use warm water and a sponge. Residues of AdBlue solidify after a while if they are not removed and can damage the affected surface.
- Do not keep refill bottles or canisters in the vehicle, as AdBlue can leak and damage the vehicle interior.
- Keep AdBlue away from clothing. Wash thoroughly with clean water should you come into contact with this fluid.

Note



Please follow the AdBlue manufacturer's instructions for storage and use.

Refilling AdBlue from a filler nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- Fill up with AdBlue until the first time the filler nozzle cuts off the supply ⇒ .
- Put the tank cap back on ⇒ page 239, After refilling AdBlue.

CAUTION

- The handle of the filler nozzle must point downwards when filling the tank. Otherwise the filler nozzle will not cut off the supply automatically ⇒  in Before refilling AdBlue on page 238.
- Do not use a damaged filler nozzle in case it does not cut off the supply properly.
- You should stop refilling the first time the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Otherwise the level of AdBlue in the tank may be too high and AdBlue could overflow ⇒  in Before refilling AdBlue on page 238.

Note

You can fill AdBlue from pumps for either light passenger vehicles or heavy goods vehicles.

Refilling AdBlue from a canister

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

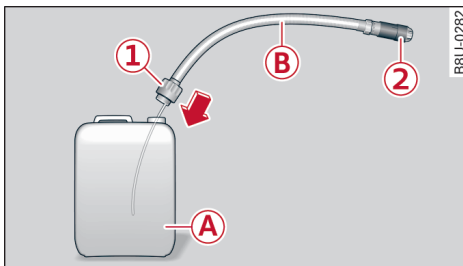




Fig. 153 Canister with screw-on hose

- Take the cap off the refill canister ⇒  in Before refilling AdBlue on page 238, ⇒  in Before refilling AdBlue on page 238.
- Screw the end of the hose (1) clockwise onto the opening on the canister (A).
- Remove the cap (2) from the other end of the hose (B).

- ▶ Fit the end of the hose ② onto the filler neck on the vehicle and turn clockwise as far as the stop to secure.
- ▶ Lift the canister and then tilt it. Keep it tilted until empty or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- ▶ Turn the hose anti-clockwise to remove it.
- ▶ Remove the canister and screw the tank cap back on ⇒ *page 239, After refilling AdBlue.*

! CAUTION

Use only refill canisters of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

i Note

- Your qualified workshop can tell you which refill canisters are approved for your vehicle.
- Approved refill canisters contain about 5 litres of AdBlue.

Refilling AdBlue from a bottle

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

- ▶ Take the cap off the refill bottle ⇒ ⚠ in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 238*, ⇒ ! in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 238*.
- ▶ Screw the bottle clockwise onto the filler neck as far as it will go.
- ▶ To empty the bottle, lightly press the bottom of the bottle. Keep pressing the bottom of the bottle until the bottle is empty, or until no more fluid runs into the tank.
- ▶ Unscrew the bottle anti-clockwise without applying pressure.
- ▶ Remove the bottle and screw the tank cap back on ⇒ *page 239, After refilling AdBlue.*

! CAUTION

Use only refill bottles of the correct type approved for your vehicle. AdBlue may leak out if you use another system.

i Note

- Refill bottles are available from qualified workshops.
- Approved refill bottles contain about 1.9 litres of AdBlue.

After refilling AdBlue

Applies to: vehicles with selective catalytic reduction

Closing the filler neck

- ▶ Screw the AdBlue cap clockwise onto the filler neck until the AdBlue cap clicks audibly ⇒ ⚠ in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 238*, ⇒ ! in *Before refilling AdBlue on page 238*.
- ▶ Press the left side of the flap to close it (you should hear it click into place).

After refilling

- ▶ Switch the ignition on for approximately 30 seconds to allow the system to register that fluid has been added.
- ▶ You should wait until this has happened before starting the engine.

i Note

AdBlue can freeze at very low temperatures. Restrictions may therefore be encountered when refilling. In this case, the system may not detect AdBlue when you refill and will continue to indicate a low AdBlue level. The message will disappear as soon as the tank has thawed.

Emission control system

General information

⚠ WARNING

- The exhaust system is very hot when the vehicle is being driven and after the engine has been switched off.
- Never touch the tailpipes when they are hot – risk of burns!
 - Because of the high temperatures which can occur in the exhaust system, do not park the vehicle where the exhaust can come into contact with flammable materials under the car (e.g. on grass or at the forest edge) – risk of fire!
 - Do not apply any underseal agents in the area around the exhaust system – risk of fire!

Catalytic converter

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine

Please refer to the safety information

⇒ *page 239, General information.*

The vehicle must only be used with unleaded petrol, otherwise the catalytic converter will be irreparably damaged.

Never allow the fuel tank to run completely dry, as the irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This allows unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system, which can cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

Particulate filter


Applies to: vehicles with particulate filter

Please refer to the safety information


⇒ *page 239, General information.*

The particulate filter can filter out almost all soot particles contained in the exhaust gas. In normal driving conditions the filter is self-cleaning. Should the self-cleaning function of the filter not be able to operate, e.g. if the vehicle is continuously used only for short trips, the filter will become obstructed with soot and a driver message will appear. The particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

Driver messages:

 **Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual**

Or


 **Particulate filter: can be cleaned by driving vehicle. You can continue driving. See owner's manual**

Different regeneration procedures are required, depending on the type of engine (petrol or diesel) and the engine capacity.

Determine which engine is installed in your vehicle (there may be a badge on the boot lid or you can consult the vehicle data sticker ⇒ *page 295* or vehicle registration documents).


Regenerating the particulate filter by driving at a constant speed

Applies to: vehicles with diesel engine or petrol engine (25 TFSI - 35 TFSI / 1.0 ltr., 1.4 ltr. or 1.5 ltr.)

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving at a constant speed** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇒ .

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, follow the gear shift indicator in the instrument cluster.


- ▶ Drive at a speed of between 50 km/h and 120 km/h ⇒ . As a result of the increase in temperature, the soot in the filter will be burned off.
- ▶ Do not stop the regeneration trip until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time (approx. 30 minutes).

If the indicator lamp does **not** go out, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.


Regenerating the particulate filter by driving and coasting

Applies to: vehicles with petrol engine (40° TFSI and 45 TFSI / 2.0 ltr.)

Before starting the regeneration trip, check whether regenerating the particulate filter by **driving and coasting** is the correct method for your vehicle (based on the engine) ⇒ .

The engine must be warmed up prior to the regeneration trip.

On vehicles with manual gearbox, follow the gear shift indicator in the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h ⇒ .
- ▶ Then take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds and let the vehicle coast in gear.
- ▶ Repeat this procedure (accelerate to at least 80 km/h and coast again) until the indicator lamp goes out.

This procedure causes the particulate filter to regenerate itself and may take some time. ►

If the indicator lamp does **not** disappear after a while, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.


WARNING

When regenerating the particulate filter, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.


CAUTION

Before starting the regeneration trip, check which method (driving at a constant speed or driving and coasting) is required for your vehicle (based on the engine). If you do not use the correct method, the regeneration trip may have no effect and the particulate filter may be damaged.

Note

- As a result of the high temperatures which occur during the regeneration of the particulate filter, the radiator fan may continue to run after the engine is switched off, even if the engine has not yet reached operating temperature.
- Noises, odours and increased engine speeds when idling may be noticed during regeneration.
- Applies to vehicles with diesel engine: If the indicator lamp requesting you to refuel the vehicle  also appears in the instrument cluster during the regeneration trip, the particulate filter regeneration process may be interrupted. Drive to a filling station and then resume the regeneration trip after refuelling the vehicle.
- To maximise the service life of the particulate filter, always use suitable engine oil and the correct fuel. You should also avoid driving the vehicle continuously on short trips.

Emission control system


If the indicator lamp  lights up or flashes, malfunctions have occurred which are relevant for emissions. These malfunctions may reduce the quality of the exhaust gas and damage the catalytic converter, for example. Drive slowly to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

The indicator lamp may also light up if the fuel tank flap has not been closed properly
⇒ page 234¹⁾.






Engine compartment

General information




Extra caution is necessary when working on components in the engine compartment.

Always be aware of the danger of injury and scalding as well as the risk of accident or fire when working in the engine compartment (e.g. when checking and refilling fluids). Always observe the warnings listed below and follow all normal safety precautions. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. ⇒ 

Explanation of warning symbols:

	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Hot engine parts! Rotating parts!
	Fan can switch on at any time!
	High voltage! The voltage of these components (such as the high-voltage system or ignition system) is lethal! Touching damaged live high-voltage components could cause you to be fatally electrocuted.
	High voltage! Switch off the engine before touching any part of ignition system!

¹⁾ Depends on engine and country

	The catalytic converter can be damaged if the engine oil level is too high!
	Hot coolant – risk of scalding!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner's Manual.

WARNING

A vehicle's engine compartment is a potentially hazardous area and working there can lead to serious injuries.

- Always exercise extreme caution when working in the engine compartment. Always keep to the generally accepted safety procedures and use your common sense. Never put yourself at risk of injury.
- Do not perform any work in the engine compartment if you do not fully understand the procedure or if you do not have suitable information, tools and equipment.
- If you are not sure how to proceed, have the work performed by a qualified workshop. Work which is not performed properly can cause serious injuries.

WARNING

- Switch off the engine.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Put the gear lever in neutral (manual gearbox) or put the selector lever in the parking position P (automatic gearbox).
- Wait for the engine to cool down.
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids can cause a fire (e.g. radiator anti-freeze).
- Take care not to cause short circuits in the electrical system.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and may switch on suddenly even if the ignition is switched off.
- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment.

Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.

- The cap on the coolant expansion tank must not be opened if the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure; there is a risk of being scalded.
- Protect face, hands and arms by covering the cap with a large, thick cloth to protect against escaping coolant and steam.
- Never remove the engine cover panel – risk of burns!
- Never touch ignition cables or other components of the electronic high-voltage ignition system while the engine is running or being started – risk of electrocution!
- **Automatic gearbox:** The accelerator pedal must on no account be pressed inadvertently when a gear is engaged and the engine is running with the vehicle stationary. The vehicle will otherwise start moving immediately and could cause an accident.
- If any tests or repairs have to be performed with the engine running, there is an additional safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, alternator and radiator fan:
 - First apply the parking brake and put the gear lever in neutral (manual gearbox) or put the selector lever in the parking position P (automatic gearbox).
 - Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can become caught up in rotating engine parts. Before commencing any work, always remove ties and jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight clothing to prevent these from becoming caught up in the engine parts.
- Observe the following additional warnings if work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
 - Do not smoke.
 - Never work near naked flames.
 - Always keep an approved fire extinguisher immediately available.
- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury

and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.

- Do not expose yourself to exhaust gases or chemical substances for any longer than necessary.

⚠ CAUTION

When topping up fluids make sure the correct fluid is put into the correct filler opening. This can otherwise cause serious malfunctions or engine damage.

🌱 For the sake of the environment

Inspect the ground underneath your vehicle regularly so that any leaks are detected at an early stage. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle inspected by a qualified workshop.

Opening/closing bonnet

The bonnet is released from inside the vehicle.

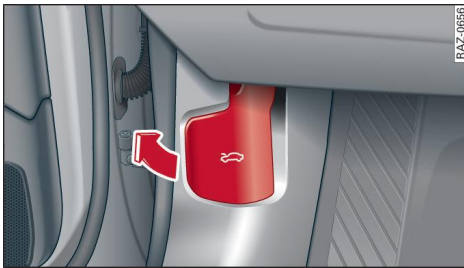


Fig. 154 Footwell: Release lever

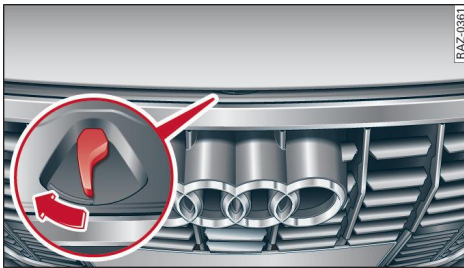


Fig. 155 Unlocked bonnet: Lever

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 241, *General information*.

The wiper arms should be resting on the windscreen: make sure they are not in a raised position. Otherwise the paint may get damaged.

Opening the bonnet

- ▶ With the door open, pull the lever ⤵¹⁾ under the dashboard in the direction indicated by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 154.
- ▶ Lift the bonnet slightly ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Press the release lever in the direction indicated by the arrow. ⇒ Fig. 155 This will release the arrester hooks.
- ▶ Open the bonnet.

Closing the bonnet

- ▶ To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the spring pressure.
- ▶ Then let it drop into the catches; *do not press down*. ⇒ ⚠

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

⚠ Warning! Bonnet not locked. Stop vehicle and check bonnet lock

The bonnet lock is not correctly engaged. Stop your vehicle without delay and close the bonnet.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid the risk of being scalded, never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Wait until no steam or coolant can be seen before opening the bonnet.
- For safety reasons the bonnet must always be completely closed when the vehicle is moving. After closing it always check that it is properly secured. It should not be possible to lift the front edges of the bonnet.
- Should you notice that the bonnet is not safely secured when the vehicle is moving,

¹⁾ Symbol ⤵ not available in all countries.

stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet properly, otherwise it could cause an accident.

Engine compartment layout

Main components for checking and refilling

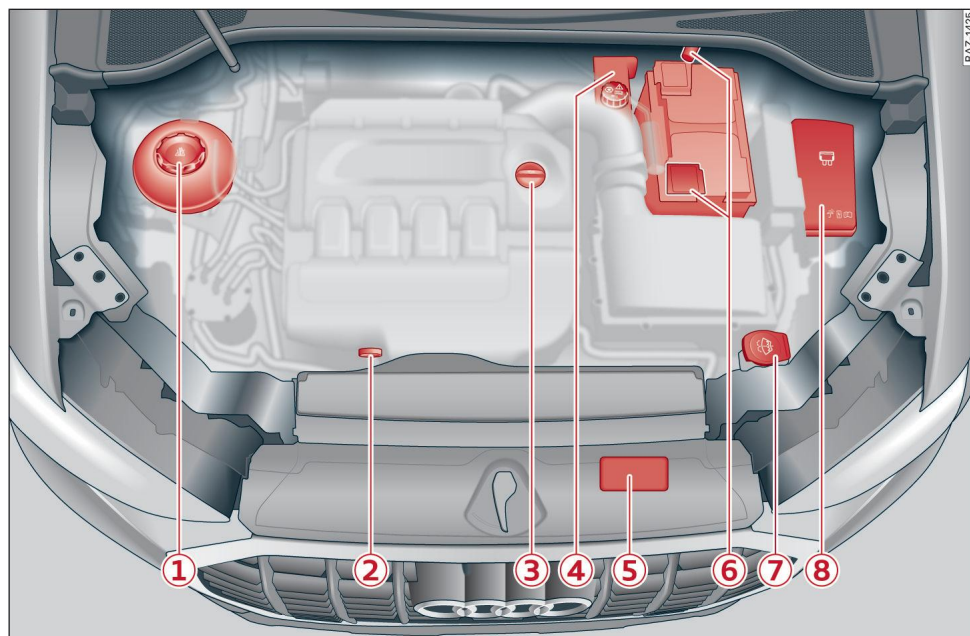


Fig. 156 Engine compartment layout: Example

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ page 241, *General information*.

- ① Coolant expansion tank (🛢️) ⇒ page 249
- ② Engine oil dipstick ⇒ page 246
- ③ Engine oil filler cap (🔑) ⇒ page 246, *Checking the engine oil level*
- ④ Brake fluid reservoir (🚰) ⇒ page 250
- ⑤ Sticker for engine oil specification
⇒ page 245
- ⑥ Vehicle battery (+) and earth point (-) on vehicle body ⇒ page 253, *Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*, ⇒ page 276, *Jump-starting*
- ⑦ Windscreen washer container (🚿)
⇒ page 254
- ⑧ Fuse box ⇒ page 281

The positions of the brake fluid reservoir, engine oil dipstick, engine oil filler cap, windscreen washer container and jump-start terminal (+) may be different on some engine and country versions. The appearance of the coolant expansion tank may differ on some engine versions.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

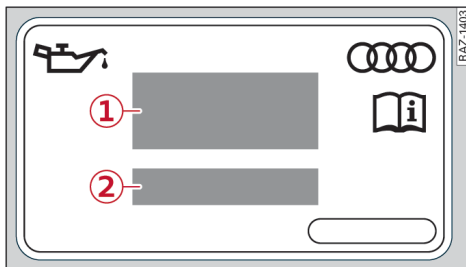


Fig. 157 Engine oil sticker

- ① Engine oil standard
- ② Engine oil viscosity

If you have to top up the engine oil, use one of the oils that meet the engine oil standard specified on the sticker ⇒ Fig. 157. The sticker with the specified standard is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇒ page 244, Fig. 156. If you use this oil, you can top up the engine oil level as often as necessary.

If the specified engine oil is not available, you can add a maximum of 0.5 litres of oil corresponding to the following standards **once** between oil changes. You should do this **in emergencies only**.

- Applies to petrol engines: Standards: VW 504 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4, API SP or ILSAC GF-6A. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.
- Applies to diesel engines: Standards: VW 507 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C4 or API CK-4. All viscosity classes of these standards are allowed.

Audi recommends having the oil changed by a qualified workshop.

! CAUTION

Audi recommends that you use the types of engine oil that have been formulated to conform to the corresponding VW standard. Using engine oil that does not meet these quality requirements may cause damage to the engine. In an emergency, 0.5 ltr. of engine oil

corresponding to the standards specified above may be used as an exception.

i Note

Audi recommends engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Switch off engine. Oil pressure too low

Switch off the engine and do not drive on. Check the engine oil level ⇒ page 246.

- If the engine oil level is too low, add more oil ⇒ page 247. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.
- If the engine oil level is OK but the warning lamp still lights up, switch off the engine and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Applies to vehicles with oil level warning:

Please check oil level

- You can continue driving for the time being but you should check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇒ page 246, *Checking the engine oil level*.
- If the engine oil level is normal but the indicator lamp stays on, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and avoid high engine speeds.

Please reduce oil level

The engine contains too much oil – risk of damage to the catalytic converter and engine. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the engine oil level adjusted if necessary. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.

Oil level sensor: engine oil change required. Please contact workshop

The engine oil has become contaminated with fuel. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Do not attempt to correct the level by extracting engine oil ►

– risk of engine damage. Drive to a qualified workshop soon to have the engine oil changed.

Oil level sensor system: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil level has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Oil pressure sensor: fault. Please contact workshop

The sensor for checking the engine oil pressure has failed. Drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the fault rectified.

Please warm up engine

It is possible for fuel to enter the engine oil, especially at low outside temperatures. The temperature of the engine oil needs to be high enough so that the fuel in it can evaporate.


Applies to automatic gearbox: Drive in transmission position S.

Run the engine at high rpm speeds but avoid using full throttle.


You should drive for at least 30 minutes; however it is possible that the indicator lamp may not go out during this period. Repeat the procedure at your convenience.

If the indicator lamp does not disappear after several runs, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

When responding to the message  **Please warm up engine**, it is essential that you adjust your speed to suit the weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions. The recommendation must never lead to the driver disregarding local traffic regulations.

Note

The oil pressure warning lamp  is not an indicator for the oil level. The oil level should therefore be checked regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The oil dipstick differs depending on the type of engine.

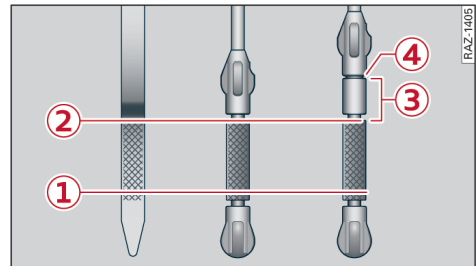








Fig. 158 Oil dipstick (examples): Checking engine oil level

Please refer to the safety notes ⇒ page 241, *General information*.


- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Switch off the warm engine.
- ▶ Wait for about 5 minutes for the engine oil to drain back into the sump.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 243.
- ▶ Pull out the oil dipstick ⇒ page 244, Fig. 156, wipe it with a clean cloth and insert it again, pushing it in as far as it will go.
- ▶ Then pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level ⇒ table on page 246.
- ▶ Push the dipstick all the way in.
- ▶ If the oil level is too low, add more engine oil ⇒ page 247.


Markings on oil dipstick ⇒ Fig. 158

Please refer to ⇒ .

	If the oil level is just above the marking  you must top up the engine oil. If the oil level is below the marking  you should top up the engine oil.
 	Do NOT add engine oil.
	Do NOT add engine oil. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the engine oil changed.

CAUTION

- The engine oil must never drop below the marking  – risk of engine damage!

- When topping up the engine oil, make sure that the oil level is not above the marking ② ⇒ Fig. 158, as this may result in damage to the catalytic converter or to the engine. If the oil level is above the marking ②, drive to a qualified workshop without delay to have the excess oil extracted. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration and heavy engine loads.
- Applies to vehicles which have an oil dipstick with area ③ ⇒ Fig. 158: If you run your vehicle on diesel of poorer quality than EN 590 standard fuel, the fuel can get into the engine oil. In this case, the oil level gradually rises and the quality of the engine oil decreases. Once the oil level has reached the marking ④ or the indicator lamp  has come on, the engine oil level must not be corrected by extracting the surplus oil – risk of engine damage! The engine oil must be changed ⇒ page 245.


Note

Depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used, oil consumption can be up to 0.5 ltr./1000 km. Oil consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before a journey.

Topping up the engine oil



Fig. 159 Engine compartment: Engine oil filler cap (example)

- ▶ Switch off the warm engine.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ page 243.
- ▶ Unscrew the cap  from the oil filler opening ⇒ Fig. 159.
- ▶ Carefully add 0.5 litres of suitable engine oil ⇒ page 245.
- ▶ After two minutes check the oil level again ⇒ page 246, *Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▶ Applies when using engine oil that corresponds to the specified standard: Add a little more engine oil if necessary.
- ▶ Screw the oil filler cap back on and push the dipstick all the way in.
- ▶ Close the bonnet ⇒ page 243.

WARNING

- Ensure that no oil comes into contact with hot engine components when topping up: this could cause a fire.
- The oil filler cap must be properly closed to prevent oil from squirting onto the hot engine or exhaust system while the engine is running – risk of fire!
- Wash your skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
- Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of the reach of children.
- Store the engine oil safely in the original container.

CAUTION

No additives should be used with engine oil. These could cause engine damage.

For the sake of the environment

- Never pour oil down drains or into the ground.
- Always observe local regulations when disposing of empty oil canisters.


Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of conditioned water and coolant additive. This coolant must not be changed. ▶


Please refer to the safety information ⇒ page 241, *General information*.

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.

The coolant level is monitored by a warning lamp . However, it is advisable to check it occasionally.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

 **Switch off power unit and check coolant level. See owner's manual**


or

 **Stop vehicle and check coolant. See owner's manual**

The coolant level is too low.

Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Check the coolant level ⇒ *page 249*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add more coolant ⇒ *page 249*. Do not drive on until the warning lamp has gone out.

 **Coolant temperature: too high. Let engine run with vehicle stationary**

Let the engine cool down by running it at idling speed for a few minutes until the warning lamp goes out.

– Do not drive on if the warning lamp does not disappear. Seek professional assistance.

 **Cooling system: fault. Please switch off power unit**

Do not drive on. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.

Coolant additive


The coolant additive contains anti-freeze and corrosion protection agent. When topping up, use only the type of coolant additive specified below, in combination with distilled water.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	TL 774 L

The amount of coolant additive which needs to be mixed with the water depends on the temperatures to be expected in the winter season. If the

anti-freeze concentration is too low, the coolant can freeze and cause engine damage.

	Coolant additive	Frost protection
Hot regions	min. 40 % max. 45 %	min. -25 °C (-13 °F)
Cold regions	min. 50 % max. 55 %	max. -40 °C (-40 °F)

 **CAUTION**

- Have your qualified workshop check the cooling system before the winter season to make sure that the anti-freeze concentration is adequate for the conditions to be expected. This applies particularly if you drive into a colder climate zone.
- To prevent damage to the engine, do not use a different type of coolant additive if G12evo is not available. In this case use only distilled water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by putting in the specified additive.
- Always top up with fresh, unused coolant.
- Radiator sealants must not be added to the coolant.
- If the coolant system has been topped up with a coolant additive other than the approved type (G12evo), you can continue driving initially; however you should take the vehicle to a qualified workshop without delay and have the coolant changed – risk of engine damage!
- The cooling system must be refilled by a qualified workshop only – risk of engine damage! You can obtain important information about recommended anti-freeze additives from your qualified workshop.

Checking the coolant level

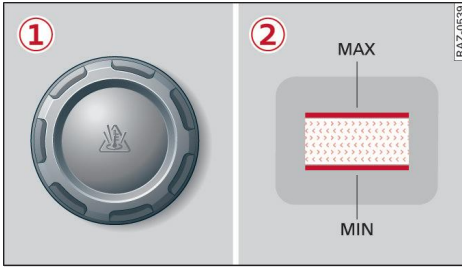


Fig. 160 Engine compartment – coolant expansion tank (example): ① Cap, ② Marks

Please refer to the safety information
⇒ *page 241, General information.*

Checking the coolant level

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Open the bonnet ⇒ *page 243.*
- ▶ Check the coolant level in the expansion tank
⇒ *page 244, Fig. 156* using the external markings ② ⇒ *Fig. 160* as a guide. When the engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the marks ②. When the engine is warm, it may be slightly above the top mark.
- ▶ Please read the information on ⇒ *page 247, Cooling system* before topping up the coolant in the coolant expansion tank.

Topping up the coolant

Important: The coolant expansion tank must not be empty ⇒ ⚠.

If you do need to top up the coolant, use a mixture of distilled water and the specified coolant additive ⇒ *page 247*. Only use non-distilled water in an emergency. Always use clean water.

- ▶ Wait for the engine to cool down.
- ▶ Cover the cap on the expansion tank with a large, thick cloth.
- ▶ Carefully unscrew the cap ① ⇒ *Fig. 160* anti-clockwise ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Add coolant in the correct concentration
⇒ *page 248* up to the top mark ② ⇒ *Fig. 160*.
- ▶ You should make sure that the fluid level remains stable. If necessary, add more coolant.

- ▶ Screw the cap on again tightly in the clockwise direction.

⚠ WARNING

- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially hazardous area. Before carrying out any work in the engine compartment, stop the engine, switch off the ignition and allow the engine to cool down. Please observe the important safety warnings ⇒ *page 241, General information.*
- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment; there is a risk of being scalded. The cooling system is under pressure. Wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
- When working in the engine compartment be aware that the radiator fan may start running suddenly, even if the ignition is switched off – risk of injury!
- The coolant and coolant additive can be a health hazard. Store the coolant additive in the original container in a safe place out of reach of children – risk of poisoning.

⚠ CAUTION

- Coolant loss which leads to the coolant expansion tank being virtually empty normally indicates significant leaks in the cooling system which could result in further damage.
- Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could have got into the cooling system – risk of damage! In this case, do NOT drive on. Seek professional assistance.
 - If there is coolant remaining in the tank, add more coolant. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified. If the warning lamp ⚠ comes on again, stop the vehicle and switch off the ignition. Seek professional assistance.
 - If too much coolant has been added to the coolant expansion tank, drive to a qualified workshop soon and have the coolant level corrected.
 - If you use non-distilled water, the chemicals that it contains can cause serious corrosion

damage to the engine – risk of engine damage!

- If you have used a large quantity of non-distilled water (more than 0.5 ltr.) in an emergency, drive directly to a qualified workshop and have the coolant changed.

Brake fluid



Fig. 161 Engine compartment: Cap of brake fluid reservoir

Please refer to the safety information

⇒ *page 241, General information.*

Checking the brake fluid level

- ▶ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▶ Read off the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇒ *page 244, Fig. 156*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks ⇒ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is also automatically monitored.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. Seek professional assistance.

Having the brake fluid changed

The brake fluid is changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by a qualified workshop. The qualified workshop will inform you of these intervals.

WARNING



- If the brake fluid level is under the MIN mark, the effectiveness of the brakes and therefore the safety of the vehicle may be impaired – risk of accident! Do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if old brake fluid is left in the system. This would seriously impair the effectiveness of the brakes and the safety of the car – risk of accident!
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must comply with the VW 501 14 standard. If this brake fluid is not available, it is permissible to use an alternative high-quality brake fluid complying with the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6 (ISO 4925).
- If used brake fluid or brake fluid not approved for your vehicle is used, the effectiveness of the brakes will be seriously impaired and the brake system could even fail completely. The vehicle manufacturer will accept no liability for faults or damage which occur as a result. In addition, no warranty claims will be accepted.

CAUTION

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX mark, brake fluid may escape via the cap on the reservoir in certain circumstances and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Brake fluid must not be allowed to come into contact with the vehicle's body, otherwise it will attack the paintwork.

Electrical system


The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

If the warning/indicator lamp  /  lights up, there is an alternator or battery fault or a fault in the vehicle's electrical system.

Electrical system: fault. Safely stop vehicle

or

Electrical system: fault. Battery is not being charged

Stop the vehicle safely and do not drive on. You should also switch off the ignition ⇒ . Seek professional assistance.

Electrical system: fault. No restart possible. Please contact workshop

When you switch off the ignition it will not be possible to restart the vehicle. The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: fault. Please contact workshop

Switch off any electrical equipment which is not required (some equipment may be switched off automatically). The performance of certain vehicle functions may be limited and the vehicle's handling may be impaired. Drive to a qualified workshop without delay.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

Starting reliability may be impaired.

- If this message disappears after a while, the vehicle battery will have been sufficiently charged while driving.
- If the message does not disappear again, drive to a qualified workshop and have the fault rectified.




WARNING

An electrical system fault can cause vehicle functions to fail, thus impairing the vehicle's stability – risk of accident! Switch off the ignition and do not drive on. Seek professional assistance.

Battery

General information on batteries

Because of the complexity of the power supply, any battery work, such as disconnection, replacement, etc. **must** be carried out by a qualified workshop ⇒ .

Several batteries using different technologies may be fitted in your vehicle:

- Vehicle battery (e.g. for starting the engine and the basic supply) ⇒ *page 252, Safety information*
- Additional battery (e.g. for recuperation and extra equipment) ⇒ *page 252, Safety information*

If the vehicle is not used for long periods

The battery gradually becomes discharged if the vehicle is left standing for long periods. To ensure that the vehicle can be started, the electrical equipment is powered back or switched off. Certain convenience features, such as interior lighting or electric seat adjustment, may not be available. These functions will be restored when you start the engine.

Even though some systems are deactivated automatically, certain electrical equipment continues to draw current even when the ignition is off. If the vehicle is left standing for long periods, this can result in total battery discharge. If the vehicle battery is allowed to discharge completely, an internal chemical reaction damages the battery irreparably. To avoid this, the battery should be recharged at least once a month ⇒ *page 253*. Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.

Winter conditions

Cold weather is very hard on the 12-volt vehicle battery. For this reason, you should have the battery checked by a qualified workshop before the start of winter.

Replacing the battery


Applies to: 12-volt vehicle battery

Any work on the battery **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.


The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed for use in its installation location and is equipped with safety features. If a 12-volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, please enquire about the electromagnetic compatibility, capacity and the required maintenance, performance and safety features of the new 12-volt vehicle battery before purchasing it from your qualified workshop. The gas vent on the 12-volt vehicle battery must ►

always be located on the side of the negative terminal. The gas vent on the side of the positive terminal must always be sealed.


When replacing the 12-volt lead battery, use only maintenance-free 12-volt lead batteries to standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73. These standards must be from October 2014 or later.


**WARNING**


- Any work on the batteries and electrical system in your vehicle entails a risk of injury and chemical burns in addition to danger of accident or fire. For this reason, you **must** have the work carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly. If the correct equipment is not used, safety-related functions may fail – risk of accident!
- Using a 12-volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications or dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery can cause short-circuits or fires. Serious or fatal injuries may occur as a result.
- Only maintenance-free and leak-proof 12-volt vehicle batteries that have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery may be used.
- Applies to vehicles with jump-start terminal in engine compartment: Charging cables and jump leads must never be connected directly to the 12-volt battery on your vehicle. Always use the terminals in the engine compartment ⇒ *page 253*.

**CAUTION**





- If the car is left standing for long periods, protect the 12-volt vehicle battery from frost. The battery will be damaged irreparably if it is allowed to freeze ⇒ *page 253, Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery*.










- Electrical components which can heat up during operation are located behind a trim panel underneath the luggage compartment floor. To prevent these components from overheating, objects such as blankets must not be stored underneath the floor panel. The components will switch off temporarily if they overheat. This will be indicated by a message in the instrument cluster until the temperature has returned to normal.
- Always have the 12-volt vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop because the vehicle electronics must be calibrated as part of the replacement procedure. Only qualified workshops have the equipment required in order to perform the calibration correctly.
- If a battery is used that does not meet the quality specifications set by Audi, or that has a battery capacity that is too low, the vehicle’s certification for use on public roads is void and thus also the vehicle’s registration ⇒ .

**For the sake of the environment**

 Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ *page 299, Information on waste disposal*.

Safety information

Explanation of warning symbols:	
	Observe all warnings – risk of injury!
	Always read the instructions in the Owner’s Manual.
	12-volt vehicle battery. High-voltage component. Improper handling can cause short circuits ⇒  in <i>General information on batteries on page 252</i> .

	With the exception of jump-starting and charging the 12-volt vehicle battery, all work on the 12-volt vehicle battery must be performed by a qualified workshop ⇒  in <i>General information on batteries on page 252</i> ⇒  in <i>General information on batteries on page 252</i> .
	Electrolyte is extremely corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and safety glasses. First aid: If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay. Neutralise any electrolyte spilt on skin or clothing immediately with soapy water and rinse with plenty of fresh water. If electrolyte is drunk by accident, seek the assistance of a doctor immediately.
	Always wear safety glasses.
	If electrolyte comes into contact with the eye, rinse the eye immediately with fresh water for several minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
	Keep open flames, sparks, uncovered lights and lit cigarettes away from the battery! Avoid sparks and short-circuits when handling cables and electrical equipment.
	Always keep children away from batteries and electrolyte.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge!

WARNING

Any work on the batteries **must** always be carried out by a qualified workshop.

- Any gases escaping from batteries may be toxic or flammable.
- The substances contained in batteries can be corrosive. If the contents of the battery come into contact with your skin, rinse the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes and then wash with soap. Have the affected area examined by a doctor.

CAUTION

Applies to: mild hybrid drive

- To prevent damage, e.g. due to power surges, components must not be connected to the 48-volt battery terminals and wires.
- Maintenance work must always be carried out by qualified personnel.
- The 48-volt lithium-ion battery must only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends that the work be carried out by a registered Audi workshop, which has trained workshop personnel and all the required tools and parts.
- Never attempt to replace the 48-volt lithium-ion battery yourself. The 48-volt lithium-ion battery in this vehicle must only be replaced with a 48-volt lithium-ion battery from Audi which is supplied explicitly for this vehicle. The use of other 48-volt lithium-ion or lead-acid batteries can cause substantial faults and even the total failure of the electrical system.
- Never make modifications to the lithium-ion battery.
- Never open the 48-volt lithium-ion battery.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

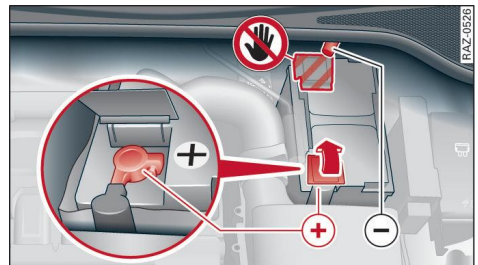








Fig. 162 Engine compartment with battery: Terminals for battery charger or jump leads

Please read the safety information ⇒ *page 241, General information*, ⇒  in *General information on batteries on page 252* and ⇒ .

Important: Only use battery chargers with a **maximum charging voltage of 14.8 V**. The battery cables remain connected. ►

The battery is located in the engine compartment. The earth point  is always on the vehicle's body.

- ▶ Switch off all electrical equipment and the ignition.
- ▶ Open the bonnet \Rightarrow *page 243*.
- ▶ Open the cap on the positive terminal \Rightarrow *Fig. 162*.
- ▶ Connect the charger cables correctly to the positive terminal/jump-start terminal  and the earth point .
- ▶ Connect the battery charger to the mains and switch it on.
- ▶ Keep the bonnet fully open while charging \Rightarrow .
- ▶ After charging the battery: switch off the battery charger and disconnect the mains cable.
- ▶ Now disconnect the charger cables.
- ▶ Close the cap on the positive terminal.
- ▶ Close the bonnet \Rightarrow *page 243*.

WARNING

- Never use unsuitable charging equipment or charging equipment which is visibly damaged and/or dirty. Always check the charging equipment for damage before use.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases may be given off when the battery is under charge. Only charge the battery in a well ventilated area.
- When it is discharged the battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. You must not use a battery which has frozen, even after it has thawed, because the ice may have cracked the battery casing and allowed the electrolyte to escape – risk of explosion and chemical burns! Please seek advice from a qualified workshop.
- Do not connect or disconnect the charging cables during the charging process – risk of explosion!
- Leave the bonnet open while the 12-volt vehicle battery is charging. Closing the bonnet could cause an electrical short circuit – risk of fire!

Note


- Use only the terminals in the engine compartment to charge the battery.
- Important: Before you charge the battery make sure you read the manufacturer's instructions for using the battery charger.

Windscreen washer system



Fig. 163 Engine compartment: Cap of windscreen washer container

Please refer to the safety information \Rightarrow *page 241, General information*.

The container for the windscreen washer  contains the cleaning fluid for the windscreen/rear window and the headlight washer system* \Rightarrow *page 244*. For the container capacity, please refer to \Rightarrow *page 296*.

Clean water should be used when topping up. If possible, use soft water to prevent scaling on the washer jets. Always add washer fluid to the water. In cold weather you should add anti-freeze to the water to prevent it from freezing.

Driver messages

The following driver messages may appear, depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle:

Please add washer fluid

With the ignition switched off, top up the fluid for the windscreen washer and headlight washer system*.

⚠ CAUTION

- The anti-freeze concentration must be matched to the climate of the country in which you are driving. If the concentration is too high, damage to the car may result.
- Never put in radiator anti-freeze or other additives.
- Never use washer fluid which contains paint thinners or solvents as it can damage the paintwork.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when the next service is due for your vehicle.

There are two service interval display levels:

- **Inspection or oil change reminder:** After a certain mileage, a service reminder will appear in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on/off. The distance or time remaining will be shown briefly.
- **Inspection or oil change due:** When your vehicle is due for an inspection, oil change or both, the corresponding reminder **Inspection due!**, **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** will appear briefly after you switch the ignition on/off.

Checking the service intervals

You can check the distance and time remaining until the next oil change and next service inspection.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Service intervals**.

Applies to: vehicles with flexible oil change service

You cannot check the service interval on a new vehicle until it has been driven for about 500 km.

Qualified workshops reset the service interval after the oil is changed. The distance to the next oil change is initially displayed based on the driving profile prior to the oil change. Your own personal driving profile is used subsequently to calculate the remaining distance. Frequent cold starts or short trips place extra demands on the engine oil

with the result that the oil has to be changed more often.

Resetting the display

Your qualified workshop resets the service interval display after each service.

It is very important that you reset the oil change display if you change the oil yourself. The next oil change will be due after a fixed service interval.

Applies to MMI: To reset the display, select the following on the home screen: **CAR > Settings & service > Service intervals**.

⚠ WARNING

If you neglect to have the vehicle serviced promptly at the specified intervals, or if the scope of the servicing work is insufficient, this can lead to a breakdown in road traffic resulting in a potential accident with serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not reset the oil change interval display unless you have changed the oil.
- Regular servicing of the vehicle not only sustains its service life and preserves its value, but also helps to maintain operational and road safety. Service work should therefore always be carried out according to the Audi guidelines.
- Services must always be carried out promptly, even if the mileage is low.
- Audi is not responsible for damage to the vehicle resulting from insufficient servicing or a lack of availability of parts.

Wheels

Tyres and rims

General information

In this Owner's Manual, the term "wheel" refers to the combination of rim and tyre. If only one of the above components is meant, the term tyre or rim is used.

- ▶ Inspect the tyres regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.
- ▶ If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as near as possible at a right angle to the kerb.
- ▶ Damaged rims or tyres must be replaced immediately.
- ▶ Keep grease, oil and fuel off the tyres.
- ▶ Mark the wheels before taking them off so that they rotate in the same direction when refitted.
- ▶ When removed, the wheels should be stored flat in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.



WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum approved speed for your tyres. This causes them to overheat. This can cause a tyre blow-out, which could result in an accident.
- Always adapt your driving style to the prevailing road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tyres lose their grip on black ice.



CAUTION

- Please note that summer and winter tyres are optimised for the prevailing road conditions at different times of year. Audi recommends that you use winter tyres during the winter months. At low temperatures, summer tyres lose their elasticity and grip, and braking performance also suffers as a result. Cracks can form in the tread block on summer tyres if they are used at very cold temperatures, and this can cause permanent damage to the tyres. An increase in

rolling noise and tyre imbalance may result from this damage.

- Machined, polished or chrome-plated rims must not be used in winter conditions. The process used to manufacture these types of wheel rim does not provide adequate surface protection against corrosion, and the rims can be permanently damaged by road salt or similar. This does not apply to rims which are supplied from the factory as complete winter wheels.

Tyre designations

The following example explains certain specifications on the tyre's sidewall:

205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm
 60 Height/width ratio in %
 R Code for tyre type: radial
 16 Rim diameter in inches
 92 Load index
 H Speed rating

Manufacturing date

The manufacturing date may possibly only be indicated on the inner side of the wheel:

DOT ... 2224 ...

means, for example, that the tyre was produced in the 22nd week of 2024.

AO or R0

Tyres with the marking "AO" or "R0" which are specially matched to your Audi are supplied with your vehicle. Provided that they are used properly, these tyres fulfil very high standards in safety and handling. Your specialist retailer will be glad to provide more information.

New wheels or tyres

Audi recommends having all servicing of wheels and tyres performed by a qualified workshop, since they have the necessary special tools and replacement parts in addition to trained personnel.

- New tyres do not yet give maximum grip. When driving with new tyres, drive at moderate speeds and be especially careful during the first 500 km.
- All four wheels must be fitted with tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and preferably the same tread pattern.
- Tyres should be replaced in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together).
- Audi recommends the use of Audi Genuine Tyres. If you wish to use other tyres, please note that the actual size can differ from the nominal size marked on the tyre ⇒ ⚠.
- If you wish to purchase a different combination of rims and tyres than the ones fitted on the vehicle during production, it is advisable to consult a qualified workshop beforehand ⇒ ⚠.

The specifications for the rim/tyre combinations approved for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's documents (e.g. EC Certificate of Conformity or COC document ¹⁾). The vehicle documents vary depending on the country in which the vehicle is registered.

If the spare wheel* is not the same type as the tyres fitted on the car (for example if the car has winter tyres or wide-section tyres) you should only use the spare wheel* if a puncture occurs, and then only for a short period of time. In this case, please drive with extra care. Refit a normal road wheel as soon as possible.

Applies to vehicles with four-wheel drive: All four wheels must always be fitted with tyres of the same type, make and tread pattern, as the driveline could otherwise be damaged by variations in the wheel speeds. For the same reason, only use a spare wheel* which has the same rolling circumference as the normal road wheels.



WARNING

- Use only tyre/rim combinations and matching wheel bolts approved by Audi. Otherwise damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

- For technical reasons, it is not possible to use wheels from other vehicles. In certain cases, it is not even possible to use wheels from another vehicle of the same model.
- It is very important to ensure that the tyres you have chosen have adequate clearance. When selecting replacement tyres, do not rely entirely on the nominal tyre size marked on the tyre; with some makes of tyre the effective tyre size can differ significantly from the nominal dimensions, even though the tyres have the same size designation. Inadequate tyre clearance can result in damage to the tyres or the vehicle, causing a serious safety risk.
- Avoid running the car on tyres that are more than 6 years old. If you have no alternative, you should drive slowly and with extra care at all times.
- The use of run-flat tyres on your vehicle is NOT authorised! Unauthorised use can cause an accident or damage your vehicle.
- If wheel trims are fitted after the car is purchased, ensure that there is an adequate flow of air for cooling the brakes – risk of accident!
- If any of the tyres are incorrectly mounted on the rims, the tyres may be damaged or a blow-out may occur. The tyres must be mounted on the rims by trained personnel – risk of accident!

Tyre wear / damage

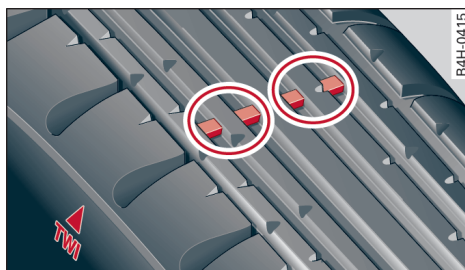


Fig. 164 Tyre tread: Tread wear indicators

¹⁾ COC = Certificate of conformity

Tyre wear

Inspect the tyres regularly for damage.

- The wear on under-inflated or over-inflated tyres is significantly higher.
- Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. If the vehicle is driven in this way, check the tread depth every 5,000 km – 10,000 km.
- If you notice excessive tyre wear, have the wheel alignment checked by a qualified workshop.
- Have your tyres rebalanced if steering wheel vibrations indicate an imbalance. Otherwise, the tyres and other parts of the vehicle may wear faster.

Tread wear indicators

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators ⇒ *Fig. 164* running across the tread at regular intervals. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the sidewall indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

When checking the tread depth, you must check the tread wear indicators across the entire width of all four tyres.

The minimum tread depth¹⁾ is reached at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators. Replace the tyres with new ones ⇒ *△*.

Changing wheels round

Wheels should be changed round regularly to ensure that the wear is equal on all tyres. Fit the wheels from the rear axle on the front axle and vice-versa. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

On tyres with a directional tread pattern, note the direction of rotation indicated on the sidewall ⇒ *page 275*.

Concealed damage

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibrations or the car

pulling to one side, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged. Reduce your speed immediately. Inspect the tyres for damage. If no external damage is visible, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest qualified workshop and have the car inspected.



WARNING

Insufficient tread depth or different tread depths on different wheels reduce safety. This is particularly evident in vehicle handling, when there is a risk of aquaplaning in deep puddles of water and when driving through corners. Braking is also adversely affected – risk of accident!

Tyre pressure

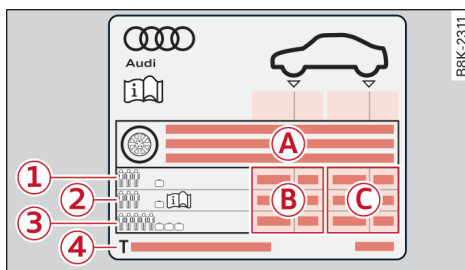


Fig. 165 B-pillar on driver's side: tyre pressure sticker

The correct inflation pressures for tyres fitted at the factory and for the spare wheel* are specified on a sticker. The sticker ⇒ *Fig. 165* is on the B-pillar (driver's side).

- (A) Tyre size
- (B) Tyre pressure for the front wheels
- (C) Tyre pressure for the rear wheels
- (1) Tyre pressure if vehicle is partially loaded
- (2) Tyre pressure (comfort setting)* if vehicle is partially loaded (not available on all vehicles) If a maximum speed is given, it must not be exceeded.
- (3) Tyre pressure if vehicle is fully loaded

¹⁾ Please observe the applicable regulations in the country in which you are travelling.

④ Tyre pressure for the spare wheel*

If you intend to drive the vehicle with a partial load, adjust the tyre pressures to the specified setting ①. However, if you prefer an extra-smooth ride you can select the comfort setting* ②. Should you wish to drive with a full load, you must increase the tyre pressures to the specified maximum ③ ⇒ ⚠.

Checking / adjusting the tyre pressures

- Check the tyre pressures at least once a month and, in addition, before starting a long journey.
- The tyre pressures should only be checked when the tyres are *cold*. The slightly raised pressures of warm tyres must not be reduced.
- Refer to the sticker ⇒ *Fig. 165* for the correct tyre pressures.
- If necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.
- Then store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 262*.
- Check the pressure of the spare wheel*. Keep the spare tyre inflated to the highest pressure approved for the tyre.



WARNING

Always adjust the tyre pressures to match your driving style and the load the vehicle is carrying.

- Excessive loads can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Under-inflation, high speeds and heavy loads require the tyres to flex more, which causes them to overheat. This could cause a tyre blow-out and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Incorrect tyre pressures increase tyre wear and adversely affect vehicle braking and handling – risk of accident!



CAUTION

Replace any lost valve caps to prevent damage to the tyre valves.



For the sake of the environment

- Under-inflated tyres will increase the fuel consumption.

– Driving with the tyre pressures adjusted to the comfort setting* may also result in increased fuel consumption.



Note

Audi recommends always using the tyre pressure setting ① for partial loads and the setting ③ for full loads.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

The wheel bolts should be clean and turn easily.

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim flange* or bolted trim parts* consist of several components. A special technique is applied to bolt these components together. Never attempt to repair or dismantle them ⇒ ⚠.



WARNING

If the wheel bolts have not been tightened or serviced correctly, they can come loose, and you could lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident! For the correct tightening torque, refer to ⇒ *page 275, After changing a wheel*.

- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs are always clean and free from grease.
- Only use wheel bolts that are designed to match the rims on your car.
- Always have damaged rims repaired by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to repair or dismantle rims yourself – risk of accident!


Winter tyres

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. Due to their type of construction (width, rubber compound, tread pattern), summer tyres give less grip on ice and snow.


- Winter tyres must be fitted on all four wheels.
- Only use winter tyres of the correct type approved for your vehicle.

- Please note that the maximum permissible speed for winter tyres may be lower than for summer tyres ⇨ ⚠ in *General information* on page 256. Your specialist retailer can advise you of the maximum speed for your tyres.
- After fitting the wheels you must always check the tyre pressures ⇨ page 258.

Winter tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. The performance of winter tyres is also severely impaired by ageing, even if the tread is still much deeper than 4 mm.

 **For the sake of the environment**

Summer tyres should be fitted again as soon as possible; they give better handling on roads which are free of snow and ice. They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.

 **Note**

All-weather tyres can also be used instead of winter tyres. Please note that winter tyres with the ❄ symbol are required by law during the winter season in some countries.

Snow chains


- Snow chains will improve braking ability as well as traction in winter conditions (snow and ice).
- Snow chains can be used on the front wheels only.
 - Check that the snow chains are correctly seated after driving for a few yards; follow the instructions given by the manufacturer.
 - Keep your speed below 50 km/h. Please observe the applicable local regulations.

For technical reasons, snow chains may only be used on tyres with certain wheel rim/tyre combinations (depending on model version):


Rim size	Rim offset	Tyre size
6.5Jx17	38 mm	215/65

Only use snow chains with **fine-pitch links**. The links must not protrude more than 10.5 mm from the tyres (including tensioner).


You must remove the snow chains on roads which are free of snow; otherwise the vehicle's handling may be impaired and the tyres may be damaged.

 **WARNING**

Unsuitable or incorrectly mounted snow chains can cause you to lose control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

 **CAUTION**

Snow chains can damage the rim/hubcap* if they make direct contact with it. Remove the hubcaps* beforehand. Use snow chains which have a protective coating.

 **Note**

When driving with snow chains, it may help to restrict the ESC ⇨ page 115.

Low-profile tyres

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a lower sidewall and provide a wider tread surface and rim diameter than other wheel and tyre combinations. This makes the car's handling more agile. However, the ride may be less comfortable on poor-quality roads and tracks, and rolling noise may be louder.

Low-profile tyres can be damaged more quickly than standard tyres, for example by heavy jolts, potholes, manhole covers and kerbs. It is therefore particularly important to ensure that they are inflated to the correct pressure ⇨ page 258.

Drive with particular care on poor-quality roads to ensure that you do not damage the rims and tyres.

Make sure to check your wheels regularly (every 3,000 km) for damage such as blisters/tears on the tyre sidewalls or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy jolt, or if any damage occurs, you should have the rims and tyres checked and if necessary replaced by a qualified workshop.


Tyre wear occurs more quickly on low-profile tyres than on standard tyres.

Tyre pressure loss indicator

Tyre pressure loss indicator in instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

The tyre pressure loss indicator in the instrument cluster informs the driver if the tyre pressure is too low or a system malfunction has occurred.



The tyre pressure loss indicator makes use of the ABS sensors to compare the rolling circumference and the vibration of the tyres. If changes in the inflation pressure are detected on one or more tyres, the driver is alerted by an indicator lamp  and a message in the instrument cluster display. If only one tyre is affected, the display will indicate its position.


Each time you change a tyre, change the wheels round or change the tyre pressures on your vehicle (e.g. when switching from partial load to full load and vice-versa), you must store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 262*. Monitoring of the tyre pressures is based on the tyre pressures you have stored. The inflation pressures recommended for your vehicle are given on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ *page 258, Fig. 165*.

The rolling circumference and vibration can change and cause a tyre pressure warning if:

- The inflation pressure in one or more tyres is too low.
- The tyres have suffered structural damage.
- The wheels were changed or the tyre pressures were changed and the new tyre pressures were not stored ⇒ *page 262*.
- Only some of the worn tyres have been replaced.


Indicator lamps

If the indicator lamp  lights up, there is a loss of pressure on one or more tyres ⇒ . Check the tyre(s) and change them if necessary. Check and adjust the inflation pressures of all four tyres again and store the new tyre pressures ⇒ *page 262*.

If the indicator lamp  flashes and an acoustic signal is issued although you have not yet stored

the new tyre pressures, drive to an authorised workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

TPMS Tyre pressure: fault. See owner's manual

If **TPMS** appears and the indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display flashes for approx. one minute and then remains lit after you have switched on the ignition or while you are driving, there is a fault in the system. Try to store the correct tyre pressures ⇒ *page 262*. In some cases the indicator lamp may not go out until you have driven the vehicle for a few minutes after storing the pressures. If the indicator lamp does not go out or if it comes on again after a short time, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the fault rectified.

WARNING

- If the tyre pressure loss indicator appears on the display, slow down immediately and avoid any severe braking or steering manoeuvres. As soon as you can do so safely, stop and check the tyres and the tyre pressures.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the tyre pressures are correct. For this reason you must check the tyre pressures regularly.
- Under certain conditions (e.g. driving at high speeds, on ice and snow or on poor road surfaces) the tyre pressure loss indicator may not appear immediately.

Note

- If a malfunction occurs in the ESC system, the tyre pressure loss indicator may also be out of action.
- When driving with snow chains, a system malfunction may occur.
- The tyre pressure loss indicator on your Audi is specially matched to "Audi Genuine Tyres" ⇒ *page 256*. Audi recommends that you use these tyres.

Storing tyre pressure settings

Applies to: vehicles with tyre pressure loss indicator

When you change a tyre or the tyre pressure on your vehicle, you must confirm the change on the system.

- Before storing the new tyre pressures, check that the current pressures on all four wheels correspond to the specified values and adapt the pressures to the current load ⇒ *page 258*.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Tyre pressure > Store tyre pressures > Yes, store now**.



Note

Do not store the tyre pressures if you are driving with snow chains.

Care of vehicle and cleaning

General information

Regular and careful care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for upholding any warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

The required car care products are available from Audi dealers or specialist retailers. Please follow the instructions for use on the packaging.



WARNING

- Cleaning products and other materials used for car care can damage health if misused.
- Car care products can contain toxic substances and must always be kept in a safe place out of reach of children.

Washing the vehicle

The longer residues like insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap or road salt are allowed to remain on the vehicle, the more damage they can do to the paintwork. High temperatures (for instance in direct sunlight) further intensify the damage.

Before washing, soak heavy dirt with plenty of water.

Stubborn dirt, such as bird droppings or resinous tree sap, is best removed with plenty of water and a micro-fibre cloth.

After the period when salt is put on the roads, have the underside of the vehicle washed thoroughly.

High-pressure cleaners

When cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, always follow the operating instructions for the equipment. This applies particularly to the operating pressure and the spraying distance. Do not point the spray jet directly at the seals on the windows, doors, boot lid, bonnet or sunroof*, or at the tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material, sensors* or camera lenses*. Maintain a distance of at least 40 cm.

Do not use a high-pressure cleaner to remove snow and ice.

Never use high-pressure cleaners with a round-jet nozzle or "dirt blasters".

The water must not be hotter than 60 °C.

Automatic car washes

Spray the vehicle with water before washing.

Ensure that the windows and sunroof* are closed and that the windscreen wipers are switched off. Ensure that the car is free to roll while it is being washed in a tunnel car wash. Follow the car wash operator's rules and recommendations, especially if any accessories are attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use a brushless car wash.

Washing by hand

Clean the car with a soft sponge or brush, starting on the roof and working down. Use solvent-free cleaning agents.

Washing matt-painted vehicles by hand

To avoid damaging the paintwork when washing the car, first remove any dust, sand and grit. Insects, grease stains and fingerprints are best removed using a special cleaning agent for matt-painted surfaces.

Apply the product with a micro-fibre cloth. Do not apply too much pressure to avoid damaging the paintwork.

Rinse the car thoroughly with water. Then clean the car with a neutral shampoo and a soft micro-fibre cloth.

Rinse the car with plenty of water again and then let it dry in the air. Remove any water stains with a chamois.




WARNING

- Follow the rules and recommendations of the car wash operator and do not wash the vehicle with the ignition switched on – risk of accident!
- To avoid cutting yourself on sharp metal parts, always wear suitable protection when


cleaning the underside of the car or inside the wheel arches.

- After the car has been washed, the full braking effect can be delayed by moisture (or in winter by ice) on the discs and brake pads – risk of accident! The brakes should be dried by pressing the pedal to restore full braking effect.

 **CAUTION**

- Before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, please make sure to retract the exterior mirrors to prevent damage. Always use the electrical power control to fold the mirrors in/out on vehicles with electrically retractable exterior mirrors*.
- Compare the track width of your vehicle with the distance between the guide rails for the wheels in the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the wheel rims and tyres.
- Compare the height and width of your vehicle with the available height and width when entering and driving through the car wash. Otherwise there may be a risk of damaging the vehicle.
- Please ensure that there is sufficient ground clearance in tunnel car washes ⇒ *page 112*. The vehicle could otherwise become lodged on the guide rails – risk of damage!


- Improper use of high-pressure cleaners can cause damage to the vehicle. Never point a water jet at electric/electronic components when cleaning the engine compartment. These could be seriously damaged by the pressure or by exposure to water and could fail as a result.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight – otherwise the paint can be damaged.
- The decals* must not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner – risk of damage!
- Do not use insect sponges or abrasive household sponges, etc. – they can damage the surfaces.
- Matt-painted vehicle parts:
 - Do not use polish or wax – otherwise the paintwork can be damaged.
 - Never use car-wash programmes that include wax coatings. This could spoil the matt finish.
 - Do not attach any stickers or magnet labels to matt-painted parts as these could damage the paintwork when they are removed.

 **For the sake of the environment**

The car should only be washed in special wash bays. This prevents oily water from getting into the public drains.

Information on cleaning and care

For cleaning and care of individual components on the vehicle, please refer to the tables below. These are recommendations only. If you have

special questions or certain components are not listed, please ask your qualified workshop. Please also refer to the notes ⇒ .

Cleaning the exterior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Wiper blades	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇒ <i>page 59</i>
Headlights/ rear lights	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Sensors/ camera lenses	Dirt/deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning agent Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning agent
	Snow/ice	Small brush/solvent-free de-icer spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free cleaning agent

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Tailpipes	Road salt	Water; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Trim/mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; suitable stainless steel cleaning product if necessary
Rubber seals	Dirt/deposits	Micro-fibre cloth with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Frost	Protect the seals on the doors/bonnet/boot lid/flaps, etc. against freezing with suitable care products
Paintwork	Fuel overflow	Rinse with water without delay
	Surface rust	Surface rust remover, apply wax afterwards; contact your qualified workshop with any questions
	Corrosion	Have it removed by your qualified workshop
	Water no longer pearls off clean paintwork	Apply wax (at least twice a year)
	Paint has lost its shine, gloss cannot be restored by waxing	Treat with a suitable polish; finish with wax coating if polish does not contain wax compounds
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as painted parts → <i>page 263</i>
Decals	Dirt/deposits	Soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Residues, e.g. insects, bird droppings, resinous tree sap, road salt	Remove immediately using water and a micro-fibre cloth
	Fat-based stains, e.g. cosmetics or sun lotion	Remove immediately using mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth
	Fuel overflow	Remove immediately using a soft cloth and then with mild detergent ^{a)} and a soft cloth

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water

Cleaning the interior

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Windows	Dirt/deposits	Glass cleaning agent, then wipe dry
Trim/mouldings	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)}

Component(s)	Situation	Remedy
Plastic parts	Dirt/deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} ; solvent-free plastic cleaning agent if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Dirt/deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner; dust deposits in the lower area of the instrument cluster can be removed with a soft brush
Controls and displays	Dirt/deposits	Soft brush, then soft sponge with mild detergent ^{a)}
Seat belts	Dirt/deposits	Mild detergent ^{a)} (allow to dry before retracting)
Fabrics, leatherette, microfibre	Surface dirt	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild detergent ^{a)}
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Apply mild detergent ^{a)} , dab off dissolved grease or colour particles with absorbent cloth; if necessary treat with water
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Special stain remover (dab off with absorbent fabric); if necessary treat with mild detergent ^{a)}
Natural leather	Fresh dirt/stains	Cotton cloth with mild detergent ^{a)}
	Water-based stains, e.g. coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Fat-based stains, e.g. oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and suitable stain remover for leather Dried stains: grease removal spray
	Special dirt/stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, dispersion paint, shoe cream, etc.	Stain remover suitable for leather
	Care of vehicle	Regularly apply leather-care cream with ultra-violet protection and impregnating compound; if necessary use special colour leather cream
Carbon parts	Dirt/deposits	Same treatment as plastic parts

^{a)} Mild detergent: not more than two tablespoons of pH-neutral detergent to one litre of water



WARNING

Do not use water-repellent coatings on the windscreen. In bad visibility conditions such as light rain, low sun or when driving at night these coatings can cause increased dazzle,

which is a serious safety hazard. Such coatings can also cause the wiper blades to judder.



CAUTION

– Headlights/rear lights

- Never clean the headlights/rear lights with a dry cloth or sponge – risk of damage!
- Do not use cleaning agents containing alcohol. This could cause the glass to crack!

– **Wheels**

- Do not use paint polish or other abrasive agents.
- If the protective paint coating on the wheel rim is scratched or damaged by stone chips etc., the damaged area should be touched up without delay.

– **Camera lenses**

- Never remove snow and ice from the camera lens using warm or hot water – danger of cracks appearing on the lens.
- Never clean the camera lens with cleaning agents which are abrasive or contain alcohol – danger of scratches and cracks.

– **Windows and windscreen**

- Remove snow and ice from windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper only. To avoid scratches, the scraper should only be pushed in one direction and not moved to and fro.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- To avoid damaging the heating element, do not put stickers on the inner side of the rear window.

– **Ornamental trim/mouldings**

- Do not use chrome cleaning agents.

– **Rubber seals**

- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products – risk of damage!

– **Paintwork**

- The vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before applying polish/wax – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.
- Do not polish/wax the vehicle in direct sunlight – this can damage the paint!
- Do not attempt to polish out surface rust deposits – this can damage the paint!
- Remove cosmetics and sun lotion immediately – otherwise the paintwork may be damaged.

– **Decals**

- Do not clean the decals with a high-pressure cleaner as this could cause them to come loose.
- Do not use any powder-based or abrasive cleaning products – risk of damage!
- Do not polish decals – risk of damage!
- Do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice from windows to which decals have been applied – this could damage the decals.

– **Displays/instrument cluster**

- Before cleaning, ensure that the displays and the instrument cluster are switched off and cool. To switch off the centre display, select the following on the home screen of the MMI: **SETTINGS > Display & brightness > MMI > Screen cleaning**.
- The displays/instrument cluster and the surrounding trim must not be cleaned with a dry cloth – this can scratch the surfaces!
- Do not let any liquid get between the instrument cluster and the trim – risk of damage!

– **Control consoles**

- Do not let any liquid get inside the control consoles – risk of damage!

– **Seat belts**

- Do not remove the seat belts to clean them.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents, corrosive liquids, solvents or sharp instruments to clean the seat belts or their components – this can damage the belt webbing!
- If you find any damage to the belt webbing, the belt fittings, the belt retractor or the buckle, have the belt in question replaced by a qualified workshop.

– **Fabrics/leatherette/microfibre**

- Do not use leather care products, solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leatherette/microfibre fabrics.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a qualified workshop.

- Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
- Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
- Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
- Please make sure you close any velcro fasteners, e.g. on your clothing, as these could otherwise damage the upholstery.
- **Natural leather**
 - Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, stain removers, or any similar products on leather fabrics.
 - Sharp-edged objects on clothing, such as zip fasteners, rivets or belts, can also damage the surface of the fabric.
 - Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges or similar utensils.
 - Do not use the seat heating* to dry the seats.
 - Avoid exposing leather to direct sunlight for long periods, otherwise it may tend to lose some of its colour. If the car is left for a prolonged period in the bright sun, it is best to cover the leather.

Note

- It is much easier to remove dead insects if the car has been waxed recently.
- Regular waxing can help protect against surface rust.
- The decals undergo an ageing process (e.g. becoming brittle) due to various environmental factors. Excessive exposure to sunlight may cause irregularities in the colouring of the decals.

Taking the vehicle out of service

If you wish to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an Audi dealer or other qualified workshop. They can give you advice on the measures necessary, depending on where and for how long the vehicle is to be kept out of service.

Mobility

General information

- ▶ If your vehicle experiences technical problems, stop the car well away from moving traffic. If you have a flat tyre, you should park the car on a level surface. Be particularly careful if you are on a slope.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Switch the hazard warning lights on.
- ▶ Put on your high-visibility vest.
- ▶ Place the warning triangle in a visible location.
- ▶ Instruct all passengers to leave the car when it is safe to do so. They should wait in a safe place (for instance behind the roadside crash barrier).



WARNING

Please note the procedure described above. This is for your own safety and that of other road users.

Equipment

High-visibility vest

Applies to: vehicles with high-visibility vest

The factory-supplied high-visibility vests are located in the storage compartment in the driver's door.

In some countries, the high-visibility vests may be stowed elsewhere.

Warning triangle

Applies to: vehicles with warning triangle



Fig. 166 Boot lid: Warning triangle

The factory-supplied warning triangle is attached to the inside of the boot lid.

- ▶ To open the cover, turn the catch ⇒ Fig. 166 and fold down the cover.
- ▶ Pull the warning triangle out of the retainer.

The retainer on the boot lid is specifically designed to hold the warning triangle supplied as an Audi Genuine Accessory.



WARNING

Always stow the warning triangle safely in the plastic case after use and secure it in the holder. Otherwise it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

First-aid kit

Applies to: vehicles with first-aid kit

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the first-aid kit is located either in the left or the right side compartment in the luggage compartment.

Fire extinguisher

Applies to: vehicles with fire extinguisher

The factory-fitted fire extinguisher is accommodated in the front passenger's footwell.

In some countries, the fire extinguisher may be stowed elsewhere.

- ▶ Open the strap to remove the fire extinguisher.
- ▶ To secure the fire extinguisher, put it in the holder and fasten the strap.

Check how the fire extinguisher works before you need to use it. The instructions for use are shown on the fire extinguisher.



WARNING

If the fire extinguisher is not secured properly it could be catapulted through the vehicle during driving and braking manoeuvres or in the event of an accident. This poses a risk of injury to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must be replaced with a new one after use or once it has reached its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher must comply with legal requirements.

Toolkit / tyre repair kit / jack

Applies to: vehicles with toolkit, tyre repair kit and jack



Fig. 167 Luggage compartment: Floor panel and vehicle toolkit

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the tools, jack*, tyre repair kit* and compressor* are stored either under the floor panel in the luggage compartment or in the vehicle toolkit ① in the right side compartment.

- Lift up the floor panel by the plastic handle until it is fixed in position behind the retaining tabs on the two side sections.
- If necessary, lift out the intermediate section.

Applies to: vehicles with spare wheel/bass box

- Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise.
- Remove the bass box* ⇒ *page 275*.
- Take out the spare wheel*.

Note

The jack* in your vehicle is maintenance-free.

Tyre repair kit

Preparations

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Please refer to the important safety information ⇒ *page 269*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.


- Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- Check whether a repair is possible using the tyre repair kit ⇒ *page 270*.

Using the tyre repair kit

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 168 Tyres: Irreparable tyre damage

Repaired tyres are only suitable for temporary use. Replace the damaged tyre as quickly as possible ⇒ .

If the tyre was damaged by an object, such as a nail, do not remove it from the tyre.

The tyre repair kit can be used at outside temperatures down to – 20 °C.

The tyre repair kit must NOT be used:

- On cuts and punctures larger than 4 mm ①
⇒ *Fig. 168*.
- If the wheel rim has been damaged ②.
- If you have been driving with very low pressure or a completely flat tyre ③.

In this case, you should seek professional assistance.

WARNING

- Please note that the tyre repair kit is not suitable for use in every situation and should only be used as a temporary measure.
- Do not allow the sealant to come into contact with your eyes, skin or clothing.
- If you do come into contact with the sealant immediately rinse the eyes or skin affected with clean water.
- Make sure you do not breathe in the fumes. ►

- If you accidentally swallow tyre sealant, immediately rinse your mouth thoroughly and drink a large amount of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical assistance immediately.
- Change clothing immediately if it becomes soiled with the tyre sealant.
- If any allergic reactions should occur, seek medical assistance immediately.
- Keep the sealant away from children.



For the sake of the environment

Batteries and electric/electronic equipment must be disposed of appropriately
⇒ page 299, *Information on waste disposal*.



Note

- If sealant should leak out, leave it to dry. When it has dried, you can pull it off like a piece of foil.
- Please note the expiry date on the tyre sealant container. If necessary, have the tyre sealant replaced by a qualified workshop.
- Interference to the radio reception may occur when using the compressor.
- Always adhere to the locally applicable laws and regulations.

Tyre repairs

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit



Fig. 169 Tyres: Filling the tyre

Important: The tyre repair kit must be at hand and ready for use ⇒ page 270.

Filling the tyre

- ▶ Shake the tyre sealant container well.

- ▶ Screw the enclosed filling hose onto the sealant can as far as it will go. This will automatically pierce the foil sealing the can.
- ▶ Take the valve cap off the tyre valve and use the enclosed valve insert tool to unscrew the valve insert ⇒ Fig. 169.
- ▶ Place the valve insert onto a clean surface.
- ▶ Remove the sealing plug from the filling hose and insert the hose into the tyre valve.
- ▶ Hold the tyre sealant container upside down and fill the complete contents into the tyre.
- ▶ Then disconnect the filling hose and screw the valve insert firmly back into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre

- ▶ Screw the compressor hose (from the tyre repair kit) onto the tyre valve and plug the connector into an electrical socket in the vehicle.
- ▶ Pump the tyre up to 2.0 to 2.5 bar and monitor the pressure shown on the pressure gauge.
- ▶ If this tyre pressure cannot be reached, remove the filler hose. Drive 10 metres forward or backward at low speed so the sealant can spread evenly in the tyre. Now pump the tyre up again ⇒ ⚠.



WARNING

- Please observe the manufacturer's safety notes on the compressor and the instructions supplied with the tyre sealant container.
- If it was not possible to build up a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar within 10 minutes, this means that the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.
- Seek professional assistance if it is not possible to repair a tyre puncture with the sealant.



Note

Do not use the compressor for longer than 10 minutes at a time, as it could overheat. When the compressor has cooled down, you can use it again.

After repairing a tyre

Applies to: vehicles with tyre repair kit

- Affix the sticker "max. 80 km/h", which is included in the tyre repair kit, to the dashboard where the driver will see it.
- After about 10 minutes, stop to check the tyre pressure.
- If tyre pressure is less than 1.3 bar, the tyre is too badly damaged. Do not drive on.

WARNING

After repairing a tyre please note the following points:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering.
- Vehicle handling could be impaired.
- If the tyre is too badly damaged, you should seek professional assistance.

For the sake of the environment

A used tyre sealant container can be returned to your qualified workshop for disposal.

Note

After repairing a tyre, remember to buy a new tyre sealant container at a qualified workshop.

Changing a wheel

Preparations

Certain preparations must be made before you change the wheel.

- Please refer to the important safety information ⇒ *page 269*.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Manual gearbox: Engage first gear.
- Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position P.
- If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.
- Take out the tools ⇒ *page 270* and spare wheel ⇒ *page 275*.
- Switch off the ignition.

WARNING

When using the jack*, block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed by placing suitable objects underneath both the front and rear of the wheel to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Removing covers



Fig. 170 Wheel: Wheel bolts with caps

Applies to vehicles with wheel bolt caps:

- Slide the plastic clip (provided in the vehicle toolkit) onto the wheel bolt cap until it engages ⇒ *Fig. 170*.
- Pull off the cap using the plastic clip.

Applies to vehicles with wheel covers:

- Pull off the wheel cover by hand.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft wheel bolts

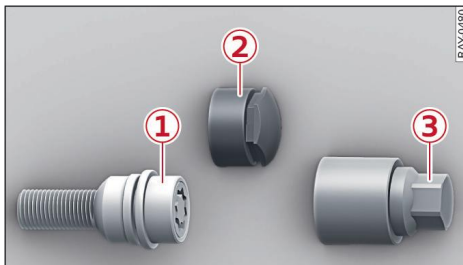


Fig. 171 Anti-theft wheel bolt with wheel bolt cap and adapter

To remove the anti-theft wheel bolts, you need a special adapter (provided in the vehicle toolkit).

- Remove the cap ②.

- ▶ Slide the adapter ③ all the way onto the anti-theft wheel bolt ①.
- ▶ Fit the box spanner* (provided in the vehicle toolkit) as far as it will go over the adapter ③.
- ▶ Loosen the wheel bolt ⇒ *page 273*.

i Note

Note the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – not in your vehicle. If you need a replacement adapter, give the code number to your Audi dealer.

Loosening wheel bolts



Fig. 172 Wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

- ▶ Fit the box spanner* (provided in the vehicle toolkit) as far as it will go over the wheel bolt¹⁾.
- ▶ Turn the wheel bolt approx. one turn anti-clockwise. To apply the necessary torque, hold the box spanner* near the end. If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner* carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.



WARNING

To avoid accidents, the wheel bolts should only be loosened slightly (one turn) before raising the vehicle with the jack*.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack

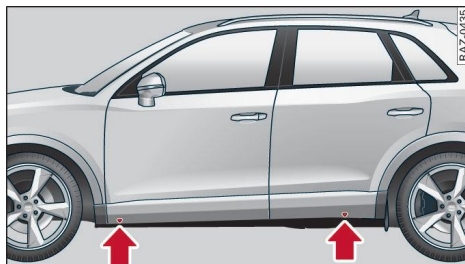


Fig. 173 Sills: markings

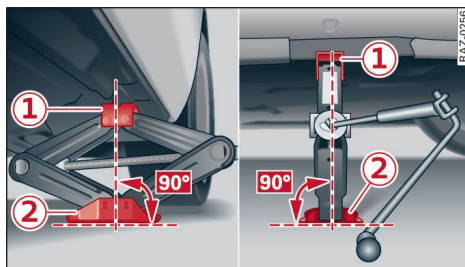


Fig. 174 Door sill: Applying the jack under the door sill

- ▶ Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground (the jack can be found in the vehicle toolkit). If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇒ ⚠.
- ▶ Locate the marking on the door sill closest to the wheel being changed ⇒ *Fig. 173*. The jacking point is located behind the marking on the door sill.
- ▶ Wind up the jack underneath the jacking point on the door sill until the claw of the jack ① completely surrounds the seam on your vehicle.
- ▶ Align the jack so that its claw ① fits around the seam and the base plate of the jack ② is flat on the ground. The base plate ② must be positioned vertically underneath the jacking point ①.
- ▶ Now fit the crank handle onto the jack by inserting it in the opening on the knob. Turn the ▶

¹⁾ An adapter is required to unscrew or tighten the anti-theft wheel bolts* ⇒ *page 272*.

crank handle clockwise or anti-clockwise to secure it in place.

- Raise the vehicle by winding the crank handle until the defective wheel is clear of the ground.

WARNING

- Ensure that no one is in the vehicle before you lift it – risk of injury!
- Make sure the jack is stable. If the ground underneath the jack is slippery or soft, the jack can slip or sink in – risk of injury!
- Use only the jack supplied with your vehicle to raise the vehicle. If you use a jack from a different vehicle, your vehicle may slip off the jack – risk of injury!
- Apply the jack only at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill and align it properly. Otherwise there is a risk of injury since the jack can slip off suddenly if it is not properly engaged.
- Do not use the jack provided with the vehicle to lift any other vehicles or loads – risk of injury!
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is on the jack – risk of accident!
- Do not work under the vehicle when it is on the jack – risk of injury!

CAUTION

The vehicle must not be lifted up on its sills. Only apply the jack at the jacking points located behind the markings on the door sill. Otherwise your vehicle could be damaged.

Taking off / putting on a wheel

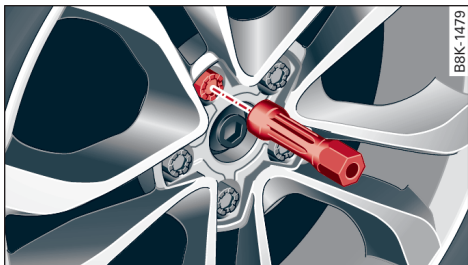


Fig. 175 Wheel: Hexagonal socket for turning wheel bolts

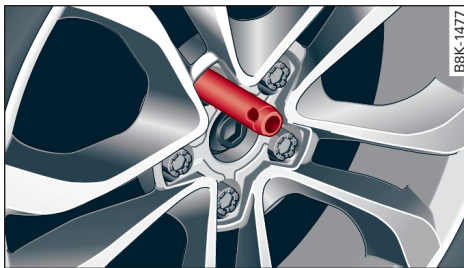




Fig. 176 Wheel: Mounting pin in wheel bolt hole nearest to the top

Taking off the wheel

- Using the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle (provided in the vehicle toolkit), unscrew the top wheel bolt and place it on a clean surface ⇒ Fig. 175.
- Screw in the mounting pin (provided in the vehicle toolkit) by hand in place of the wheel bolt ⇒ Fig. 176.
- Then unscrew the other wheel bolts.
- Take off the wheel ⇒ . The mounting pin stays where it is.

Putting on the wheel

When putting on a tyre with directional tread pattern, refer to ⇒ page 275.

- Ensure that the wheel bolts and threads on the wheel hubs are clean, turn easily and are free of oil and grease.
- Put on the wheel, using the mounting pin to guide it into place ⇒ .
- Screw in the wheel bolts and tighten them lightly using the hexagonal socket.
- Then unscrew the mounting pin and tighten the remaining wheel bolt lightly.
- Carefully lower the car with the jack*.
- Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence with the box spanner*.

WARNING

- Please observe the important safety information and notes on ⇒ page 256.
- Do not use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten the wheel bolts. It is not possible to tighten the bolts

to the required torque using the hexagonal socket – risk of accident!

⚠ CAUTION

When removing/fitting the wheel the rim may hit and damage the brake disc. For this reason, please take care and get a second person to assist you.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

A directional tread pattern can be identified by arrows on the sidewall that point in the direction of rotation. Always note the direction of rotation indicated when mounting the wheel. This is important so that these tyres can give maximum grip and avoid excessive noise, tread wear and aquaplaning.

To benefit from the advantages of tyres with this type of tread pattern, the defective tyre should be replaced and refitted as soon as possible so that all tyres again rotate in the correct direction.

After changing a wheel

- ▶ Fit the wheel bolt caps back on, as required.
- ▶ Put the tools and jack back in their correct storage location.
- ▶ If the replaced wheel will not fit into the spare wheel well, stow it safely in the luggage compartment ⇒ *page 81*.
- ▶ Check the tyre pressure of the fitted wheel as soon as possible.
- ▶ Adjust the tyre pressure and store it ⇒ *page 262*.
- ▶ The wheel bolts should be tightened to 140 Nm. Have this checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench. Until then, drive with caution.
- ▶ Have the flat tyre replaced as quickly as possible.

Spare wheel

Removing the bass box

Applies to: vehicles with bass box

You must remove the bass box before you can take out the spare wheel/temporary spare wheel*.*

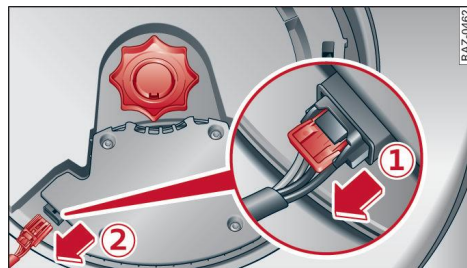


Fig. 177 Spare wheel well: Bass box

Removing the bass box

- ▶ Pull out the red connector catch ①.
- ▶ Unplug the connector ② and move the disconnected cable clear to one side.
- ▶ Turn the plastic knob anti-clockwise.
- ▶ Carefully take out the bass box.

Installing the bass box

- ▶ Carefully place the bass box in the well of the rim. Make sure that the inscription “FRONT” on the bass box points to the front of the vehicle.
- ▶ Plug the connector back in again.
- ▶ Secure the bass box with the knob.

Compact temporary spare wheel

Applies to: vehicles with compact temporary spare wheel

The compact temporary spare wheel is only intended for temporary use over short distances. After use, have it checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop and, if necessary, replaced.

Please note the following restrictions when using the compact temporary spare wheel. The compact temporary spare wheel is designed specifically for this model. For this reason, do not use a spare wheel from a different type of vehicle.

The compact temporary spare wheel is stowed under the floor panel in the luggage compartment ⇒ *page 270*.

The tyre pressure must be adjusted to the value listed on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ *page 258, Fig. 165.*

Snow chains

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Should you have a puncture on one of the front wheels when using snow chains, fit the compact temporary spare wheel in place of one of the rear wheels. You can then attach the snow chains to the wheel taken from the rear and use this wheel to replace the punctured front wheel.

WARNING

- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel – an incorrectly inflated tyre can increase the risk of accident.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h when the compact temporary spare wheel is fitted – higher speeds can cause an accident.
- Avoid heavy acceleration, hard braking and fast cornering when the temporary spare wheel is fitted – risk of accident!
- Never use two or more compact spare tyres at the same time – risk of accident!
- No other type of tyre (normal summer or winter tyres) may be fitted on the compact temporary spare wheel.

Jump-starting

Preparations

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

If the engine fails to start because of a discharged battery, you can use another vehicle to start the engine. Suitable jump leads are required.

Both vehicle batteries must be rated at 12 volts. The capacity (Ah) of the booster battery should not be significantly lower than that of the discharged battery.

Jump leads

The jump leads must be heavy enough to carry the starter current. Refer to the details given by the manufacturer.

Only use jump leads with insulated battery clamps.

Positive cable – usually red.

Negative cable – usually black.

WARNING

- When it is discharged the vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures around 0 °C. A frozen vehicle battery must first be thawed out before connecting the jump leads – risk of explosion and chemical burns! After jump-starting the vehicle, drive to a qualified workshop without delay and have the vehicle battery checked.
- Note the safety warnings referring to working in the engine compartment ⇒ *page 241.*
- Incorrect handling of the jump leads may result in the vehicle battery exploding (risk of serious injury).
- Do not lean over the vehicle battery – risk of chemical burns!

CAUTION

If the jump leads are not connected correctly this can result in serious damage to the vehicle's electrical system.

Note

- There must be no contact between the two vehicles as otherwise current could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected. This would discharge the boosting battery.
- The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Switch off any electrical equipment you do not need.

Jump-starting the vehicle

The two jump leads must be connected in the correct sequence.

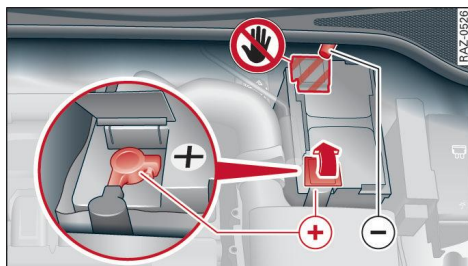


Fig. 178 Engine compartment: Terminals for jump leads or battery charger

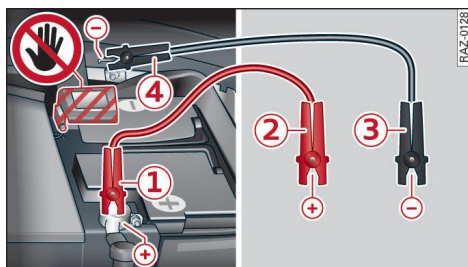


Fig. 179 Connecting jump leads

The terminals for the jump leads are located in the engine compartment.

Please observe the general information on the vehicle battery ⇒ page 251.

Connecting the positive terminals with the positive lead (red)

- Open the cap on the positive terminal
⇒ Fig. 178.
- 1. Connect one end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ① on your vehicle's battery ⇒ Fig. 179.
- 2. Connect the other end of the positive lead (red) to the positive terminal ② on the power source.

Connecting the negative terminals with the negative lead (black)

- 3. Connect one end of the negative lead (black) to the negative terminal ③ on the power source.

- 4. Connect the other end of the negative lead (black) to the earth point ④ on your vehicle.

Starting the engine


- Start the engine of the vehicle providing the electricity and let it run at idling speed.
- Now start the engine of your vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine fails to start: do not operate the starter for longer than 10 seconds. Wait for about 30 seconds and try again.
- Switch on the rear window heating on your vehicle (this will dissipate any voltage peaks which may occur when you disconnect the jump leads). The headlights must be switched off.
- With the engines running, disconnect the leads in the opposite sequence to how they were connected.
- Close the cap on the positive terminal.

⚠ WARNING

- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle: this can cause short circuits.
- The sealing caps on the battery cells must not be opened.
- Keep sparks, flames and lit cigarettes away from vehicle batteries: the gases given off can cause an explosion.
- Position the jump leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment of the other vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the negative battery terminal when jump-starting (this could cause a malfunction in the onboard electrical system).
- Please note that the above method of connecting the leads is intended for jump-starting your vehicle.

 **Note**

Connect the jump leads so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

Towing away

General information

You should not attempt the following steps unless you are in possession of the necessary equipment and have the skills required.

Towing requires some experience. Audi recommends contacting a towing service to have the vehicle taken away.

You should only have your broken-down vehicle towed away by another vehicle in exceptional circumstances. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle.

Information on towing vehicles

When the engine is not running, the gearbox will not be adequately lubricated if the following speed/distance restrictions are not observed:

- The vehicle must not be towed faster than 50 km/h.
- The vehicle must not be towed further than 50 km.

Additional notes on towing by breakdown truck

If one of the axles has to be raised in order to tow the vehicle, please refer to the following table to determine the appropriate axle for your gearbox/drive combination. Do not wrap any kind of chain or rope around the brake lines.

	Front-wheel drive	Four-wheel drive
Manual gearbox	Front or rear axle	Front or rear axle
Automatic gearbox	Front axle	Front axle

Four-wheel drive: If the vehicle is to be towed with one of the axles raised, the ignition must be

switched off; otherwise the drive train can be damaged.

Tow-bar / tow-rope

The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or tow-rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing, particularly if a tow-rope is used.


Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing off-road, there is always a risk that the anchorage points may be overloaded.

It is easier and safer to tow the vehicle with a tow-bar. You should only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar. It is advisable to use a tow-rope made of elastic synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.


Notes on tow-starting

Automatic gearbox: For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started.

Manual gearbox: As a general rule, tow-starting is not recommended. If the engine will not start, it is best to try starting it using the battery of another vehicle ⇨ *page 276* before attempting to tow-start the vehicle. If this is not possible, you can try to push-start or tow-start the vehicle ⇨ *page 279, Tow-starting*.

 **WARNING**

- There is a high risk of accidents when towing, as the towed vehicle can easily be driven into the towing vehicle.
- There must not be anyone in the vehicle if it vehicle is taken away by a breakdown truck or a special car transporter – risk of accident!
- Never secure the tow-bar or tow-rope to any part of the vehicle's axles or suspension as these could be damaged and lead to accidents and severe injuries.

 **CAUTION**

- If it is not possible to tow the vehicle as described above (e.g. due to a gearbox failure or if the vehicle has to be towed further

than 50 km), it must be transported on a special car transporter or trailer.

- Towing a vehicle with the wrong axle raised can cause serious damage to the gearbox.

Note

- Automatic gearbox: It is not possible to move the selector lever out of transmission position P if the electrical power supply fails. Before the vehicle can be recovered/ manoeuvred you must manually release the parking lock ⇒ *page 99*.
- Switch Audi pre sense* off ⇒ *page 155* if the vehicle is being loaded onto a car transporter, train or ferry, etc. or being towed away. This prevents the pre sense* system from taking action in an inappropriate situation.
- Please observe the relevant local regulations when towing away.

Towing away

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇒ *page 278*.

Preparations


- ▶ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorages provided for this purpose ⇒ *page 280*, ⇒ *page 280*.
- ▶ Please ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted as it could otherwise unscrew the towline anchorage while the vehicle is being towed.
- ▶ The hazard warning lights of both vehicles must normally be switched on ⇒ *page 54*. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

Towing vehicle (front)

- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope is taut before you drive off.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Engage the clutch very slowly when starting to move.
- ▶ Accelerate with particular care.
- ▶ Avoid unnecessary braking and manoeuvres.

Vehicle being towed (rear)

- ▶ Ensure that the ignition is switched on, the steering wheel is not locked, and that you can

operate the turn signals, horn or windscreen wipers if necessary ⇒ .

- ▶ Otherwise you may not have the full benefit of the brake servo and power steering. You may need more strength to steer and brake the vehicle than you normally would.
- ▶ Release the parking brake ⇒ *page 106*.
- ▶ Manual gearbox: Put the gear lever in neutral.
- ▶ Automatic gearbox: Select transmission position N.
- ▶ Ensure that the tow-rope remains taut at all times when towing.




WARNING

- If the vehicle has no electrical power, do NOT use a tow-bar or tow-rope to tow the vehicle.
- If the power supply should fail while the vehicle is being towed, stop towing immediately and seek professional assistance.

Tow-starting

Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox

Please observe the important safety warnings on ⇒ *page 278*.

Important: Your vehicle must be fitted with a manual gearbox. If your vehicle has a petrol engine, it must not be towed further than 50 metres ⇒ .

- ▶ Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing anchorage provided for this purpose ⇒ *page 280*.
- ▶ Engage second or third gear before moving off.
- ▶ Press the clutch and hold the pedal down.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Once both vehicles are moving, release the clutch.
- ▶ As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch pedal and put the gear lever in neutral.



CAUTION

When tow-starting the vehicle, do not tow it further than 50 metres; otherwise the catalytic converter could be damaged.

Front towline anchorage

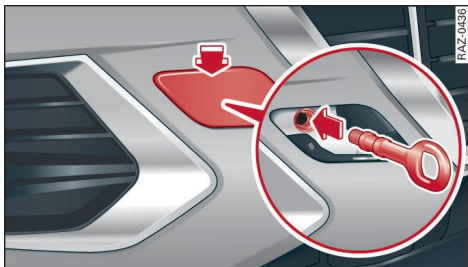


Fig. 180 Front bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

The screw connection for the towline anchorage is located on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 270*.
- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards briefly ⇒ *Fig. 180*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Rear towline anchorage

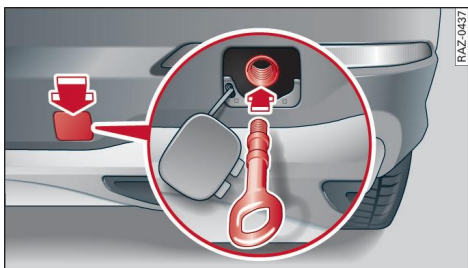


Fig. 181 Rear bumper: Fitting the towline anchorage

Vehicles with towline anchorage

Vehicles which do not have a factory-fitted towing bracket* have a connection for a towline anchorage on the right side of the rear bumper.

- ▶ Take the towline anchorage out of the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 270*.
- ▶ Firmly press the cap inwards briefly at the top or bottom (varies according to model) ⇒ *Fig. 181*. The cap will be released from the bumper.
- ▶ Screw the towline anchorage as tightly as possible into the mounting. To do so, use a suitable tool that enables the towline anchorage to be screwed tightly all the way into the mounting.
- ▶ Put the towline anchorage back in the vehicle toolkit after use.

Vehicles with towing bracket*

- ▶ Swivel out the towing bracket ⇒ *page 118*.
- ▶ Attach the tow-bar or the tow-rope to the towing bracket.

Vehicles which have a factory-fitted towing bracket* do **not** have a screw connection at the rear for the towline anchorage.

WARNING

If the towline anchorage is not screwed in as far as the stop, there is a risk of the screw connection shearing off during towing – risk of accident!

CAUTION

To avoid damaging the towing bracket*, only use tow-bars with suitable attachments. If a tow-bar is not available, a tow-rope may be used.

Note

On some models, the shape of the cap can vary.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Changing fuses

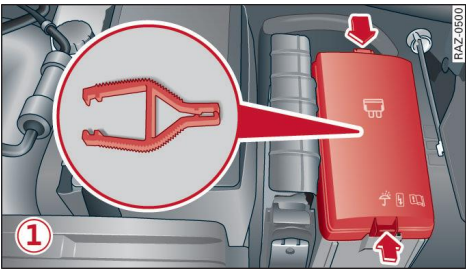


Fig. 182 Engine compartment (left side): Fuse cover ①

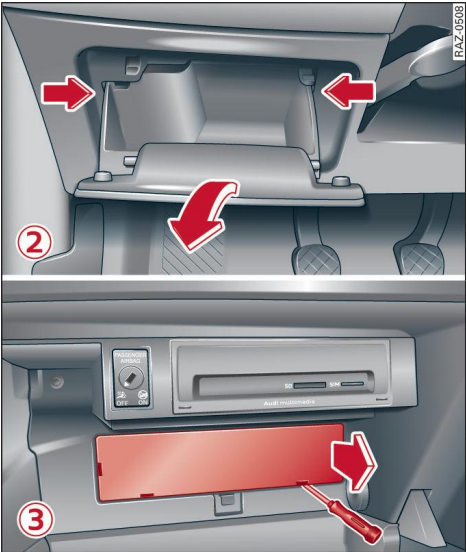


Fig. 183 Dash panel (left side): Storage compartment (left-hand drive vehicles) ② / glove box (right-hand drive vehicles) ③

There are fuses fitted in various locations in your vehicle. The information below includes only those fuses that you can replace yourself. Should any other fuses need to be replaced, please contact a qualified workshop. Free fuse locations are not shown in the tables below.

To see whether a fuse has blown, check whether the metal strip has melted.

The fuses are located in the engine compartment (left side) ①, behind the storage compartment on the left side of the dash panel ② (on left-hand drive vehicles) or in the glove box ③ (on right-hand drive vehicles).

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▶ Refer to the following tables to identify the fuse for the affected component.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver out of the vehicle toolkit → page 270.
- ▶ Remove the appropriate cover.
- ▶ Take the clip from the inside of the fuse cover ①.
- ▶ Use the clip to pull out the fuse.
- ▶ Blown fuses should always be replaced with a fuse of the same ampere rating.
- ▶ Put the cover back on.


Colour coding for fuses

Colour	Rating in amperes
black	1
grey	2
purple	3
pink	4
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red (narrow)	10
light blue	15
yellow	20
white or transparent	25
light green	30
blue-green	35
orange	40
red (wide)	50




WARNING

Never attempt to repair a fuse or replace a blown fuse by fitting a fuse with a different ampere rating. This could damage the electrical system – risk of fire!

 **CAUTION**

If a newly replaced fuse blows again after a short time, the electrical system must be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

 **Note**

Some of the items of equipment listed in the tables below are only fitted on certain models or are optional extras.

Fuses in engine compartment

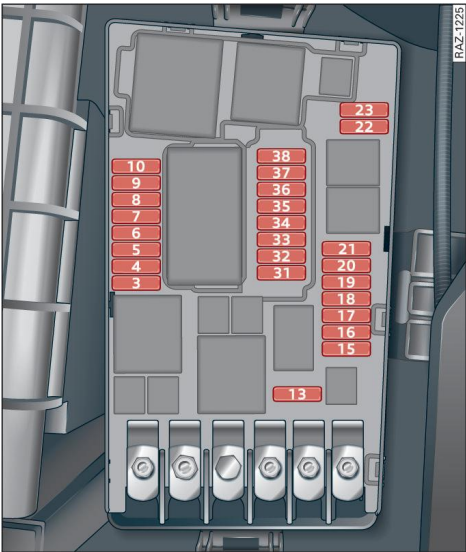


Fig. 184 Engine compartment (left-side): Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
3	Drive system control unit
4	Engine components, engine start
5	Engine components
6	Brake light sensor
7	Engine components
8	Oxygen sensors
9	Engine components
10	Fuel pump
13	Gearbox oil pump
15	Horn

No.	Electrical equipment
16	Engine components, engine electronics
17	Electronic stabilisation control (ESC), drive system control unit
18	Battery monitoring control unit, diagnostic interface
19	Control unit for wipers
20	Anti-theft warning system, garage door opener
21	Automatic gearbox
22	Drive system control unit
23	Engine start
31	Engine components, injectors
35	Air conditioner
36	Left headlight
37	Auxiliary heating
38	Right headlight

Fuses – dash panel

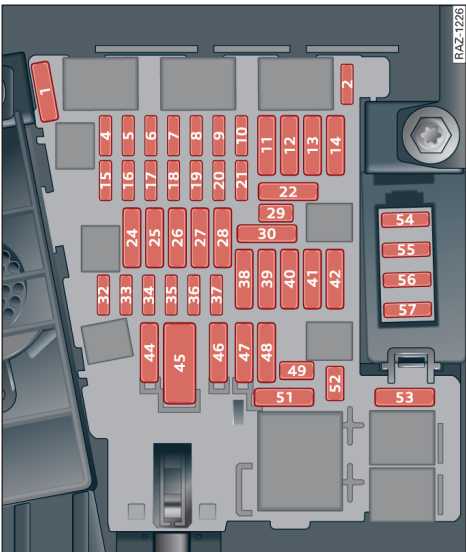


Fig. 185 Dash panel (left side): Fuse layout

No.	Electrical equipment
1	Emission control
2	Seat electronics (front seats)
5	Diagnostic interface

No.	Electrical equipment
6	Safety lock for ignition key, selector lever (automatic gearbox)
7	Auxiliary heater, A/C control console, tyre pressure loss indicator
8	Headlight range control, interior monitor, background lighting, light switch, control unit for roof electronics, emergency call module, parking brake, diagnostic connection, light/rain sensor, particulate sensor
9	Steering column electronics
10	Infotainment system, MMI control dial
11	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
12	Infotainment system
13	Belt tensioners (driver's side), airbag control unit
14	Air conditioner blowers
15	Electronic steering column lock
16	Audi phone box, electronic toll collection system (ETC)
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call and communication control unit
18	Reversing camera, surround view cameras
19	Control unit for convenience access and start authorisation
20	Emission control, fuel leak diagnostics
21	Steering column electronics
24	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
25	Door control unit (driver's side), electric window motor (rear left), door control unit (rear left)
26	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
27	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
29	Control unit for roof electronics, control unit for vehicle electrical system
30	48 V battery
32	Driver assist systems, camera systems
33	Seat electronics (passenger's seat), control unit for roof electronics
34	A/C components, parking brake, reversing light, engine sound control unit


No.	Electrical equipment
35	Air quality sensor, diagnostic connection, centre console switch module, interior mirror, headlight range control, instrument lighting
39	Door control unit (front passenger's side), electric window motor (rear right), door control unit (rear right)
40	12-volt socket
41	Belt tensioners (front passenger's side)
42	Control unit for vehicle electrical system
44	Control unit for four-wheel drive
45	Seat electronics (driver's side)
47	Rear window wiper
49	Engine start, clutch position sensor
52	Suspension control
53	Rear window heating
54	Towing bracket (left lights)
55	Trailer recognition control unit
56	Towing bracket (right lights)
57	Electrical socket for towing bracket

Bulbs

General information

LED lights are maintenance-free and cannot be changed. For repairs, please contact a qualified workshop.

You should only change bulbs yourself if you have the skills required.

If you decide to change bulbs in the engine compartment yourself, be aware of the safety risks involved ⇒  in *General information on page 242*.

WARNING

- Take particular care when working on components in the engine compartment if the engine is warm – risk of burns!
- Bulbs are sensitive to pressure. The glass can break when you touch the bulb, causing injury.

– When changing bulbs, please take care not to injure yourself on sharp edges, in particular on the headlight housing.

CAUTION

- Always switch off the ignition before carrying out any work on the electrical system – danger of short circuiting!
- Switch off the lights or parking lights before you change a bulb.
- Take good care when changing bulbs to avoid damaging any components.
- Never use metal tools or sharp or pointed plastic tools to lever out the rear light – this can damage the paint!
- Make sure you have a soft cloth ready to place under the glass on the rear light, to avoid any scratches.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare hands; use a cloth or paper towel instead. Otherwise, the fingerprints left on the glass will vaporise as a result of the heat generated by the bulb, be deposited on the reflector and impair its surface.
- Removing the rear light in particular can lead to the paintwork or rear light becoming damaged. This is another reason why Audi recommends having the bulbs changed by a qualified workshop.
- Make sure that the covers are correctly seated on the headlights and the rear lights. This will ensure that water cannot enter the housings and cause the lights to malfunction.

For the sake of the environment

A qualified workshop can advise you how to dispose of used bulbs in the proper manner.

Note

- Please check at regular intervals that all lighting (especially the exterior lighting) on your vehicle is functioning properly. This is not only in the interest of your own safety, but also in that of all other road users.
- Before changing a bulb, make sure you have the correct new bulb.

Bulbs at front of vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with LED headlights and turn signals with bulbs

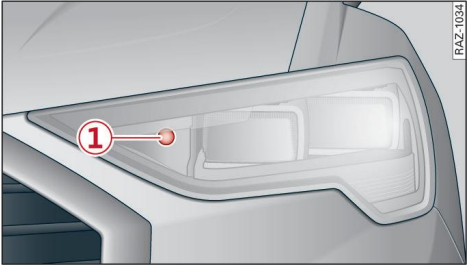


Fig. 186 Headlight: Turn signal

You must only replace a bulb with a bulb of the same type. Information regarding e.g. the wattage can be found on the bulb.

The description for changing the bulb refers to the left headlight; the procedure for the right headlight is similar.

The following bulb can be changed, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

Bulb (12 V)	Version
① Turn signal	PWY24W

Bulbs at rear of vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

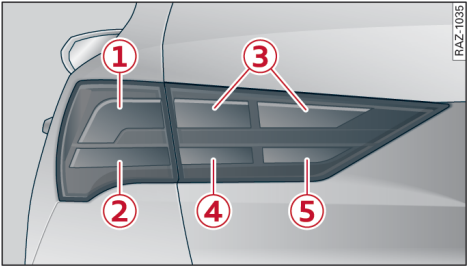


Fig. 187 Rear lights: Overview of bulbs

You must only replace a bulb with a bulb of the same type. Information regarding e.g. the wattage can be found on the bulb.

The description for changing the bulb refers to the left rear light unit; the procedure for the right rear light unit is similar.

The following bulbs can be changed, depending on the vehicle's equipment:

Rear lights (body panel)

Bulb (12 V)	Version
① Tail/brake/side lights	P21W
② Turn signal	PY21W

Rear lights (boot lid)

Bulb (12 V)	Version
③ Tail light	W5W
④ Reversing light ^{a)}	W16W
⑤ Rear fog light ^{a)}	H21W

^{a)} On right or left, depending on country

Changing turn signal bulb in headlight

Removing the cover

Applies to: vehicles with LED headlights and turn signals with bulbs

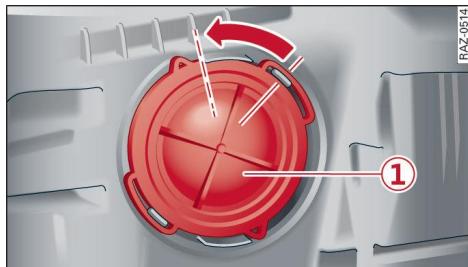


Fig. 188 Headlight: Cover for turn signal

- Switch off the ignition and the lights.
- Open the bonnet ⇒ ⚠ in *General information on page 283*.
- Turn the headlight cover ① anti-clockwise as far as the stop and remove it.
- Change the bulb for the turn signal ⇒ *page 285*.
- Put the cover back on.
- Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing bulb for turn signals

Applies to: vehicles with LED headlights and turn signals with bulbs

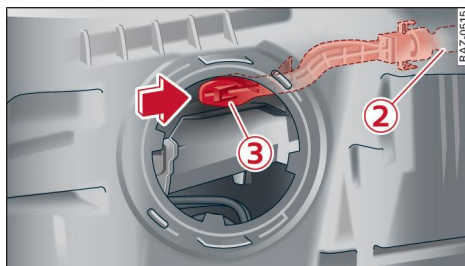


Fig. 189 Headlight: Bulb and handle

- To remove the bulb ②, push the handle ③ slightly in the direction of the arrow.
- Carefully pull the handle with the bulb out of the housing.
- Pull the defective bulb out of the holder ⇒ ⚠ in *General information on page 283*.
- Push the new bulb into the holder so that it is securely seated.

Changing bulbs for rear lights

Removing and installing rear lights (side panel)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

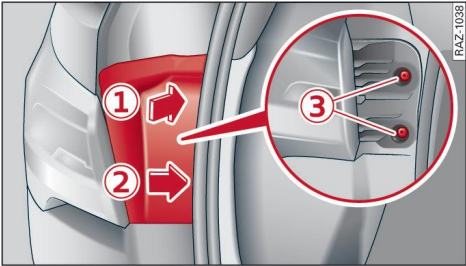


Fig. 190 Side panel: Removing cover

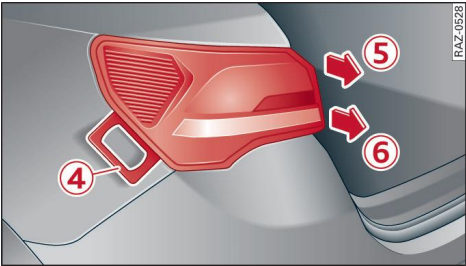


Fig. 191 Side panel: Removing rear light

- Check which of the bulbs is defective.
- Switch off the ignition and the lights
⇒ *page 283*.
- Open the boot lid.
- Take the screwdriver, the interchangeable Torx bit and the removal wedge out of the vehicle toolkit ⇒ *page 270*.
- To remove the cover, press it away by hand forwards ① and to the side ②.
- Remove the securing screws ③ using the Torx screwdriver.
- Carefully slide the removal wedge ④ into the gap between the body and rear light.
- Gradually pull out the rear light by pulling alternately in direction of arrows ⑤ and ⑥ until it is released.
- Unplug the electrical connector.
- Change the defective bulb ⇒ *page 286*.
- Re-install all the parts in the reverse sequence.
- Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing the bulbs (side panel)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

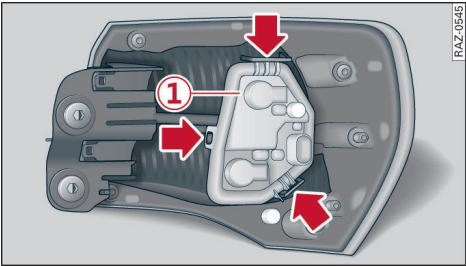


Fig. 192 Rear light: Clips on bulb carrier

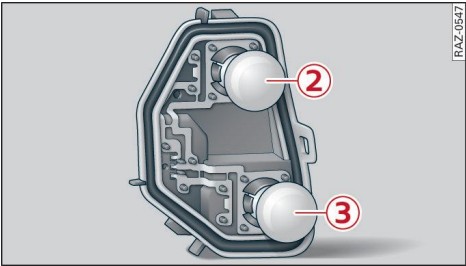


Fig. 193 Bulb carrier: Position of the bulbs

- Remove the rear light ⇒ *page 286*.
- Release the clip on the bulb carrier ① and remove it.
- Turn the defective bulb to remove it from the bayonet holder ⇒ ⚠ in *General information on page 283*.
- Turn the new bulb into the bayonet holder so that it is securely seated.
- Attach the bulb carrier to the housing. The clips should click into place audibly.

Position	Bulb function
②	Tail/brake/side lights
③	Turn signal

Removing and installing rear lights (boot lid)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

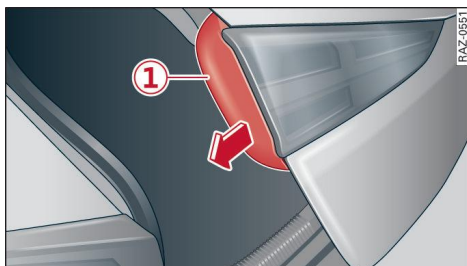


Fig. 194 Boot lid: Removing the cover

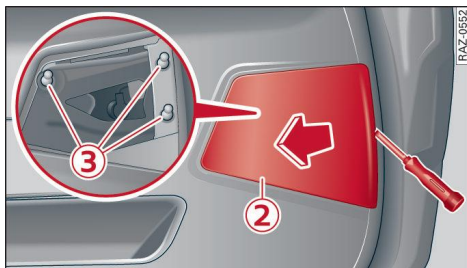


Fig. 195 Boot lid: Removing the rear lights

Commercially available tools, such as a ratchet and socket, are required in order to remove/install the rear lights. These should be placed within reach before starting the work.

- ▶ Check which of the bulbs is defective.
- ▶ Switch off the ignition and the lights
⇒ *page 283*.
- ▶ Open the boot lid.
- ▶ Take the screwdriver out of the vehicle toolkit
⇒ *page 270*.
- ▶ Release the cover ① by pulling it forwards by hand.
- ▶ Remove the cover ② by levering the screwdriver carefully upwards.
- ▶ Loosen the nuts ③.
- ▶ Unplug the electrical connector.
- ▶ Carefully take the rear light unit out of the boot lid.
- ▶ Change the defective bulb ⇒ *page 287*.
- ▶ Re-install all the parts in the reverse sequence.
- ▶ Check whether the new bulb is working.

Changing the bulbs (boot lid)

Applies to: vehicles with bulbs

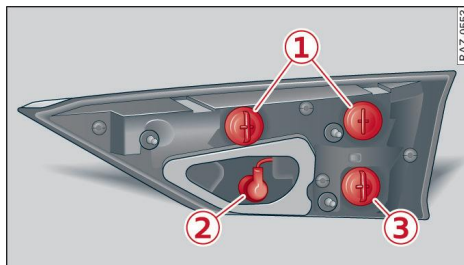


Fig. 196 Rear light: Position of bulbs

- ▶ Remove the rear light ⇒ *page 287*.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder with the bulb anti-clockwise as far as the stop.
- ▶ Pull the bulb holder with the bulb out of the housing.
- ▶ Pull the defective bulb out of the plug-in holder or turn it to remove it from the bayonet holder
⇒ ⚠ *in General information on page 283*.
- ▶ Plug the new bulb into the plug-in holder or turn it to secure it in the bayonet holder.

Position	Bulb function
①	Tail light
②	Rear fog light ^{a)}
③	Reversing light ^{a)}

^{a)} On right or left, depending on country

Data protection

Information on data protection

Further information can be found online on your regional Audi site or the MMI in your vehicle.

Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select: **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.**


Image recording

Monitoring of surroundings

Applies to: vehicles with monitoring of surroundings

Certain vehicle functions require the detection and evaluation of the path travelled by the vehicle. For this purpose, permanently installed cameras detect objects in the area in which the vehicle is moving (e.g. obstacles, barriers). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the relevant control unit to do this.

The images from the camera are not recorded or stored. They are immediately transmitted to the relevant control unit in the vehicle for processing. The control unit analyses the current image from the camera using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software determines anonymous technical dimensions, such as the distance to objects. This control unit evaluates these technical dimensions and may allow the supporting systems to control the vehicle.

 **Note**

The live images from the cameras and the anonymous technical dimensions are stored for a few seconds in the short-term memory. They do not allow any conclusions to be drawn on the identity of persons or vehicles.

Memory

Vehicle control units


Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. During normal driving, these vehicle control units store data which workshops require for

diagnosis and repairs. This involves only certain data which are collected or stored for a very limited time when a control unit registers a system event. No sounds, conversations or images from the vehicle are stored.

The data may be related e.g. to the vehicle's speed, direction of travel and brake system, or to the behaviour of the restraint systems in the event of an accident. Reading out and downloading the stored data requires special devices that must be connected directly to the vehicle.

Onboard diagnostic system (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connection for reading out various control units and the event memory located in the driver's footwell. Information regarding the operation and status of the vehicle's electronic control units is stored in the event memory. The event memory should only be read out and erased by a qualified workshop.

 **WARNING**

- Improper use of the connection socket for the onboard diagnostic system can lead to malfunctions which could result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only have the data read out by a qualified workshop.

Event data recorder

Event data recorder

Your vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of the EDR is to make it possible to reconstruct how the systems in the vehicle behave in accident situations. To this end, the EDR stores relevant data (e.g. seat belt status, speed, airbag parameters, time of accident etc.) pertaining to a period of a few seconds before an accident. This only occurs in accident or near-accident situations.

These data can help to better understand the circumstances in which accidents and injury occur. Please note that data from your vehicle will only be stored in the event of an accident or a near-accident situation. No data will be stored in normal driving conditions. Furthermore, no personal

data on the occupants or the accident location will be stored. It is possible, however, that third parties, e.g. law enforcement agencies, may correlate the stored data with personal data as part of an accident investigation.

Reading out data from the EDR memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the EDR. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the EDR. Audi will not access the recorder remotely.

Assist system monitor

This vehicle is equipped with an assist system monitor (ASM). The ASM records data that are not stored by the EDR in the event of an accident. The main purpose of the ASM is to make it possible to reconstruct the role and behaviour of driver assist systems in accident situations. In addition to the data stored by the EDR, the ASM stores data related to the driver assist systems from a period of a few seconds before an accident or near-accident situation. The data recorded by the ASM will depend on the vehicle's equipment and may comprise information such as: status information from the driver assist systems (e.g. switched on/off, system events etc.), regulating input (e.g. from ESC, ABS, Audi pre sense etc.) and driver assist system settings (e.g. speed settings).

Reading out data from the ASM memory requires special devices and access to the vehicle or the ASM. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third parties such as law enforcement agencies can also read out and analyse the stored data, provided that they have access to the vehicle or the ASM.

Use of data

Audi can read out or provide third parties with the information stored in the data recorders or other similar data in the following circumstances in particular:

- If the vehicle keeper or lessee gives their permission; or

- If the police have made an official request; or
- If ordered to do so by a court of law or government agency.

Audi may, insofar as this is legally permitted, also use the data for analysis with respect to vehicle operation and safety performance, or may provide the data to third parties for research purposes.

Information transmitted

Data collection

Applies to: vehicles with data collection

Depending on the country, Audi can access the vehicle and collect data for the following purposes, for example:

- Data collection for research and development
- Data collection for statistics, analyses and reporting purposes
- Data collection for personalised assessments

The data collected and sent to Audi for these purposes may include, for example, various data regarding technical functions, environmental data, driving data and usage data. The data are sent from the vehicle at the time they are collected.

Further information can be found on the MMI. On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect**.

If you wish to change the data collection settings, please contact an Audi dealer for further information. Depending on the country and the vehicle's equipment, you may be able to change the data collection settings in the privacy settings.

Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **SETTINGS > Privacy**.
- Further information on the privacy settings and the corresponding symbols can be displayed in the status bar by pressing ⓘ on the MMI.

Important: The ignition must be switched on. ►

Maximum privacy setting

When the **Activate privacy** function is switched on, the data connection will be deactivated or the transmission of data restricted, because all safety-related Audi connect services and all Audi connect services required by law or contract will remain activated. The majority of Audi connect services will be deactivated.

When this function is switched off, the data connection will be available for the use of Audi connect services. After deactivating the **Activate privacy** function, you should check the individual data categories as described under *Individual privacy settings*.

Individual privacy settings

You can use individual MMI settings to determine which data are transmitted from the vehicle. Data will be transmitted if you switch on a data category.

You can also deactivate individual services for your vehicle at my.audi.com when you are logged in to the vehicle as the key user ⇒ *page 37*. These deactivated services will not be available in the vehicle. For more information, please refer to my.audi.com.

CAUTION

Please note that it is your responsibility to take precautions regarding data protection, anti-virus protection and protection against loss of data on mobile devices used to connect to the internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Note

- The following interfaces are not affected by changes to the privacy settings: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi, smartphone interface, Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC) and onboard diagnostic system (OBD).
- When maximum privacy is switched on, your vehicle will not receive safety updates or certificates for establishing an encrypted connection, depending on the vehicle equipment. To receive safety updates and certi-

ates, switch maximum privacy off for at least ten minutes every three months. Ensure that your vehicle is connected to the internet. A symbol in the status bar of the MMI indicates whether the necessary data connection exists ⇒ *page 24*.

- If data transmission is restricted, this has the following effects on the data transmitted by the Audi connect services and the emergency call function, if fitted.
 - The emergency call function remains available in its entirety and data will still be transmitted.
 - No data will be transmitted if an online roadside assistance call is activated; however a telephone call will be placed.
 - If the geofencing alert, speed alert and valet alert services have been activated by the key user, these remain available without restrictions and data continue to be transmitted.
 - Stored destinations (favourites, last destinations, etc.) will only be stored in the vehicle. If you allow data transmission again, these destinations will be synchronised with your myAudi account. If you do not want these destinations to be synchronised, delete them before you allow data transmission again.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect infotainment

Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you provide in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the individual Audi connect infotainment services are provided and function properly. You can use our myAudi platform, for example, to activate further Audi connect infotainment services and to transfer data to and from your vehicle. You must register once in order to be able to connect your vehicle to the platform. Audi collects, processes, transmits and uses the personal data you must provide for the registration as is necessary to ensure that Audi can provide the services and that you can use them. Using the myAudi platform and your mobile phone, you can transmit data to your ►

vehicle for the functions of your Audi connect infotainment services and allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from your vehicle.

If you activate certain information services included in your Audi connect infotainment portfolio, you can use the corresponding functions directly in your vehicle after entering your personal identification data (for example for access to social networks). In this case Audi passes on your identification data to the corresponding service provider. You can then access your personal content via a secure communication channel. This content is displayed and can be used in the vehicle. Audi will not store your personal content. The necessary connection data are processed and used in accordance with legal requirements to ensure that the services are provided and function properly.

Further information can be found online at your regional Audi site or on the MMI by selecting the following on the home screen: **SETTINGS > General > Legal information > About Audi connect.**

Accessories and modifications to the vehicle

Maintenance, repairs and modifications to the vehicle

Please read the safety information ⇒ *page 241, General information* and ⇒ *page 273, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

The increasing complexity of vehicle technology and the applicable safety and environmental regulations mean that your options for performing repairs and making adjustments to your vehicle yourself are very limited.

Proof of servicing may be a condition for a claim within the guarantee/warranty period to remain valid.

Have work on your vehicle performed by a qualified workshop. This will help ensure that the functions, performance and safety of your vehicle are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to require as little maintenance as possible. However, a certain amount of regular servicing work is necessary to ensure that your vehicle remains safe, cost-efficient and reliable. Please contact a qualified workshop for precise information on vehicle maintenance.

Certain servicing work should also be performed between the specified intervals in severe operating conditions, such as extremely low temperatures or in areas with a high dust concentration.

Special tools, measurement instruments and other workshop equipment available to qualified workshop staff are usually required for servicing work or repairs. These guarantee that your vehicle and all its systems will function properly and be both reliable and safe. If work is not performed correctly, this may affect the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may even invalidate any claims you may wish to make under the guarantee/warranty.

Technical changes

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components, software, wiring or data transfer in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. Due to the way the electronic components are linked together in networks, systems which are not directly affected may also be impaired by the faults. This can seriously impair your vehicle's safety and lead to excessive wear of its components.

Depending on the country, this may also invalidate the vehicle's type approval. Qualified workshops have full information on the manufacturer-approved repair methods. They can also give advice regarding official regulations for the vehicle.

Some convenience features, such as one-touch signalling, single door unlocking and display messages can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If any functions are reprogrammed, the information in this Owner's Manual may no longer be relevant for the functions that have been changed. Audi recommends having the reprogramming carried out and approved by a qualified workshop.



WARNING

- There is a risk of accident if servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle are not performed properly. The functioning of the airbags, the driver assist systems and the vehicle may be impaired. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- There is a risk of accident if work on the vehicle is not performed properly. Serious injuries may occur as a result. Have work on the vehicle performed by a qualified workshop.
- Please read the safety information on the engine compartment ⇒ *page 241*.



CAUTION

- If servicing work, repairs, painting or technical changes to the vehicle (e.g. installation of additional parts) are not performed properly, this can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. corrosion).

- If emergency repairs have been performed, have your vehicle checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Audi cannot assume any liability for damage to the vehicle caused due to these conditions not being adhered to.



For the sake of the environment

- You can play your part in looking after the environment through regular vehicle maintenance.
- Technical changes to the vehicle can have a negative effect on both the fuel consumption and the emissions.



Note

Because of your vehicle's aluminium body concept, all servicing, repairs or other work on the car body must be carried out by an Audi workshop or a qualified workshop working to the specifications of the Audi factory. This ensures that the necessary repairs or servicing are performed properly and that only Audi Genuine Parts are installed on your vehicle. Serious damage (e.g. corrosion damage) can be caused to your vehicle if non-genuine replacement parts or accessories are used or if repairs are not performed properly.

Accessories and replacement parts

Introduction

Take advice from a qualified workshop before purchasing accessories and replacement parts.

Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Parts and Audi accessories. Audi cannot judge the reliability and suitability of products that are not Audi Genuine Parts or assume responsibility for them, even if they have been approved by an officially recognised technical testing authority or by the relevant authorities.

Have all work performed by a qualified workshop. Audi recommends having all work performed by a qualified Audi workshop.

Any **retrofitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must bear the approval symbols for the respective countries (e.g. **e** mark in the European Union) and must be approved for use in your vehicle. A cruise control system is an example of this type of equipment.

Any **additional electrical equipment** which is connected, but which does not serve to control the vehicle itself, must bear the declarations of conformity for the respective countries (e.g. the **CE** symbol in the European Union). Examples of such equipment include refrigerator boxes, computers or ventilator fans.

Transmitters

An external aerial installed properly is required in order to operate radio transmitters inside the vehicle. If this is not the case, the increased electromagnetic radiation can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Please observe the relevant local regulations and follow the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Qualified workshops will be able to inform you about options for installing and operating radio transmitters.



WARNING

- The use of non-approved accessories or the wrong replacement parts can cause damage to the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Never secure accessories (such as telephone brackets or cup holders) on airbag cover panels or in the areas around the airbags; this could cause injury if the airbag is triggered.
- When replacing a factory-fitted front number plate holder, the new holder must be of the same size and material as the original one. On vehicles without a factory-fitted front number plate holder, a holder must not be fitted in the front area, as this can impair the function of the vehicle's systems.

Position for a toll device on the windscreen

Commercially available, radio-based equipment (such as toll devices) can be attached to the inside of the windscreen to the right of the interior mirror base. The surface must be clean and free of dust and grease.

- Applies to vehicles with heat-resistant glass: Attach the sticker approx. 6 cm away from the top edge of the glass and approx. 1 cm to the right of the black dot matrix pattern.
- Applies to vehicles with windscreen heating or insulated glass: Attach the sticker to the window panel provided.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle data sticker

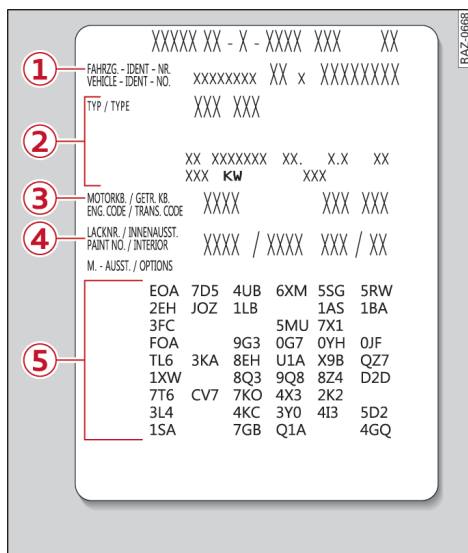


Fig. 197 Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker is located on the inside cover of the printed Owner's Manual.

The sticker lists the following data:

- ① Vehicle identification number (chassis number)
- ② Vehicle type / engine capacity / engine power / gearbox type
- ③ Engine and gearbox code

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (mm)	Width (mm)	Width across mirrors (mm)	Height, unladen (mm)
Q3	4485 - 4495	1849 - 1853	2024	1594 - 1633
Q3 Sportback	4500 - 4518	1843 - 1853	2022	1545 - 1584

- ④ Paint No. / Interior equipment No.
- ⑤ Optional equipment codes

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (chassis number) can be found at the following locations, depending on your country:

- On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Car information**.
- On the vehicle data sticker
- At the front of the vehicle underneath the windscreen*
- Stamped in the front right footwell under the carpet

Type plate

Vehicles have a type plate in certain countries. The type plate is bonded onto the right door frame.

Explanation of technical data

The figures for some markets may vary due to special equipment as well as different country versions and test methods.

Please note that the details listed in the vehicle's registration documents can be taken as correct.

Note

In cases where technical data are not listed, the figures were not available at time of publication.

Capacities

	Approximate capacities (litres)
Fuel tank ^{a)}	58 / 60 ^{b)}
AdBlue tank ^{c)}	18
Windscreen washer system	3.3
Windscreen/headlight washer system	4.8

- a) The amount of fuel that can be added is lower than the full capacity due to remaining fuel in the tank.
- b) The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.
- c) The capacity may be smaller for technical reasons when filling via a filler nozzle. The capacity may be smaller for technical reasons in cold ambient conditions.

Weights

Roof load

Applies to: vehicles with roof carrier mountings

The maximum permissible roof load is 75 kg.

ulation 1230/2012. Optional equipment may increase the kerb weight, in which case the permitted loading capacity is reduced accordingly.

The values in the tables below are given in kg.

Kerb weight, gross vehicle weight, axle loads

The vehicle's kerb weight including the driver (75 kg) was calculated in accordance with EU reg-

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
Q3 35 TFSI	1570 / 1525 ^{a)}	2025 – 2070 / 2000 – 2045 ^{a)}	1070 / 1040 ^{a)}	1030 – 1080 / 1030 – 1080 ^{a)}
Q3 35 TDI	1655 / 1630 ^{a)}	2110 – 2155 / 2090 – 2130 ^{a)}	1145 / 1120 ^{a)}	1030 – 1095 / 1030 – 1095 ^{a)}
Q3 35 TDI quattro	1735	2205 – 2250	1180	1080 – 1150
Q3 40 TFSI quattro	1695	2160 – 2200	1150	1080 – 1135
Q3 40 TDI quattro 142 kW	1735	2205 – 2250	1180	1080 – 1150
Q3 40 TDI quattro 147 kW	1735	2205 – 2250	1180	1080 – 1150
Q3 45 TFSI quattro	1695	2160 – 2205	1160	1080 – 1135
Q3 Sportback 35 TFSI	1570 / 1525 ^{a)}	2025 – 2070 / 2000 – 2045 ^{a)}	1080 / 1040 ^{a)}	1030 – 1080 / 1030 – 1080 ^{a)}
Q3 Sportback 35 TDI	1655 / 1630 ^{a)}	2110 – 2155 / 2090 – 2130 ^{a)}	1145 / 1120 ^{a)}	1030 – 1095 / 1030 – 1095 ^{a)}
Q3 Sportback 35 TDI quattro	1735	2205 – 2250	1180	1080 – 1150
Q3 Sportback 40 TFSI quattro	1695	2160 – 2200	1160	1080 – 1135
Q3 Sportback 40 TDI quattro 142 kW	1735	2205 – 2250	1180	1080 – 1150

	Kerb weight (unladen weight)	Gross vehicle weight	Maximum front axle weight	Maximum rear axle weight
Q3 Sportback 40 TDI quattro 147 kW	1735	2205 – 2250	1180	1080 – 1150
Q3 Sportback 45 TFSI quattro	1695	2160 – 2205	1160	1080 – 1135

a) The value before the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the manual gearbox.

Trailer weights

The vertical load exerted by the trailer draw bar on the ball joint of the towing bracket must not exceed 90 kg.

The values listed do not apply to towing brackets with square tubes ⇒ *page 122*. The values in the tables below are given in kg.

	Maximum rear axle weight when towing	Trailer		
		Without brakes	With brakes on gradient up to 8%	With brakes on gradient up to 12%
Q3 35 TFSI	1115 – 1165 / 1115 – 1165 ^{a)}	750	2000	1800
Q3 35 TDI	1115 – 1180 / 1115 – 1180 ^{a)}	750	2000	2000
Q3 35 TDI quattro	1175 – 1245	750	2200	2200
Q3 40 TFSI quattro	1175 – 1230	750	2000	2000
Q3 40 TDI quattro 142 kW	1175 – 1245	750	2200	2200
Q3 40 TDI quattro 147 kW	1175 – 1245	750	2200	2200
Q3 45 TFSI quattro	1175 – 1230	750	2100	2100
Q3 Sportback 35 TFSI	1115 – 1165 / 1115 – 1165 ^{a)}	750	2000	1800
Q3 Sportback 35 TDI	1115 – 1180 / 1115 – 1180 ^{a)}	750	2000	2000
Q3 Sportback 35 TDI quattro	1175 – 1245	750	2200	2200
Q3 Sportback 40 TFSI quattro	1175 – 1230	750	2000	2000
Q3 Sportback 40 TDI quattro 142 kW	1175 – 1245	750	2200	2200
Q3 Sportback 40 TDI quattro 147 kW	1175 – 1245	750	2200	2200
Q3 Sportback 45 TFSI quattro	1175 – 1230	750	2100	2100

a) The value before the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the manual gearbox.

Engine data

	Max. power output (kW at rpm)	Max. torque (Nm at rpm)	Maximum speed (km/h)
Q3 35 TFSI	110 / 5000 – 6000	250 / 1500 – 3500	206 / 206; 208 ^{a)b)}
Q3 35 TDI	110 / [3250; 3000 ^{a)}] – 4200	[340; 360 ^{a)}] / 1600 – [3000; 2750 ^{a)}]	203 / 202 ^{b)}
Q3 35 TDI quattro	110 / 3000 – 4200	360 / 1600 – 2750	205
Q3 40 TFSI quattro	140 / 4200 – 6000	320 / 1500 – 4100	221
Q3 40 TDI quattro 142 kW	142 / 3500 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	218
Q3 40 TDI quattro 147 kW	147 / 3600 – 4100	400 / 1750 – 3500	225
Q3 45 TFSI quattro	180 / 5250 – 6500	370 / 1600 – 4300	237
Q3 Sportback 35 TFSI	110 / 5000 – 6000	250 / 1500 – 3500	204 / 204; 207 ^{a)b)}
Q3 Sportback 35 TDI	110 / [3250; 3000 ^{a)}] – 4200	[340; 360 ^{a)}] / 1600 – [3000; 2750 ^{a)}]	200
Q3 Sportback 35 TDI quattro	110 / 3000 – 4200	360 / 1600 – 2750	201
Q3 Sportback 40 TFSI quattro	140 / 4200 – 6000	320 / 1500 – 4100	219
Q3 Sportback 40 TDI quattro 142 kW	142 / 3500 – 4200	400 / 1750 – 3250	216
Q3 Sportback 40 TDI quattro 147 kW	147 / 3600 – 4100	400 / 1750 – 3500	224
Q3 Sportback 45 TFSI quattro	180 / 5250 – 6500	370 / 1600 – 4300	233

^{a)} The values depend on the country and the vehicle's equipment.
^{b)} The value before the stroke applies to the automatic gearbox; the value after the stroke applies to the manual gearbox.

Other information

Driving school mode

Applies to: vehicles with driving school mode

You can have the vehicle speed and the direction indicated by the turn signals shown on the infotainment display.

- Applies to MMI: On the home screen, select **CAR > Settings & service > Driving school mode**.

When the menu is switched (e.g. to radio), the vehicle speed and indicated direction will appear again on the display after five seconds.



Note

The value indicated in the speedometer is the relevant speed.

Trademarks and licences

This Owner's Manual does not use any symbols to indicate trademarks or registered trademarks, such as ® or ™. However, the absence of such symbols does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any proprietary names.

Apple, iPhone, iPod touch, Apple CarPlay, Lightning and iTunes Radio are trademarks of Apple Inc.

All other product and manufacturer names used may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Information according to EU chemicals regulation REACH

On the basis of the European chemicals regulation REACH, Audi provides information on materials which may be present in your vehicle.

The information is available on the following website (varies from country to country):


www.audi.de/reach

Information on waste disposal

General information


Please observe the relevant country-specific regulations on waste disposal and the information below. Further information on disposal, return and recycling can be obtained from Audi dealers, qualified workshops or your regional Audi sales centre's website via www.audi.com.

Batteries


As the end user, it is your responsibility to dispose of batteries correctly. The crossed-out bin  indicates your legal obligation to dispose of waste correctly. This means that you are obliged to collect and dispose of batteries separately from normal domestic waste. Special care is required when handling batteries containing lithium (Li). For example these batteries must not be exposed to excessive heat and must not be damaged. Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols for Cd (cadmium), Hg (mercury) and Pb (lead) in cases where these heavy metals are present in concentrations above the respective limits. The battery contains materials which can damage the health of humans and animals and can accumulate in the environment. To prevent this, it is essential to ensure separate collection and proper return.

Depending on the country, batteries may be returned free-of-charge to your Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Commercially available batteries can also be returned to the retailer.

Electric/electronic equipment

Electric/electronic equipment is identified by the symbol with the crossed-out bin . Electric/electronic equipment with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from normal domestic waste, according to the applicable legal regulations. Batteries contained in the equipment and separate rechargeable batteries must be removed first and disposed of separately in the appropriate manner. ►

Depending on your country, electric/electronic equipment can be returned to local waste disposal agencies or public collection points. In addition, electric/electronic equipment can also be returned to the distributor/retailer via shipping services. The corresponding dealers/retailers can provide you with the exact conditions of return.

 **Note**

It is your own responsibility to delete any personal data stored on the devices.

Vehicle

For information on the proper disposal of your vehicle, please visit your national/regional Audi sales organisation via www.audi.com.

All legal requirements must be complied with when scrapping the entire vehicle or specific individual components such as airbag units, batteries for remote controls, and belt tensioners. These components may contain perchlorates. Audi recommends contacting a qualified workshop.

Recycling information for France



Fig. 198 Recycling information for Owner's Manual



Fig. 199 Recycling information for electrical devices: vehicle keys, Audi connect key card, remote control for auxiliary heating/ventilation

Radio equipment

Information on UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017

Simplified UK declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the UK Radio Equipment Regulations 2017 insofar as this is required by law. The full text of the UK declaration of conformity is available on the Internet at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo



Information on EU Directive 2014/53/EU

Simplified EU declaration of conformity

Depending on its equipment, your vehicle has different types of radio equipment. The manufacturers of the radio equipment declare that the equipment corresponds to the Directive 2014/53/EU insofar as this is required by law.

The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available online at the following address:

www.audi.com/generalinfo



Frequency table

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Audi phone box	LTE/NR FDD band 20: 832 – 862 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 8: 880 – 915 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 3: 1710 – 1785 MHz	23dBm	37
	LTE/NR FDD band 1: 1920 – 1980 MHz	23dBm	37
	NR TDD band 78: 3300 – 3800 MHz	23dBm	37
Bluetooth	2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	10 dBm	25
Connectivity box/cGW/OCU	GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	33 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B28A: 703 MHz – 718 MHz	23 dBm	29
	GSM 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	30 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD I: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	24 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD III: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	24 dBm	29
	UMTS FDD VIII: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	24 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz	23 dBm	29
	LTE FDD B8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz	23 dBm	29
Remote control for auxiliary heating	868.7 MHz – 869.2 MHz	25 mW ERP	26
Front radar 1	76-77 GHz	35 dBm (ARS410)	3
Remote control key	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	<10 mW E.R.P	13
	125 kHz	<22.7 dBµA/m @ 10m	13
Garage door opener	433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	0.04 mW ERP	11
	868.00 MHz – 868.60 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
	868.70 MHz – 869.20 MHz	1.05 mW ERP	11
Interface for entry and start system	125 kHz	<22.7 dBµA/m @ 10m	13
Instrument cluster 1	125 kHz	6.4 dBµA/m	5, 21

Radio service	Frequency band	Max. radio frequency power	Supplier
Radar 1 for surround-ings	76-77 GHz	24.2 dBm (MRR1Rear)	35
Wireless charging	110 kHz -113 kHz	42 dBµA/m	37
Wi-Fi	2412 MHz – 2480 MHz	18 dBm	25
	5745 MHz – 5850 MHz	14 dBm	25

Supplier table

Number	Address
3	Continental ADC Automotive Dis-tance Control Systems GmbH Peter-Dornier-Str. 10 88131 Lindau Germany
5	Continental Automotive GmbH VDO-Straße 1 64832 Babenhausen Germany
11	Gentex Corp. 600 North Centennial Street Zeeland, MI 49464 USA
13	Hella KGaA. Hueck & Co. Rixbecker Straße 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
21	Robert Bosch Car Multimedia GmbH Robert-Bosch-Str. 200 31139 Hildesheim Germany
25	Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH Am Technologiepark 1 42119 Wuppertal Germany

Number	Address
26	Digades GmbH, digitales u. analoges Schaltungsdesign Äußere Weberstraße 20 02763 Zittau Germany
29	LG Electronics European Shared Service Center B.V. Krijgsman 1 1186 DM Amstelveen Netherlands
35	Robert Bosch GmbH Postfach 1661 71226 Leonberg Germany
37	Molex Technologies GmbH Mizarstraße 3 12529 Schönefeld Germany

You can also find additional information e.g.
product identifications online at [www.audi.com/
generalinfo](http://www.audi.com/generalinfo).

Additional customer information

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DB106879

①

② **EAC**

③ **TP_{BY}**

④ **UK
CA**



เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับ
ใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม
หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช.
เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุ
คมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต
วิทยุคมนาคม ตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุ
คมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498



nab. | โทรคมนาคม
กำกับดูแลโดย: ราชชน
Call Center 1200 (InSIP)

해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과
관련된 서비스는 할 수 없음.

가정에서 사용할 경우 타 기기에 전파 간섭을 일으킬 수
있으므로, 업무용으로만 사용할 수 있습니다.

법에 의해 전파항 전파발사 및 동일한 정보를 동시에 여러 곳으로
송신하는 점-대-다지점 서비스의 사용은 금지되어 있습니다.

根據LP0002低
功率射頻器材技術
規範 3.8.2:
取得審驗證明之低
功率射頻器材, 非
經核准, 公司、商號
或使用者均不得
擅自變更頻率、加
大功率或變更原設
計之特性及功能。
低功率射頻器材之
使用不得影響飛航
安全及干擾合法通
信; 經發現有干擾
現象時, 應立即停
用, 並改善至無
干擾時方得繼續使
用。前述合法通信,
指依電信管理法規
定作業之無線電通
信。低功率射頻器
材須忍受合法通信
或工業、科學及醫
療用電波輻射性電
機設備之干擾。

⑦

Fig. 200 Additional customer information

- ① Singapore
- ② Russia
- ③ Belarus
- ④ United Kingdom (applies to products placed
on the market from 01/01/2023 onwards)
- ⑤ Thailand
- ⑥ Republic of Korea
- ⑦ Taiwan

United Kingdom market

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UK product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations:

Volkswagen Group United Kingdom Ltd.
Yeomans Drive, Blakelands Milton Keynes, MK14
5AN United Kingdom

Türkiye

TELSİZ EKİPMANLARI YÖNETMELİĞİ (2014/53/AB)

Aracınızda çeşitli telsiz ekipmanları bulunmaktadır. Telsiz Ekipmanları Yönetmeliği (2014/53/AB) açısından Türkiye pazarı için telsiz ekipmanı ithalatçısı¹⁾:

Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.
Şekerpınar Mah. Anadolu Cad., No: 45 D , PK:
41420 Çayırova/Kocaeli

¹⁾ Bu bilgi sadece resmi temsilcimiz olan Doğuş Otomotiv Servis ve Ticaret A.Ş.'nin ithal ettiği ürünler için geçerlidir.

Importer according to Article 12 of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED) on imported radio equipment and electronic devices:

AUDI AG, Auto-Union-Straße 1,
85057 Ingolstadt, Germany



Note

For some countries, further information and updates about radio equipment or product identifications for certain equipment versions can be found online at www.audi.com/generalinfo.

A

- A/C cooling mode 86
- ABS
 - see Anti-lock brake system 113
- Accelerator 98
- Accessories 293
- Adaptive cruise assist 139
 - Cleaning sensors 264
 - Predictive control 144
- Adaptive cruise control 139
 - see also Adaptive cruise assist 139
- AdBlue 236
 - Capacity 296
 - Checking range 236
 - Driver messages 236
- Airbag system 69
 - Deactivating front passenger's airbag 72
- Air conditioner 85
- Air conditioner (manual) 86
- Air distribution setting 87
- Air recirculation mode 87
- Alarm system
 - see Anti-theft alarm system 36
- All-season tyres
 - see All-weather tyres 259
- All-weather lights 51
- All-weather tyres 259
- Alpine roads 108
- Amazon Alexa integration
 - How to use 28
 - Media playback 215
- Android Auto
 - see Smartphone interface 225
- Anti-dazzle interior mirror 56
- Anti-freeze
 - Coolant 247
 - Windscreen washer system 254
- Anti-lock brake system 113
- Anti-theft alarm system 36
- Anti-theft wheel bolts 272
- Apple CarPlay
 - see Smartphone interface 225
- Armrest (front centre) 63
- Ashtray 79
- ASR
 - see Traction control system 113
- Assist function for driving off
 - see Hold assist 107
- At home
 - see Home address 200
- Audi adaptive light 51
- Audi ceramic 105
- Audi connect
 - see connect 184, 185
- Audi connect remote & control 186
- Audi drive select 111
- Audio files 217
- Audi online manuals 6
- Audi phone box 175
- Audi pre sense 152
 - Driver messages 155
 - Rear 154
- Audi pre sense front 153
- Audi side assist
 - see Side assist 155
- Audi virtual cockpit
 - see Instrument cluster 14
- AUTO
 - Air conditioner 86
 - Automatic headlights 51
- Auto Lock (central locking system) 33
- Automatic gearbox 97
- Automatic wash and wipe 57
- Auxiliary heating/ventilation 89
- Average fuel consumption 18
- Average speed 18
- Axle loads 296

B

- Background lighting 55
- Bandages
 - see First-aid kit 269
- Bass box 275
- Battery
 - 12-volt vehicle battery 251
 - Charging (12-volt vehicle battery) 253
 - Safety information 252
 - Winter conditions (12-volt vehicle battery) 251

- Battery (mobile phone)
 Charging via USB 175, 216
 Wireless charging 176
- Battery, replacing
 12-volt vehicle battery 251
 Vehicle keys 39
- Bicycle rack (trailer) 120
- Biodiesel 232, 233
- Bioethanol (fuel) 232
- Blind
 Roof 47
- Blower 87
- Bluetooth
 Audio player 214
 Connecting a device 229
 Connecting a mobile phone 173
 Deleting a device 230
 Device overview 229
 Disconnecting a device 229
 Displaying profiles 230
 Selecting a device 229
 Setting a favourite 230
- Boot
 see Luggage compartment 81
- Boot lid 40
 Activating/deactivating foot gesture control 43
 Close button 42
 General information 40
 Opening/closing 41
 Opening/closing electrically 42
 Opening with foot gesture 43
 Releasing manually 44
- Box spanner 270
- Brake fluid
 Checking brake fluid level 250
- Brakes 104
 Brake assist 114
 Brake fluid 250
 Emergency braking function 107
 Hot 108
 New brake pads 105
- Brightness, adjusting 55
- Bulbs, changing 283
- Business address 200
- C**
- Call list 177
- Cameras
 Areas covered 126
 Positions 128
- Capacities 296
 AdBlue 236
- Caps for wheel bolts, removing 272
- Car care
 Washing/cleaning 263
- Car keys 37
- Car wash 263
- Catalytic converter 240
- Central locking switch 35
- Central locking system 33
 Adjusting settings 34
 Auto Lock 33
 Boot lid 41
 Convenience key 38
 Convenience open/close 46
 Driver messages 35
 Locking/unlocking doors manually 35
 Remote control key 38
 Vehicle key 38
- Centre backrest, folding up/down 82
- Centre display
 see Multi Media Interface 21
- Ceramic brakes 105
- Certificate of conformity 303
- Certification 300, 303
- Cetane number (diesel) 233
- Changing bulbs 283
- Charging
 see Power sources 79
- Chassis number
 see Vehicle identification number 295
- Chemicals 299
- Child lock
 Electric windows 45
 Rear doors 45
- Child restraint system 72
 Attaching with i-Size 76
 Attaching with ISOFIX 76
 Securing to top tether anchorage 77
 Securing with seat belt 77
- Cigarette lighter 79

- Cleaning 263
 - Cleaning/treating natural leather 266
 - Cleaning carbon parts 265, 266
 - Cleaning controls and displays 266
 - Cleaning fabrics 266
 - Cleaning leatherette 266
 - Cleaning microfibre 266
 - Cleaning plastic parts 266
 - Cleaning rubber seals 265
 - Clock 18
 - Closing
 - Blind (roof) 47
 - Bonnet 243
 - Boot lid 41
 - Convenience close 46
 - Panoramic glass roof 47
 - Power-operated boot lid 42
 - Windows 45
 - Coasting 102
 - Coat hooks 80
 - Cockpit dimming 55
 - Colour code 295
 - Combustion engine 102
 - Compact temporary spare wheel 275
 - Compartments 80
 - Conference calling 179
 - connect 184
 - Data plans 188
 - Emergency call 189
 - Infotainment 185
 - Infotainment services 186
 - Online roadside assistance 191
 - Privacy 290
 - Vehicle control services 186
 - Connected devices 229
 - Connections
 - see Media 214, 217
 - Consumer information 292
 - Consumption
 - Lowering 102
 - Consumption (fuel) 18
 - Contacts
 - Importing/exporting 181
 - Updating in MMI 181
 - see also Directory 178
 - Convenience key 33
 - Convenience close 46
 - see also Vehicle keys 37
 - Convenience open/close
 - Windows/sunroof 46
 - Coolant temperature gauge 16
 - Cooling mode 86
 - Cooling system
 - Anti-freeze 247
 - Checking coolant level 249
 - Topping up coolant 249
 - Cornering light 51
 - Cup holders 80
 - Current fuel consumption 18
 - Customer information regarding radio equip-
ment 303
- ## D
- Data module
 - Serial number (IMEI) 180
 - Data plans 188
 - Data protection 290
 - Date 18
 - Setting 228
 - Daytime running lights 51
 - Deactivating front passenger's airbag 72
 - Declarations of conformity 300
 - DEF
 - see AdBlue 236
 - Defrosting (windows) 87
 - Deluxe automatic air conditioner (2-zone) 86
 - Deluxe automatic air conditioner (3-zone) 86
 - Demo mode
 - see Presentation mode 204
 - Destination search 194
 - Destination, entering 194
 - From map 197
 - Device overview 229
 - Diesel 232
 - Fuel 233
 - Paraffinic diesel 233
 - Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)
 - see AdBlue 236
 - Dimensions 295
 - Dipped headlights 51

Directional tread (tyres)	275	Economy tips	138
Directory	178	EDL	
Business card	178	see Electronic differential lock	113
Display		EDR	
Cleaning	266	see Event data recorder (EDR)	288
Distance covered	18	Efficiency assist	138
Distance warning	149	Predictive control	144
Doors		Electrical socket	
Child lock	45	see Power sources	79
Courtesy lighting	54	Electrical system	250
Locking/unlocking manually	35	Electric windows	45
Door safelock	36	Electromechanical parking brake	106
Downhill assist function	109	Electronic differential lock	114
Downhill speed control	108	Electronic immobiliser	38
Driver assist menu	128	Electronic stabilisation control	113
Driver information system	15	Embedded SIM card	185
Drives		Emergency assist	157
see Media	214, 217	Emergency braking function	107
Drive select		Emergency call	180, 189
see Audi drive select	111	Emergency running	101
Drive system		Emission control system	239, 241
Audi drive select	111	Energy management	102
Drive system (driver message)	104	Engine	101
Driving abroad	188	Coolant	247
Driving away	95	Jump-starting	276
Driving off-road	109	Power output	298
Driving off (assist function)		Running in	101
see Hold assist	107	Start/stop system	103
Driving program	148	Starting/stopping	93
Driving school mode	299	Switching off in an emergency	93
Driving time	18	Engine compartment	
Driving tips		Layout	244
Driving efficiently	102	Opening/closing bonnet	243
Driving off-road	109	Safety information	241
Driving through water	109	Engine oil	
Hills and gradients	108	Checking	245
Dust filter		Consumption	245
see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon	85	Dipstick	246
		Oil change intervals	255
		Temperature gauge	17
		Topping up	245
		Type	245
		Warning lamp	245
E		Engine sound	
E-mail	182	Audi drive select	112
E10			
see Ethanol (fuel)	232		
eco mode (air conditioner)	86		

Engine start/stop mode	
see Start/stop system	103, 104
Engine start system	95
Engine stopping	
Coasting	102
see also Start/stop system	103, 104
Enhanced air filter with activated carbon	85
Entry/exit lights	53
Environmental tips	
Filling the tank	234
Leaks	243
ESC	
see Electronic stabilisation control	113, 115
eSIM	
see Embedded SIM card	185
Ethanol (fuel)	232
EU Directive 2014/53/EU	300
Event data recorder (EDR)	288
Exterior lighting	51
Exterior mirrors	55
Folding in (setting)	34
External aerial	175
External voice control	28
First-aid kit	269
Flooded roads, tips for driving	109
Floor mat	61
Floor panel	83
Forward gear	
see Transmission positions	97
Four-wheel drive	
see quattro	113
Frequency band	
see Waveband	207
Front cabin (overview)	8
Front collision warning	
see Audi pre sense front	152
Front window	
see Windscreen	57
Fuel	232
Capacity	296
Current fuel consumption	18
Fuel gauge	14
Lowering consumption	102
Fuel range	18
Fuse list	282
Fuses, changing	281

F

Factory settings	
Multi Media Interface	229
FAME (fuel)	233
Fastening rings	83
Fastest route	194
Fatigue warning	134
Favourites	23
Bluetooth	230
Navigation	196
Podcast	211
Radio	209
Telephone	177
File formats (media sources)	221
Filling the tank	233
Capacity	296
Fuel tank flap	234
Releasing fuel tank flap manually	236
Finding entries	
see Destination search	194
see Search function	209, 220
Fire extinguisher	269

G

Garage door opener	48
Gear shift indicator	18
Glove box	80
Gradients, driving on	108

H

Handbrake	
see Electromechanical parking brake	106
Handsfree	174
Hands Free Profile	174
Hazard alerts	203
Hazard warning lights	54
Headlight range control	51
Headlights	
Headlight range control	51
Washer system	57
Washer system (topping up washer fluid)	254
Washing	264
Headlight washer system	
Capacity	296

Head restraints	
Adjusting	65, 66
Removing/installing	66
Heated rear window	87
Heated steering wheel	89
Heating	
see Air conditioner	85
HFP	
see Hands Free Profile	173
High-visibility vest	269
Hill hold assist	96
Hills, driving on	108
Hold assist	107
Home address	200
HomeLink	
see Garage door opener	48
Home screen	20
Horn	8
Hotspot	
see Wi-Fi	187

I

i-Size (attaching child restraint systems)	76
Ignition	
Switching on/off	93
Immobiliser	
see Electronic immobiliser	37
Indicator lamps	
see Warning lamps	9
Inflation pressures	
Tyre pressure loss indicator	261
Tyres	258
Inspection intervals	
see Service interval display	255
Instrument cluster	14
Changing views	16
Cleaning	266
Engine code	230
Failure	14
Gear shift indicator	18
On-board computer	18
Operation	15
Selecting layout	16
Selecting tabs	15
Service interval display	255
Software information	230

Vehicle functions	17
Version information	230
Instrument lighting	55
Intelligent coasting	138
Interior lights	54
Interior mirror	56
Interior monitor	36
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers)	57
Internet	
see connect	184, 185
Internet radio	
see Online radio	210, 211
iPhone	
see USB ports with charging function	216
ISOFIX (attaching child restraint systems) . . .	76

J

Jack	270, 273
Jacking points	273
Jump-starting	276

K

Key-operated switch for front passenger's air-bag	72
Keys	33, 37
Convenience open/close	46
Remote control key	37
Replacement key	37
Replacing battery	39
Safelock mechanism	36
Unlocking/locking	38
Key user	32
Kick-down	99

L

Lane assist	
see Lane departure warning	143
see Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist) .	143
Lane departure warning	150
Cleaning area around camera	264
Lane guidance (adaptive cruise assist)	143
Language, setting	228
Launch control	99
Leather, cleaning/treating	266
Left-hand traffic	53

Legal information		Map	
Licence periods	230	Changing scale	197
Software information	230	Display	198
Software licences	230	How to use	197
Version information	230	Setting a destination	197
Light functions		MAP	
Interior lights	54	see Message Access Profile	181
Lights	51	Map preview	196
Changing bulbs	283	Map update	201
Driving on right/left	53	Online	202
Exterior	51	USB connection	202
Interior	54	Matrix LED headlights	52
Light sensor/rain sensor		Matt paintwork, washing	263
Headlights	51	Maximum speed	298
Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers)	57	Measurement units, setting	228
Local user	31	Media	214, 217
Locking/unlocking	33	Media centre	217
By remote control	38	Media drives	
In the lock	35	Formats supported	221
Using Audi connect vehicle control services	39	Memory function	63
With the convenience key	38	Memory list	
LTE		see Favourites	209
see External aerial	175	Menu for driver assist	128
Luggage		Menu language	
Boot lid	40	see Language, setting	228
Luggage compartment	81	Menu: Opening boot lid with foot gesture	43
Cover	82	Menu: Parking aid	128
Extending	82	Message Access Profile	181
Power sources	79	Messages	181
Luggage rack		Mild hybrid drive	102
see Roof carrier	84	Mileage recorder	17
Lumbar support	62, 63	Resetting	17
M		Mirrors	
Mailbox	178	Adjusting exterior mirrors	55
Main beam headlights		Anti-dazzle setting	56
Main beam assist	52	Make-up mirrors	57
Maintenance	292	MMI	
Maintenance intervals		see Multi Media Interface	21
see Service interval display	255	Mobile phone	
Make-up mirrors	57	see Telephone	173
Manual gear selection	98	Mobile phone tray	
Manual operation		see Audi phone box	175
Boot lid	42, 44	Modifications	292
Doors	35	Motorway light	51
Panoramic glass roof	47	Mountain passes	108
		Mounting pin (for changing wheels)	270

- Multi-function steering wheel
 - Assigning function to button 30
 - Buttons 15, 30
 - Operation 15
 - Speech dialogue system 27
- Multi Media Interface 21
 - Menus/symbols 22
 - Operation 19, 22
 - Switching on/off 21
- Music
 - see Media 214, 217
- Mute 30
- myAudi 31, 186
- myAudi navigation 193, 196
- myAudi users 31
- N**
- Navigation 193
 - Better route 203
 - Changing scale 197
 - Destination details 196
 - Destination search 194
 - Favourites 200
 - see also Map 197
- Navigation database
 - Version information 230
- Navigation (instrument cluster) 199
- Neutral
 - see Transmission positions 97
- Notification centre 24
- NOx catalytic converter
 - see AdBlue 236
- Number plate holder 293
- O**
- Octane rating (petrol) 232
- Off-road
 - see Driving off-road 109
- Office address
 - see Business address 200
- Oil
 - see Engine oil 245
- On-board computer 18
- Onboard diagnostic system (OBD) 288
- Online manuals
 - see Owner's Manual (digital) 6
- Online map
 - see Satellite map 201
- Online media 215
- Online Owner's Manual 6
- Online radio 210
- Online roadside assistance 191
- Online services
 - see connect 184, 185
- Online traffic information 203
- Opening 33
 - Blind (roof) 47
 - Bonnet 243
 - Boot lid 41
 - Boot lid with foot gesture 43
 - Convenience open 46
 - Fuel tank flap 234
 - Panoramic glass roof 47
 - Power-operated boot lid 42
 - Windows 45
- Opening/closing
 - see Unlocking/locking 33, 38
- Operation
 - Instrument cluster 15
 - Multi-function steering wheel 15
 - Multi Media Interface 19, 22
 - Speech dialogue system 27
 - Text entry 25
 - Touch display 19
- Optional equipment code 295
- Options
 - Media 220
 - Radio 211
- Overtake prevention 141
- Overview diagram (front cabin) 8
- Owner's Manual
 - Calling up digital manual 6
- Owner's Manual (digital)
 - Accessing 6
 - In the infotainment system 6
- P**
- Paddle levers 98
- Paint code 295
- Paint damage 265

- Panoramic glass roof 47
 Closing manually 47
 Convenience open/close 46
 Opening quickly 47
 Paraffinic diesel 232, 233
 Park assist 170
 Parking 95
 Parking aid menu 128
 Parking aids 159
 Adjusting volume 160, 162
 Automatic activation 161
 Cleaning sensors/camera 264
 Finding a parking space 168
 Park assist 170
 Parking aid plus 161
 Rear cross-traffic assist 167
 Reversing camera 163
 Surround view cameras 163
 Trailer view 164
 Parking and manoeuvring 159
 Parking brake
 see Electromechanical parking brake 106
 Parking lights 52
 Parking lock
 Manual release 99, 100
 see also Transmission positions 97
 Particulate filter 240
 Path descriptions 20
 Pedals 98
 Performance (engine) 298
 Personal hotspot 185
 Personal profiles
 see Users 31
 Petrol 232
 Petrol grade
 see Petrol 232
 Phone book
 see Directory 178
 Picture format
 Video 220
 PIN
 4-digit PIN 31
 Protection 32
 Playback
 Media 217
 Radio 208
 Podcast
 see Online radio 210, 211
 Polishing 265
 Pollen filter
 see Enhanced air filter with activated carbon 85
 Power-operated boot lid 42, 43
 Power sources 79, 216
 Power steering
 see Steering 112
 Prayer compass 206
 Predictive control 144
 Predictive route guidance 199
 Pre sense
 see Audi pre sense 152
 Presentation mode 206
 Progressive steering 112
 Pyrotechnic components 292
- ## Q
- quattro 113
 Selective wheel torque control 114
- ## R
- Radio 207
 Radio text 210
 Station list 207
 Radio equipment 293, 300, 303
 Radio Equipment Directive 300
 Radio frequency
 see Waveband 207
 Radio sticker 294
 Radio transmitters 293
 Rain sensor/light sensor
 Headlights 51
 Intermittent wipe (windscreen wipers) 57
 Random playback 219
 REACH (chemicals regulation) 299
 Reading lights 54
 Rear cross-traffic assist 167
 Rear fog light 51
 Rear lights
 Washing 264
 Rear seats 64
 Rear seats, folding down 82

Rear window heating	87	Satellite map	201
Recuperation	18	Saving fuel	
Reminder signal	176	Coasting	102
Remote access rights (key user)	32	Economy tips	138
Remote control		Recuperation	18
Auxiliary heating/ventilation	91	Scrappage	292
Garage door opener	48	Screen	
Remote control key	33, 37	see Touch display	19
Convenience open/close	46	Screwdriver	270
LED	39	Search function	
Replacement key	37	Media	220
Replacing battery	39	Radio	209
Safelock mechanism	36	Seat belts	66
Unlocking/locking	38	Cleaning	266
see also Vehicle keys	37	Securing child restraint system	77
Repair kit		Seat heating	88
Tyre Mobility System (tyre repair kit)	270	Seats	
Repairs	292	Adjusting	62
Replacement key	37	Adjusting front seats	63
Replacement parts	293	Adjusting rear seats	64
Rev counter	14, 16	Cleaning	266
Reverse gear		Folding down	82
see Transmission positions	97	Head restraints	65
Reversing camera	163	Memory function	63
RFID sticker	294	Storing seat profile	63
Right-hand traffic	53	Selective catalytic reduction	
Rims	259	see AdBlue	236
Washing	264	Selector lever	97
Rolling		Self-help	269
Electromechanical parking brake	106	Self-learning navigation	
Hold assist	107	see Predictive route guidance	199
Neutral (N)	97	Sensors	
Rolling away	95	Areas covered	126
Roof		Positions	128
see Panoramic glass roof	47	Service interval display	255
Roof carrier	84	Service intervals	
Roof load	296	see Service interval display	255
Route guidance		Service Schedule (digital)	6
Stopping	197	Settings	228
see also Navigation	193	Announcements and sounds	228
Running in		Bluetooth	228
New brake pads	105	Date and time	228
New tyres	256	Directory	180
		E-mail	182
		Language	228
		Measurement units	228
		Media	221
Safelock mechanism	36		

- Navigation 204
- Opening boot lid with foot gesture 43
- Radio 212
- Sound 228
- System 228
- Telephone 180
- Text message 181
- Time zone 228
- Wi-Fi 187
- Wi-Fi hotspot 187
- Setup wizard 21
- Shuffle
 - see Random playback 219
- Side assist 155
 - Cleaning sensors 264
- Side lights 51
- SIM card 185
- Smartphone
 - see Telephone 173
- Smartphone interface 225
 - Legal information 230
- Snow chains 260
- Software information
 - Legal information 230
- Software update 229
- Software version (MMI)
 - Version information 230
- Sound adjustment 228
- Source, selecting
 - Media 217
 - Radio 208
- Spare wheel 275
- Speech dialogue system
 - Operation 27
- Speed display (driving school vehicles) 299
- Speed limit display
 - see Traffic sign recognition 130
- Speed limits
 - see Traffic sign recognition 130
- Speedometer 14
- Speed regulation systems
 - Cruise control 136
 - Speed limiter 136
- Speed warning 130
- Sport mode
 - see Electronic stabilisation control 113, 115
- Start/stop system 103, 104
 - Switching off/on 104
- Starting with jump leads 276
- Starting (engine) 103
- Station memory
 - see Favourites 209
- Steering 112
 - Audi drive select 111
- Steering lock 93, 94, 112
- Steering wheel
 - Adjustment 65
 - Manual adjustment 65
 - Paddle levers 98
 - Steering wheel heating 89
 - see also Multi-function steering wheel 15
- Stopover (navigation) 197
- Stopping vehicle 95
- Storage compartments 80
- Streaming
 - see Online media 215
- Stretch net 83
- Sunroof
 - see Panoramic glass roof 47
- Sun visors 57
- Supplementary heater 89
- Surround view cameras 163
- Suspension 112
 - Audi drive select 111
- Suspension control 112
- Switching between calls 179
- Switching engine off 103
- Symbols
 - Media 219
 - Navigation 197
 - Radio 208, 209
 - see also Warning lamps 9
- System settings 228

T

- Tailgate
 - see Boot lid 41
- Technical data 295
- Telephone 173
 - Answering/ending calls 179
 - Audi phone box 175
 - Charging battery (USB) 175

U

V

Vehicle	
Dimensions	295
Identification data	295
Raising	273
Securing	95
Starting	93
Stopping	95
Taking out of service	268
Unlocking/locking	38
Vehicle control services	186
see also Audi connect remote & control	186
Vehicle data sticker	295
Vehicle identification number	295
Vehicle keys	33, 37
Synchronisation	40
Ventilation	85
VIEW button	15
VIN	
see Vehicle identification number	295
Voice control function	
External	28
Volume of announcements, setting	228
Volume, adjusting	30

W

Warning lamps	9
Warning triangle	269
Washing	263
Washing ornamental trim/mouldings	265
Washing tailpipes	265
Waveband	207
Waxing	265
Weights	296
Wheel bolts	259
Changing wheel(s)	272
Wheel covers, removing	272
Wheel imbalance	257
Wheels	256
Changing	272
Tyre pressure loss indicator	261
Washing	264
Wi-Fi	187
Settings	187
Using hotspot	185

Wi-Fi network	185
Wi-Fi tethering	185
Window blind	
see Panoramic glass roof	47
Windows	
Child lock	45
Cleaning/de-icing	265
Convenience open/close	46
Defrosting	87
Demisting	87
Electric windows	45
Opening/closing	45
Windscreen	
Washing	57
Windscreen washer system	57, 254
Capacity	296
Windscreen wipers	57
Winter conditions	
12-volt vehicle battery	251
Auxiliary heating	89
Cooling system	247
De-icing windows	265
Defrosting windows	87
Diesel	233
Rear window heating	87
Seat heating	88
Snow chains	260
Steering wheel heating	89
Tyres	259
Washing the vehicle	263
Windscreen washer system	254
Winter tyres	259
Wiper blades (front)	
Changing	58
Cleaning	58
Wiper blade (rear)	
Changing	59
Cleaning	59
Wireless Android Auto	
see Smartphone interface	225
Wireless Apple CarPlay	
see Smartphone interface	225
Wireless charging	176
Work	
see Business address	200